



Province of the
Northern Cape
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



"A MODERN, GROWING AND SUCCESSFUL PROVINCE"

FOREWORD BY THE PREMIER

The year 1994, was a landmark in the history of South Africa. The transition from apartheid to democracy focussed the eyes of the world on South Africa and created expectations of hope and prosperity. The first democratic election in 1994 made it possible for people to stand together and begin to build one country that belongs to all who live in it. For the majority of South Africans who had never voted before, their dignity was restored as they determined their democratically elected government to transform the country.

The year 2019, is therefore a historical milestone for all South Africans and for the province, Northern Cape, which was formed as one of the 9 provinces of the democratic South Africa – effecting a split from the Cape Province. The post 1994 government inherited a plethora of political, social, economic and other problems that required urgent intervention. This 25-year review reflects on the 25-year journey from 1994 to 2019 in the Northern Cape.

The Northern Cape is the largest province in terms of land size, one of the poorest and the most sparsely populated. This is one of the biggest challenges for the province and still poses developmental challenges– specifically because the national equitable share formula used to allocate funds to provinces, does not favour provinces with small population sizes. Vast distances to cover, poor infrastructure and the establishment of a new provincial government, were a few of the problems that needed to be overcome.

The Northern Cape 10-year review was concluded in 2004 and in reflecting on the performance for the period 1994 – 2004, the review highlights some critical obstacles the first administration of an ANC led government encountered, which include:

- “The NC administration and policy making machinery began as a transplanted state carved out of a regimented and command style culture of the Cape Province – certainly not predisposed for a developmental state.
- Physical, administrative and political structures were totally inadequate to cope with the demands of administering and delivering services to an expectant population.
- Weak base and lack of critical mass of skilled human capital.

- Most important of all, the NC had to start from a zero base as an entirely newly established province, and had to forge new policies to ensure transformation of outdated practices towards development.”

The first democratic elections in South Africa (April 1994) was won nationally by the African National Congress (ANC) – a position it held for the period of this review (25 years). In the Northern Cape, this status was replicated. The ANC continued to build on its successes through a solid programme of social transformation..

The 25-year period since 1994 was not easy and, whilst yielding many successes along the way, there were remarkable failures. This is evident from the many new policies introduced in rapid succession by government. Often termed as the “Cinderella” province, the Northern Cape can also boast many positive successes from the poor set of cards it has been dealt. However, to provide a balanced report, space must also be provided for failures and the identification of areas for improvement as provided in this 25-year review.

In the next five years, strategic consideration will certainly be given to those areas that require intensified focus to realise the aspirations of the electorate, to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. The strategic vision of the 6th administration is thus dedicated to building a province that is **MODERN, GROWING AND SUCCESSFUL**”.

In driving this vision forward into the next decade, we will draw on the successes and lessons learnt and therefore work tirelessly in unison with a re-energised and renewed growth path for the Province aimed at reducing poverty, unemployment and inequality.



Honourable Premier: Dr Zamani Saul

PART A.

Executive Summary

Introduction

As the province reaches its first 25-year milestone, there is a need for reflection of the achievements and failures of the last 25 years. The purpose of this 25-year review is reflecting on the legacy that the province inherited since 1994 and how best to address these into the next decade. The principle objective of this review is to allow the Northern Cape Provincial Government (NCPG) the opportunity to undertake an assessment of its performance and to take stock of its achievement with regard to the objectives it has set for itself. It is not only intended to reflect on NCPG's performance in meeting its challenges, but to also contribute to long term planning. It has, therefore, been critical for the review to focus on identifying shortcomings, challenges, dynamics and trends that will serve to inform policy options for the next term of government. This report is intended to give an outline of progress made by the Northern Cape Provincial Government over the past twenty-five years in implementing its programmes.

What The Northern Cape Inherited in 1994

The Northern Cape was established subsequent to the division of the Cape Province into 3 provinces sharing boundaries with the Free State, North West, Eastern Cape and Western Cape, and having international boundaries with Botswana and Namibia.

The Northern Cape Provincial Administration inherited a province in 1994 built on the political and social ideology of an apartheid system which were both deeply entrenched in the political, social and administrative fabric of the province. The "process of transplanting the administration of Cape Town to Kimberley, the new seat of the Northern Cape Provincial Government was itself problematic" (NC, 10 Year Review, 2004). As articulated in the NC 10 Year review "...during the initial phases, we had to 'administer' without basic policy instruments of government, including budgets, which remained attached to Cape Town due to both indifference and Yes – even sabotage." In order to drive the developmental agenda

much needed to be done to remove the remnants of the apartheid transplanted administration inherited from Cape Town and recraft the state machinery for developmental purposes. The apartheid system had to be dismantled to lay a foundation for a democratic and inclusive state founded on the values of human dignity, human rights, freedom, non-racialism, non-sexism and equality.

The journey was not easy:

- obsolete practices had to be overhauled,
- tiresome and confrontational transfer of the components from Cape Town to the new administration due to lack of support and co-operation,
- dealing with officials that still controlled old administrative systems,
- there was a limited pool of appropriately qualified candidates that could drive the vision of building a developmental state, as the NC competed with the bigger centres in the country.

The fragmented apartheid system bequeathed on the province the mammoth task of addressing a multitude of social and economic challenges.

One of the most effective ways to institutionalise apartheid was through education. There were four schooling systems, segregated according to race (White, Indians –Indian Education Act 1965, Coloureds –Coloured Person’s Act of 1963 and Black African- Bantu Education Act of 1953) depicting glaring inequalities. In 1994, the inequalities were expressed in the per capita funding, buildings, equipment, facilities, Learner Teacher Support Material (LSTM), teacher qualifications and teacher-pupil ratios and also to ‘results’ measured in terms of the proportions and levels of certificates awarded. According to Census 1996, from Statistics South Africa (StatsSA), 21,7% of school-going age people were not attending schools in the Northern Cape province – resulting om low educational levels and skill levels.

NC Province like any other province in the country was faced with a significant burden of preventable and treatable diseases. Poor health status was largely concentrated among the socioeconomically disadvantaged and vulnerable sub-groups of a population. By and large,

the apartheid health system failed to guarantee access to basic and essential health care services for all and health care needed to be transformed into a service with a primary care approach. The NC had an infant mortality rate of 41,8% in 1998 and under 5 mortality stood at 55,5% for the same period.

A fragmented and undemocratic and racially divided local government was inherited, with a biased spatial planning that benefited the minority groups. When the Northern Cape Province was established, it inherited 112 local authorities that were established along racial lines. Communities from previously disadvantaged backgrounds had been subjected to discrimination, appalling inequalities and degrading living conditions. Majority of the population were confined to the periphery of major economic centres without access to basic service, housing and employment opportunities. Social assistance was limited under apartheid, particularly for black people.

The social engineering programme of the apartheid government resulted in the cultural practices and use of indigenous languages being shunned by native speakers due to pejorative connotations implied by the use of these languages. Communities were split and forcibly removed from their ancestral lands which led to the gradual alienation from their culture and language and were pressured to adopt apartheid identity classifications. The newly formed Northern Cape Province inherited therefore a cultural landscape devoid of the contributions of the majority of citizens. Public spaces reflected the achievements and dominance of the White minority through statues, memorial sites and other forms of memorialisation.

25 Years Progress

Driven by the numerous policy shifts since 1994, with the RDP being at the heart of governments commitment to address the gross inequality and eradicate poverty, significant progress has been made to transform the social and political landscape of the country.

All in all, the mammoth task of creating a Provincial Government with a measure of Administration and Management capacity was completed in less than five years. The progress made in this regard is evident in the AG's reports from 1994 to 1999 and beyond.

(NC 10 Year Review,2004). The Northern Cape has made remarkable progress in transforming the public service and making it more representative of the provincial demographics with the total recorded number of personnel employed in the provincial administration by 2017 /18 being 27 497 with Education and Health constituting the largest share of the total provincial work force.

After the first democratic elections in 1994 provinces were established under the Interim Constitution. As such the flexibility to allocate their own budgets did not materialise until 1997/98, after the adoption of the Constitution in 1996. Prior to this, allocations were largely made through function committees for education, health and welfare, amongst others.

While the Province started with a meagre annual budget of R 712,526 in 1994/95 (NC 10 Year Review, 2004) it grew to R16,655 billion by 2017/18. The revenue being made up of three components, i.e. equitable share which constitute the largest share of the provincial revenue, followed by conditional grants and provincial own revenue, which contributes the smallest portion in the provincial revenue. Over this period, major focus has been towards the social sector, i.e. increasing access and achieving greater equity.

In the last 25 years the province recorded significant improvements in a number of key areas.

- Since 1994, the education system has expanded to such an extent that the number of persons aged 20 and older with no formal education declined from 17.5% in 2002 to 6.7% in 2017 (Statistics South Africa, 2002 & 2017).
- Access to Grade R improved significantly from 4 894 in 1997 to 19 999 in 2018. Furthermore, Grade R practitioners increased from 418 in 2009/10 to 755 in the 2017/18 financial year. The growth in Grade R access and practitioners is due to Grade R learner funding which grew from R74,7 to R99,2 million between 2013 and 2018.
- There has been progressive growth in learner enrolment in public ordinary schools, which increased from 198 268 in 2002 to 299 118 in 2018, which is a cumulative increase of 100 850 over a period of 16 years. The growth in learner enrolment is

attributed to the pro-poor policies such as the No Fee School policy, National School Nutrition Programme and the Learner School Transportation by the African National Congress (ANC) led government.

- The life expectancy at birth has increased significantly for both genders between 2001 and 2018. Life expectancy at birth increased from 57,7 years to 66,3 years for females, and from 52,2 years to 60 years for males. This was an increase of 7,8 years for males and 8,6 years for females during the reporting period. Nationally, life expectancy at birth for South Africans in 2018 was 61,1 years for male and 67,3 years for females
- In 1998, maternal mortality was at 97 per 100 000 live births. This increased to 300 in 2007 per 100 000 live births. The facility maternal mortality ratio (MMR), however, declined from 250 per 100 000 in 2009/10 live births, to an all-time low of 65,9 per 100 000 live births in 2017/18 financial year (Department of Health, 2018). This is below the Sustainable Development Goal (SDG) 2030 target of 70 per 100 000 live births.
- According to the Northern Cape Department of Health 2018 (HIMS) report (Department of Health, 2018), under-five mortality has shown significant decline from 7,7 mortalities per 1 000 live births in 2013/14 to 4,2 under-five mortality rates in 2017/18 financial year
- Infant mortality rate also showed a decline from 9 mortalities per 1 000 live births in 2013/14 to 6 mortality per 1 000 live births in 2017/18 financial year (Department of Health, 2018).
- Similarly, the burden of HIV/AIDS and TB reduces as the number of new infections decreased with 57,6%, (5 557 to 2 356) according to the South African Institute of Race Relations press release of 12 March 2018. Due to prevention programmes, the number of HIV positive clients remaining on ART increased from 31 355 in 2012/13 to 57 429 in 2017/18.
- With contact crimes indicating a general decreasing trend from 29 477 in 2002/03 to 17 380 in 2017/18, they nonetheless remained unacceptably high.
- The crimes detected as a result of police action have increased from 2 971 in 2001/2 to 6 495 in 2017/18.

- To strengthen partnerships between government and communities, the Community Policing Policy and the Community Safety Forum Policy Framework (2011) have been put in place, and the Northern Cape Province having 91 police stations with 91 functioning CPFs.
- Over the last 15 years, through the EPWP development opportunities were created through the three phases of EPWP; 200 205 work opportunities, 88 918 youth employed, 95 216 women employed and 552 disabled persons employed.
- There is an improved growth of 6,4% in the adult literacy levels from 2010 – 2018 in the Province. Despite the increase, the adult literacy rates for persons aged 20 years and older is the lowest in the country.
- From the Phakamile Mabija Apprenticeship Programme, 59 out of 67 apprentices successfully completed the programme and obtained work opportunities in the private and mining sector.
- For CWP, 127 056 jobs were created from 2012/13 to 2018/19 of which 45% represented youth, 73% women and 3,3% persons with disabilities. Since 2004/05, 39 660 jobs have been created through CASP and Illema Letsema.
- An increase in the number of formal dwellings as per community survey, from 78,3% in 1996 to 83,5% in 2016, and per GHS 2018 to 87,3%. By 2018, informal dwellings were at 11,7% and traditional dwellings at 0,7%. The GHS of 2018 reports that the Northern Cape was amongst the three provinces that had the highest percentage of households that lived in formal dwellings at 87,3%, Limpopo at 93% and Mpumalanga at 87,7%.
- Access to electricity increased by approximately 21,6% from 1996 to 2018, and access to sanitation improved by 30,7% for the same period, with access to water improving marginally by 4,1% for the same period.
- The percentage of households that continued to live without proper sanitation facilities have been declining consistently between 2002 and 2018, decreasing from 17,6% to 3,7% during this period.
- Access to Basic Services improved overall.
 - As per the 1996 Census, the percentage of households that has access to basic services, improved for water, electricity and sanitation. Refuse removal remained mainly static.

- Access to electricity increased from 81,6% in 2002, and to 91,7% by 2018. There is a steady overall growth despite a drop in 2003 and 2009.
- Access to sanitation increased from 75,5,1% in 2002, and to 90% by 2018. A steady upward year on year growth is visible.
- Access to water increased from 92,5% in 2002 and to 95,3% by 2018. Growth has been marginal for the period.
- Access to refuse removal fluctuated from 69,5% in 2002 and to 65,4% by 2018. There has been fluctuating improvements with access dropping significantly to 56% in 2009, but improving thereafter.
- The percentage of households that either had no sanitation facilities, or that had to use bucket toilets, has declined consistently between 2002 and 2018, decreasing from 17,6% to 3,7% during this period.
- Implementation of the Social and Rental Housing Programme by providing houses to low and medium income earners. Total of 70 511 houses delivered in the province from 1998 - 2019. Upgrading of informal settlements through provision of basic services to communities with 26 779 services installed 1998 - 2019.
- Restoring dignity of NC citizens by handing over title deeds with a total of 95 077 title deeds registered. The reduction of the title deed backlog being an ongoing commitment to address the backlog of 15 646.
- The poverty gap and the severity of poverty declined in all nine provinces between 2006 and 2016. According to the development indicators data, the province's poverty gap which measures the number of people living below the poverty line and the resources needed to push them above the poverty line registered a decline from 40,9% in 2005 to 26,2% in 2015, whilst the severity of poverty also decreased from 22,6% to 16,5% over the same period.
- Funding for social sector coupled with pro poor policies resulted in a reduction in poverty. Social assistance through grants has been the democratic government's most effective poverty-reduction tool. In comparison, social assistance was limited under apartheid, particularly for black people. Social grants beneficiaries increased from 232 102 in 2006/07 to 471 432 in 2017/18, with the objective of assisting individuals/ households living in poverty.

- Women constitute 53,3% of the total Provincial Population (1 162 109) as per the 2018 Mid-year population estimates (StatsSA), with 35,7% of women being Youth. According to the status of Women in the SA Economy, Aug 2015, women have not advanced as rapidly in terms of socio-economic empowerment and gender equality, and they remain hardest hit by inequality, poverty and unemployment, while they are often anchors in their families.
- Over the past 25 years community participation the cultural sector has contributed to growth in the sector and it provides various opportunities for the use of culture as an economic driver. Cultural identity and sense of belonging have been central to fostering social cohesion strengthening nation-building.

Looking Ahead

Significant progress has been made in addressing the legacy of apartheid, however despite these positive milestones, eradicating poverty and reducing inequality remain at the forefront of governments developmental agenda.

With the official unemployment rate for South Africa standing at 27,6% for the first quarter of 2019, the unemployment rate for the Northern Cape stood at 26% for the first quarter of 2019. Accelerating the provincial Job creation initiatives will require a strategic integrated focussed development moving forward bringing together the contribution of both state and non-state partners.

One of the key challenges faced by the Province in building an inclusive society is the shortage of skilled people in the province. The shortage is then attributed to the mismatch between the supply of skills and the labour market skills demand. The shortage of skills is further aggravated by a loss of skills to the other provinces that offer higher salaries and better conditions of employment. This phenomenon is referred to as the “brain drain”. The demand for skills continues to outstrip the supply of skills.

The Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) for Quarter1 of 2019, shows that the NEET rate is at 37,7% to date, with higher proportion being females. Youth development is therefore a critical priority. This category of people is vulnerable, as they are not occupied with work or

education, and the longer they remain in this category, the more disengaged they will be from the formal economy. Coupled to this is the worrying phenomenon of youth unemployment, which as at quarter 1 of 2019 stood at 36,4% of the total population of the province. Failure to address the challenges faced by young people poses a serious threat to the growth and stability of our province. As we prepare our youth for the future, there certainly needs to be a bias towards skills development enabling them to enter confidently the changing world of work and knowledge generation informed by the 4th Industrial Revolution- aimed at bridging the mismatch between the youth skills and employer needs- this at both the level of basic education and tertiary level.

With 58,3% of the NC population by 2018 dependent on social grants, signals that greater emphasis is required on eradicating poverty and reducing inequality. Addressing poverty in the province will require a multi-pronged and integrated approach where all sectors cohere and merge and work in synergy towards eradicating poverty and inequality.

- Consolidating all government interventions in terms of social protection and social services – to reduce inequality.
- Tackling the Social Determinants of Health (SDH) and modernising our health facilities to dramatically change the way in which we alleviate pain, restore health and improve the turnaround times in responding to patient needs is to find expression in the province on a practical level.
- To address the socio-economic determinants such as poverty, inequality, and drug and alcohol abuse on the levels of crime.
- Addressing the unemployment amongst youth need to be tackled head-on, to succeed in reducing crime levels and fight the abuse of substances by young people.
- Expanding on the gains made in access to basic services and ensuring continuous sustainable upgrading of informal settlements.
- Accelerating rural development and land reform aimed at expanding opportunities for emerging small holder farmers.
- Ensuring economic equity for women, disabled and marginalised.

The Province is facing the challenges of limited government resources, inadequate investment, ineffective maintenance of existing infrastructure and high levels of

unemployment. The lack of a centralised infrastructure planning, implementation and monitoring platform has a huge economic impact on the Province. Integrated development and planning thus becomes necessary to ensure strategic and decisive coordination and use of the limited pool of resources and targeted interventions aimed at building the economy.

To this end the Province has developed a Provincial Growth and Development Plan – Vision 2040 crafted around the vision of the National Development Plan. This will steer and direct the areas of economic growth, employment creation, poverty eradication and income redistribution to be achieved by 2040 in the Province through 4 identified drivers of change:

Driver 1: Economic Growth, Development and Prosperity

Driver 2: Social Equity & Human Welfare

Driver 3: Environmental Sustainability and Resilience

Driver 4: Accountable & Effective Governance

Methodology

The development of a national 25-year review on the performance of government, was a mandate from the Presidency. A Terms of Reference was developed on which the national review would be based, and which provincial departments had to provide input to. Provinces had a degree of autonomy with the development of provincial reviews.

Approach

The approach to this provincial report, was not to add to previous reviews, but to provide a sectoral and thematic overview of progress made in the Northern Cape since 1994. The Northern Cape Province adopted an Outcomes approach format for their 25-year review – mirroring the 14 Outcomes of the 2014 – 2019 Medium-Term Strategic Framework (MTSF). Each delivery chapter is dedicated to an Outcome, wherein sectoral commitments are contained, and of which performance was traced back as far back to 1994 as possible. Each Outcome/ Chapter follows the same layout in terms of identifying the inheritance of the sector, mapping the road followed since 1994, identifying persistent challenges and mapping future sectoral priorities for the province. This layout mirrors the national approach, providing a solid foundation for comparative and future reviews. Not all aspects of each sector's mandate are covered, but the most significant in terms of impact on the lives of the citizens of the province.

The sectoral and transversal themes per chapter, are:

- Chapter 1 - Quality basic education.
- Chapter 2 - A Long and healthy life for all South Africans.
- Chapter 3 - All people in South African are and feel safe.
- Chapter 4 - Decent employment through inclusive economic growth.
- Chapter 5 - Skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path.
- Chapter 6 - An Efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network.
- Chapter 7 - A Vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all.

- Chapter 8 - Sustainable Human settlements and improved quality of household life.
- Chapter 9 - Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system.
- Chapter 10 - Protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources.
- Chapter 11 - Create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world.
- Chapter 12 - An efficient, effective and development oriented public service.
- Chapter 13 - An inclusive and responsive social protection system.
- Chapter 14 - Nation building and social cohesion.
- Chapter 15 – The Fourth Industrial Revolution and Information Society Development.
- Chapter 16 – Youth Development.
- Chapter 17 – Gender.

Limitations

Compiling a 25-year-review of this magnitude, presented various challenges which affected the approach and content for this review. These limitations include:

- Configuration of departments changed over the years. This created a lot of difficulty in locating information, as sections of information are spread across different departments.
- Institutional memory faded with critical staff becoming unavailable over time.
- Lack of proper record keeping and access to such. Lack of a central repository of information required that the collection of information had to be solicited from various available avenues.
- Planning and reporting approaches evolved over the years and was not done in the same way. Initially, annual reporting had more focus on financial reporting. Performance information was not detailed, leaving gaps in reporting.
- Indicators changed over the years, leaving gaps in continuity of reporting.
- Research skills of all government employees contracted to the project, is not at the same level. Therefore, centralised editing became an important value add.
- Proper trend analyses are difficult as sources differed on the same information.

Method

Provincial departments were charged with compiling and collating information that pertains to their mandate- based on an agreed layout. A list of primary and secondary sources was identified and availed to compilers. The methodology employed was by-and-large based on qualitative analysis of sourced information. The sourced data includes quantitative information sourced from available literature reviews, and existing government plans and reports. Because of changing configurations, the Department of Environmental and Nature Conservation also employed interviews (a qualitative approach) to solicit information from available staff with institutional memory. To satisfy consistency and reliability criteria, StatsSa data was the main statistical source used. The Performance Monitoring and Evaluation Directorate was charged with the collating and editing of the final document.

Referencing technique

All sources used were duly acknowledged using the *APA in-text referencing style, as contained in Microsoft Word 2016. A complete bibliography was automatically generated from the in-text references, using the same imported *APA style. Consistent formatting was used as per Microsoft Word 2016.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOREWORD BY THE PREMIER	i
PART A.	iii
Executive Summary	iii
Methodology	xiii
List of Figures	xxix
List of Tables	xxxii
Acronyms/ Abbreviations	xxxv
PART B.	1
Legislation and Policy Framework	1
Northern Cape Provincial Legislature	7
Intergovernmental Relations	9
Finance	11
1.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	35
1.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	36
1.2.1 OVERVIEW	36
1.2.2 LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	39
1.3 PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	40
1.3.1 GROWTH IN EXPANSION ON GRADE R	40
1.3.2 LEARNER ENROLMENT	43
1.3.3 ANNUAL NATIONAL ASSESSMENT	48
1.3.4 GRADE 12 PASS RATE	50
1.3.5 NATIONAL SCHOOL NUTRITION PROGRAMME	53
1.3.6 LEARNER SCHOOL TRANSPORT	54
1.3.7 NO FEE SCHOOLS	56
1.3.8 PROVISION OF SCHOOL INFRASTRUCTURE	57
1.4 PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	60
1.5 LOOKING AHEAD	61
CHAPTER 2	64
2.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	64
2.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	66
2.2.1 OVERVIEW	66

2.2.2	LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	67
2.3	PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	68
2.3.1	LIFE EXPECTANCY AT BIRTH 2001 – 2021	69
2.3.2	PREVENTION OF UNNECESSARY MATERNAL AND CHILD DEATHS	69
2.3.2.1	Maternal Mortality	70
2.3.2.2	Infant and Under-five Mortality	72
2.3.3	HIV/ AIDS AND TB	73
2.3.4	HEALTHCARE FACILITIES AND INFRASTRUCTURE	74
2.3.5	HUMAN RESOURCES FOR HEALTH	75
2.3.6	HEALTH CARE FINANCING	77
2.3.7	QUALITY HEALTH CARE SERVICES	78
2.4	PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	78
2.5	LOOKING AHEAD	82
CHAPTER 3		86
3.1	PROBLEM STATEMENT	86
3.2	THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	87
3.2.1	OVERVIEW	87
3.2.2	LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	88
3.3	PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	89
3.3.1	REDUCING CRIME AND ENHANCING SAFETY IN THE NORTHERN CAPE	89
3.3.1.1	Contact crimes	90
3.3.1.2	Property Crimes	90
3.3.1.3	Sexual Offences	91
3.3.1.4	Crimes detected as a result of police action	92
3.3.2	EFFECTIVE CRIMINAL JUSTICE SYSTEM	93
3.3.3	INCREASING REHABILITATION OF PRISONERS	94
3.3.4	COMMUNITY PARTNERSHIPS	95
3.3.5	FIGHTING CORRUPTION	96
3.3.6	CYBER SECURITY	97
3.4	PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	97
3.5	LOOKING AHEAD	97
CHAPTER 4		100

4.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	100
4.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	101
4.2.1 OVERVIEW	101
4.2.2 LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	102
4.3 PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	104
4.3.1 GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP)	105
4.3.2 SECTOR CONTRIBUTION TO THE NORTHERN CAPE ECONOMY	106
4.3.3 UNEMPLOYMENT	107
4.3.4 JOB CREATION	108
4.3.4.1 EPWP	108
(a) EPWP Phase 1 (2004 – 2009)	109
(b) EPWP Phase 2 (2009 – 2014)	109
(c) EPWP Phase 3 (2014 – 2019)	109
4.3.4.2 Community Works Programme (CWP)	110
4.3.4.3 Phakamile Mabija Apprenticeship Programme	110
4.3.4.4 Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP) and Illema/ Letsema	111
4.3.4.5 Other job creation initiatives	113
4.3.5 TOURISM	113
4.3.6 MULTI-YEAR PROJECTS (9-POINT PLAN)	114
4.3.6.1 Upington Special Economic Zone (SEZ)	114
4.3.6.2 Agro-processing	114
4.3.6.3 SMME Strategy	115
4.3.6.4 Manufacturing Strategy	116
4.3.6.5 Diamond Strategy	116
(a) Kimberly International Diamond Jewellery Academy (KIDJA)	116
(b) Kimberley Diamond and Jewellery Incubator (KDJI)	117
4.3.7 KEY FLAGSHIP PROJECTS	117
4.3.7.1 Bloodhound Land Speed Record (LSR)	117
4.3.7.2 Big Hole Precinct	117
4.3.7.3 Skateboarding (Extreme sport)	118
(a) MMC project return on investment (2013-2016)	118
(b) KDC project return on investment (2013-2016)	118
4.4 PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	119
4.5 LOOKING AHEAD	120

CHAPTER 5	124
5.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	124
5.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	124
5.2.1 OVERVIEW	124
5.2.2 LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	125
5.3 PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 – 2019	126
5.3.1.1 Adult Literacy	126
5.3.1.2 Level of Education for 20 years and older	127
5.3.2 POST-SCHOOL EDUCATION AND TRAINING	128
5.3.2.1 TVET Colleges	128
5.3.2.2 CET Colleges	132
5.3.2.3 Sol Plaatje University	133
5.3.3 CENTRAL CO-ORDINATION OF SKILLS DEVELOPMENT	134
5.3.4 LEARNERSHIPS AND INTERNSHIPS AND SKILLS PROGRAMMES OFFERED IN THE PROVINCE	135
5.3.4.1 Opportunities created by the Provincial Administration	136
5.3.5 NORTHERN CAPE PREMIER’S BURSARY TRUST FUND	137
5.4 PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	137
5.5 LOOKING AHEAD	138
CHAPTER 6	140
6.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	140
6.1.1 WHAT GOVERNMENT INHERITED	140
6.1.2 PROVINCIAL INFRASTRUCTURE PERSPECTIVE	140
6.1.2.1 Overview	140
6.1.2.2 Access to electricity, water and sanitation	141
6.1.2.3 Public Works and Property Management	142
6.1.2.4 Transport Infrastructure	142
6.1.2.5 Knowledge economy	142
6.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	143
6.2.1 OVERVIEW	143
6.2.2 TRANSFORMATIVE LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	144
6.3 PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	146
6.3.1 NATIONAL PROGRESS	146

6.3.2	ACCESS TO WATER AND SANITATION (SIP15)	147
6.3.3	PROVISION OF ELECTRICITY	147
6.3.3.1	Electricity supply (SIP 10)	147
6.3.3.2	Renewable energy (SIP 8)	149
6.3.4	TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE	150
6.3.5	KNOWLEDGE ECONOMY (SIP15)	152
6.3.6	SQUARE KILOMETRE ARRAY (SIP 15)	153
6.3.7	SOUTH-EASTERN NODE AND CORRIDOR DEVELOPMENT (SIP 3)	154
6.3.8	KEY INFRASTRUCTURE PROJECTS	155
6.3.8.1	Boegoe Bay Deep Sea Port	155
6.3.8.2	De Aar Freight/Logistics Hub (Warehouse)	156
6.3.8.3	Douglas Belmont Branch line	156
6.3.8.4	Upington Cargo Hub	157
6.3.9	KATHU INDUSTRIAL PARK (KIP)	157
6.4	PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	158
6.5	LOOKING AHEAD	159
CHAPTER 7		162
7.1	PROBLEM STATEMENT	162
7.2	THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	163
7.2.1	OVERVIEW	163
7.2.2	LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	164
7.3	PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	165
7.3.1	LAND AND AGRARIAN REFORM	165
7.3.1.1	Land Redistribution	166
7.3.1.2	Land Restitution	168
7.3.2	FOOD SECURITY AND THE NUTRITION SITUATION	169
7.3.3	SMALLHOLDER PRODUCER'S DEVELOPMENT AND SUPPORT FOR AGRARIAN TRANSFORMATION	172
7.3.4	RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND ECONOMY (CRDP)	175
7.3.5	MEGA PROJECTS	177
7.3.6	DISASTER MANAGEMENT	180
7.3.6.1	Drought	181
7.3.6.2	Floods	182
7.3.6.3	Veld Fires	183

7.4	PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	183
7.5	LOOKING AHEAD	184
CHAPTER 8		186
8.1	PROBLEM STATEMENT	186
8.2	THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	187
8.2.1	OVERVIEW	187
8.2.2	LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	188
8.3	PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	189
8.3.1	HOUSING TYPES AND DWELLINGS	189
8.3.2	HOUSING DELIVERY	191
8.3.2.1	Distribution of houses per programme	191
8.3.3	NATIONAL UPGRADING SUPPORT PROGRAMME (NUSP)	192
8.3.4	ACCREDITATION OF MUNICIPALITIES	193
8.3.5	TITLE DEEDS RESTORATION PROGRAMME	195
8.3.6	ACQUISITION OF LAND	197
8.3.7	YOUTH EMPOWERMENT PROGRAMME	197
8.3.8	HOME OWNERSHIP EDUCATION	198
8.3.9	RENTAL HOUSING OPPORTUNITIES	199
8.3.9.1	Hull Street Integrated Project	199
8.3.9.2	Lerato Park Housing Project	199
8.4	PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	200
8.5	LOOKING AHEAD	201
CHAPTER 9		204
9.1	PROBLEM STATEMENT	204
9.2	THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	204
9.2.1	OVERVIEW	204
9.2.2	LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	205
9.3	PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 – 2019	206
9.3.1	MUNICIPAL BOUNDARIES AND RE-DETERMINATION OF MUNICIPALITIES	206
9.3.2	HOUSE OF TRADITIONAL LEADERS	208
9.3.3	SERVICE DELIVERY	209

9.3.4	FREE BASIC SERVICES	211
9.3.5	SUPPORT TO LOCAL GOVERNMENT	212
9.3.5.1	2004-2006 Project Consolidate	213
9.3.5.2	Five-Year Local Government Strategic Agenda (2006 – 2011).	213
9.3.5.3	2011 Local Government Turn Around Strategy (LGTAS)	213
9.3.5.4	Back to Basics 2014 – 2019	215
9.3.6	IMPROVING GOVERNANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY	218
9.3.6.1	Audit Outcomes of Municipalities	218
9.3.6.2	Tabling of Annual Reports of Municipalities	219
9.3.7	CITIZEN PARTICIPATION	220
9.3.8	DEVELOPING SKILLS AND CAPACITY	221
9.3.9	MUNICIPAL INFRASTRUCTURE GRANT (MIG)	223
9.3.10	COMMUNITY WORKS PROGRAMME (CWP)	223
9.4	PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	225
9.5	LOOKING AHEAD	226
CHAPTER 10		228
10.1	PROBLEM STATEMENT	228
10.2	THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	229
10.2.1	OVERVIEW	229
10.2.2	LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	230
10.2.2.1	Constitutional provisions enshrined in the Bill of Rights	230
10.2.2.2	National Development Plan (NDP) 2030	230
10.2.2.3	Key developmental priorities over the past 25 years	230
10.2.2.4	Key governmental commitments regarding policy pronouncements and plans - including legislation.	231
10.3	PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	232
10.3.1	WASTE MANAGEMENT	232
10.3.2	INCORPORATION OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS INTO PLANNING AND DECISION MAKING	233
10.3.3	ECONOMY	234
10.3.4	WILDLIFE ECONOMY	234
10.3.5	CONSERVATION	235
10.3.6	AWARENESS	235
10.3.7	COMPLIANCE AND ENFORCEMENT	236

10.3.8	CLIMATE CHANGE	236
10.3.9	OCEAN'S ECONOMY	236
10.3.9.1	Marine transport and manufacturing	236
10.3.9.2	Offshore oil and gas exploration	237
10.3.9.3	Aquaculture	237
(a)	Implementation of catalyst projects	237
(b)	Develop and implement Aquaculture Development Zones (ADZ's)	237
(c)	Marine protection services and ocean governance	237
(d)	Small harbour development	237
(e)	Coastal and marine tourism	237
10.3.10	IMPACT OF MILESTONES ON THE LIVES OF ORDINARY SOUTH AFRICANS	238
10.3.10.1	Waste management	238
10.3.10.2	Climate change	238
10.3.10.3	Biodiversity economy	238
10.3.10.4	Conservation	238
10.4	PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	239
10.4.1.1	Waste management	239
10.4.1.2	Wildlife economy	239
10.4.1.3	Conservation	239
10.4.1.4	Awareness	239
10.4.1.5	Climate change	239
10.4.1.6	Enabling and disabling factors	240
10.4.1.7	Measures developed and implemented to address disabling factors	240
10.4.1.8	Capacity	240
10.4.1.9	Research	240
10.5	LOOKING AHEAD	241
CHAPTER 11		243
11.1	PROBLEM STATEMENT	243
11.2	THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	243
11.2.1	OVERVIEW	243
11.2.2	LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	244
11.3	PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	245
11.3.1	PEOPLE TO PEOPLE RELATIONS IN AFRICA	245

11.3.2	SOUTH – SOUTH COOPERATION	246
11.3.3	NORTH – SOUTH COOPERATION	246
11.3.4	ECONOMIC DIPLOMACY	248
11.4	PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	248
11.5	LOOKING AHEAD	249
CHAPTER 12		251
12.1	PROBLEM STATEMENT	251
12.2	THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	251
12.2.1	OVERVIEW	251
12.2.2	LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	251
12.3	PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	254
12.3.1	DISTRIBUTION OF PUBLIC SERVANTS IN THE NORTHERN CAPE	254
12.3.2	COMPENSATION OF EMPLOYEES	255
12.3.3	ORGANISATIONAL DESIGN	257
12.3.4	OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK (OMF)	258
12.3.5	CAREER OF CHOICE	258
12.3.6	VACANCY RATE	259
12.3.7	PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT AND DEVELOPMENT	259
12.3.8	FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE AND PROHIBITION OF DOING BUSINESS WITH THE STATE	260
12.3.9	NATIONAL ANTI-CORRUPTION HOTLINE (NACH)	260
12.3.10	PRESIDENTIAL HOTLINE	261
12.3.10.1	Progress	261
12.3.10.2	Achievements	262
12.3.11	BATHO PELE	263
12.3.12	FRONTLINE SERVICE DELIVERY (FSDM)	263
12.3.13	CITIZEN BASED MONITORING (CBM)	265
12.3.14	MANAGEMENT PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT TOOL (MPAT)	265
12.3.15	AUDIT OUTCOMES	267
12.3.16	30 DAY PAYMENTS	270
12.3.17	PROVINCIAL GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT PLAN (PDGP)	270
12.4	PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	270
12.5	LOOKING AHEAD	271

CHAPTER 13	274
13.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	274
13.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	275
13.2.1 OVERVIEW	275
13.2.2 LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	276
13.3 PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	277
13.3.1 POVERTY	277
13.3.1.1 Poverty Lines	278
13.3.1.2 Poverty and the Severity of Poverty.	280
13.3.2 POVERTY AND FOOD SECURITY IN THE PROVINCE	281
13.3.2.1 Vulnerability to Hunger.	281
13.3.2.2 Source of Income Per Province.	282
13.3.2.3 Social Grants.	283
13.3.2.4 Impact of Social Grants on Poverty Alleviation.	285
13.3.3 PROVINCIAL POVERTY ALLEVIATION PROGRAMMES	285
13.3.3.1 War on Poverty.	285
13.3.4 FOOD SECURITY	290
13.3.5 EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT (ECD)	292
13.3.5.1 Population Distribution.	292
13.3.5.2 Early Childhood Development Enrolment.	293
13.3.5.3 Early Childhood Development Grant.	294
13.3.6 SOCIAL WELFARE SERVICES	294
13.3.6.1 Child and Youth Care Services.	295
13.3.6.2 Services to Older Persons.	295
13.3.6.3 Services to Persons with Disabilities.	296
13.3.6.4 Social Welfare Personnel.	296
13.3.7 PREVENTION SERVICES	296
13.3.7.1 Substance Abuse Treatment Centre.	296
13.4 PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	297
13.5 LOOKING AHEAD	298

CHAPTER 14	301
-------------------	------------

14.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	301
-------------------------------	------------

14.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	302
14.2.1 OVERVIEW	302
14.2.2 LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	304
14.3 PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 - 2019	305
14.3.1 ARTS AND CULTURE	305
14.3.1.1 Music and Dance Development	306
14.3.1.2 Visual Arts and Craft	306
14.3.1.3 The Northern Cape Writers Festival	307
14.3.1.4 Infrastructure and Facilities	307
14.3.2 MUSEUM AND HERITAGE SERVICES	307
14.3.3 LANGUAGE SERVICES	309
14.3.4 GEOGRAPHIC NAME CHANGES (NAMING AND RENAMING)	310
14.3.5 LIBRARY SERVICES	312
14.3.6 ARCHIVE SERVICES	315
14.3.7 SPORT AND RECREATION	315
14.3.7.1 Sport	316
14.3.8 RECREATION	318
14.3.9 SCHOOL SPORT	319
14.3.10 FIFA WORLD CUP	320
14.3.11 BILL OF RESPONSIBILITIES, CONSTITUTIONAL VALUES AND NATIONAL SYMBOLS	321
14.4 PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	322
14.5 LOOKING AHEAD	323
 CHAPTER 15	 326
 15.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	 326
15.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	327
15.2.1 OVERVIEW	327
15.2.2 LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	327
15.3 PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 – 2019	328
15.3.1 PROVINCIAL INFORMATION SOCIETY STRATEGY DEVELOPMENT: INSPIRE	328
15.3.1.1 Background	328
15.3.1.2 Progress since 1994	329
15.3.1.3 e-Infrastructure	329
15.3.1.4 e-SMME:	329

15.3.1.5 e-Government:	330
15.3.1.6 Local Content Development	330
15.3.1.7 e-Education	330
15.3.1.8 mLab	330
15.3.2 PROVINCIAL INFORMATION COMMUNICATIONS AND TECHNOLOGY	332
15.3.2.1 Background	332
15.3.2.2 Progress since 1994	334
15.3.3 PROVINCIAL BROADBAND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT	335
15.3.3.1 Background	335
15.3.3.2 Progress since 1994	336
(a) John Taolo Gaetsewe Wireless Mesh Network (WMN)	337
(b) Broadband Connectivity Proof-of-Concept	338
(c) Universal Services Access Agency of South Africa, Joe Morolong Local Municipality	338
(d) Square Kilometer Array	339
15.4 PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	339
15.4.1 PROVINCIAL INFORMATION SOCIETY STRATEGY DEVELOPMENT: INSPIRE	339
15.4.2 PROVINCIAL INFORMATION COMMUNICATIONS AND TECHNOLOGY	339
15.4.3 PROVINCIAL BROADBAND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT	340
15.5 LOOKING AHEAD	341
15.5.1 PROVINCIAL INFORMATION SOCIETY STRATEGY DEVELOPMENT: INSPIRE	341
15.5.2 PROVINCIAL INFORMATION COMMUNICATIONS AND TECHNOLOGY	341
15.5.3 PROVINCIAL BROADBAND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT	342
CHAPTER 16	345
16.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	345
16.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	345
16.2.1 OVERVIEW	345
16.2.2 LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	346
16.3 PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 – 2019	346
16.3.1 NORTHERN CAPE YOUTH PROFILE	346
16.3.2 CO-ORDINATION OF YOUTH DEVELOPMENT IN THE NC PROVINCE	347
16.4 PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	351
16.5 LOOKING AHEAD	351

CHAPTER 17	353
17.1 PROBLEM STATEMENT	353
17.2 THE JOURNEY SINCE 1994	354
17.2.1 OVERVIEW	354
17.2.2 LEGISLATION AND POLICIES	355
17.3 PROGRESS FOR THE PERIOD 1994 TO 2019	356
17.3.1 NORTHERN CAPE PROVINCIAL CO-ORDINATING BODY (OSW)	357
17.3.2 STRENGTHENING OF THE PROVINCIAL GENDER MACHINERY	358
17.3.3 GENDER MAINSTREAMING IN THE PUBLIC SERVICE	359
17.3.3.1 Gender Barometer	359
17.3.3.2 Organisational Culture	360
17.3.3.3 Budgeting	360
17.3.3.4 Capacity Building	360
17.4 PERSISTENT CHALLENGES	361
17.5 LOOKING AHEAD	362
Bibliography	364
PART C.	370
Synopsis of Progress for the period 1994-2019	370

List of Figures

Figure 1: Provincial budget summary: 1998/99 to 2017/18.....	11
Figure 2: Social Sector Payments per Vote: 2000/01 to 2017/18.....	14
Figure 3: Non Social Sector Payments per Vote: 2000/01 to 2017/18	19
Figure 4: Compensation of Employees Expenditure.....	21
Figure 5: Total Headcount vs Personnel Budget.....	22
Figure 6: Goods and Services Expenditure	23
Figure 7: Transfers and Subsidies Expenditure	24
Figure 8: Payments for capital assets: 2000/01 to 2017/18.....	25
Figure 9: Cumulative unauthorised expenditure trends (2010/11 – 2017/18)	27
Figure 10: Number of Grade R Learners in Public Ordinary Schools, 1997-2019	41
Figure 11: Grade R Practitioners in Public Ordinary Schools.	42
Figure 12: Grade R Learner Funding Growth, 2013/14-2017/18 Financial Year.	43
Figure 13: Percentage of Persons Aged 20 Year and older with no Formal Schooling Per Province, 2002 and 2017.....	44
Figure 14: Percentage of Persons Aged 7-24 Years who Attended Education Institutions by Province, 2002 and 2018.....	45
Figure 15: Upper Secondary Completion Rate Among Individuals Aged 25 Years and Younger by Province, 2016.	45
Figure 16: Total Number of Learners in Public Ordinary Schools, 2002-2018.....	46
Figure 17: Per Capita Spending on Learners, 2006-2018.....	48
Figure 18: Performance of Grade 12 Pass Rate, 1994-2018.....	50
Figure 19: Bachelor Performance , 2009-2018.....	51
Figure 20: Learner Access to National School Nutrition Programme, 2004/5-2017/18.....	53
Figure 21: Learner School Transport, 2009/10-2018/19 Financial Year.	55
Figure 22: Life expectancy at birth between 2001 and 2021, Northern Cape Province.....	69
Figure 23: Maternal deaths per 100,000 live births, Northern Cape 1998 - 2007.....	70
Figure 24: Maternal Mortality Rate figures between 2012/13 and 2017/18 financial years in the NC Province	71
Figure 25: IMR and U5MR (2013/14-2017/18) in the NC Province	72
Figure 26: Number of patients on ART in the Northern Cape Province between 2004 and 2018	74
Figure 27: Percentage of provincial and national population that is rural, compared with the number of CS doctors and number of facilities accredited for CS by province (2001-2013)	77
Figure 28: Total Contact crimes in the Northern Cape from 2001/02 to 2004/05 as per Stats SA NC Provincial Profile, 2004	90
Figure 29: Total number of Contact crimes in the Northern Cape province from 2008/09 to 2017/18 As per Annual Crime Statistic Reports	90
Figure 30: Total Property related crimes in the Northern Cape Province from 2001/02 to 2004/05	91

Figure 31: Total Property related crimes in the Northern Cape Province from 2008/09 to 2017/18	91
Figure 32: Total Rape cases in the Northern Cape Province from 2001/02 to 2004/05	92
Figure 33: Total number of Sexual Offences in the Northern Cape from 2003/04 to 2017/18	92
Figure 34: Total Number of Crimes detected as a result of police action between 2001/2 and 2004/5	93
Figure 35: Number of Crimes detected as a result of police action in the Northern Cape from 2008/9 to 2017/18	93
Figure 36: Percentage distribution of households' satisfaction with the way in which courts generally deal with perpetrators of crime in the Northern Cape, 2010 - 2017/18.....	94
Figure 37: Percentage distribution of households in the NC, willing to welcome a former prisoner back in the community and offer them employment, 2014/15 - 2017/18.....	95
Figure 38: Living conditions survey 2014/15	102
Figure 39: GDP Growth (Year-on-Year).....	105
Figure 40: : Unemployment (NC vs SA).....	108
Figure 41: Tourism impact on the South African economy	113
Figure 42: Adult Literacy Rates for persons aged 20 years and older by Province, 2009-2017	126
Figure 43: Level of education (Higher education) for those aged 20 years and older by province	127
Figure 44: NC Province HRD Governance Strategy	135
Figure 45: Distress Condition Ratings for Surfacing Defects for the period 2017-18.....	152
Figure 46: Percentage of Hectares delivered from 2009/10 to 2017/18 per Province (DRDLR, 31 March 2018)	167
Figure 47: Land distributed from 1994 in the Northern Cape Province	168
Figure 48: Beneficiaries of Land distribution per five year term from 1994 - 2017/18.....	168
Figure 49: Percentage claims settled per province from 2009/10 to 2017/18	168
Figure 50: Households involved in and nature of agricultural production activities from 2009 - 2018 as per the General household surveys	170
Figure 51: Percentage of Household living in Formal, Traditional, and Informal Dwellings (grouped).....	190
Figure 52: Number of Houses delivered in 5 year cohorts (1994 - 2018/19)	191
Figure 53: Number of title deeds registered in 5 year cohorts for the period 1994/1995 - 2014/2019	196
Figure 54: Percentage of households with access to Basic Services 1996 and 2001.....	209
Figure 55: Percentage of Households with Access to Basic Services for the period 2002 - 2018.....	209
Figure 56: Percentage of Household with no Toilet Facility	210
Figure 57: NC Indigent Households for the period 2004 -2016.....	211
Figure 58: Number of household with access to FBS from 2004-2017	212
Figure 59: Total Headcount per Year: 2002-2017.....	254
Figure 60: The below shows the provincial payments on compensation of employees.	256
Figure 61: Table below indicates total provincial headcount versus personnel budget between 2002/03 and 2017/18 FY.....	256
Figure 62: Hotline calls per province	262

Figure 63: Percentage calls resolved	262
Figure 65: MPAT performance per KPA, per cycle (MPAT 1.2 – 1.8)	266
Figure 65: 30 Day Payment of Suppliers 2017/18- 2018/19.....	270
Figure 66: Poverty Headcount in the Northern Province, 2015	279
Figure 67: Percentage of Households Experiencing Hunger, 2001-2011.	281
Figure 68: Households in the Northern Cape Experiencing Food Adequacy, 2009-2018.....	282
Figure 69: Percentage Distribution of Sources of Income Per Province, 2017	283
Figure 70: Total Number of Grant Recipients, 2006/07-2017/18 Financial Year.	284
Figure 71: War on Poverty Performance Individual Referrals, 2013/14-2018/19 Financial Year.....	288
Figure 72: Change Agents Performance, 2015/16-2018/19 Financial Year.....	289
Figure 73: Population 0-4 attending and not attending a Pre-School/ ECD Institution, 2016.....	292
Figure 74: Provision of Libraries in the Province, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.....	312
Figure 75: Provision of Library Material in All Formats, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.....	313
Figure 76: Number of Library of Library Users , 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.	314
Figure 77: Libraries Providing Free Internet Services, 2013/14 to 2017/18 Financial Year.....	315
Figure 78: Number of People who benefited from the Capacity Building Programmes.	317
Figure 79: High Performance , 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.....	317
Figure 80: Participation in Active Recreation Events, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.	318
Figure 81: Participation of Learners in School Sport Tournaments, 2009/10-2017/18.....	319
Figure 82: Levels of management service and process maturity in IT	333
Figure 83: Percentage of households with access to the Internet at home, or for which at least one member has access to, or used the Internet by province, 2017	335
Figure 84: Provincial Strategy for Provincial IT, NC	342
Figure 85: Provincial Broadband Value Chain.....	342
Figure 86: NC Percentage of youth (15-24) who are not employment, education or training 2013-2019	346
Figure 87: NC Youth (15-34) unemployment rate Q1 20018 - 2019.....	347

List of Tables

Table 1: Annual National Assessment For Mathematics and Language for Grades 3, 6 and 9, 2011-2014	49
Table 2: Grade 12 Pass Rate in Mathematics, Physical Science and Computer Application Technology	52
Table 3: The Number of No Fee Schools, Learners and Budget Allocation.	56
Table 4: Provision of School Infrastructure, 2009/10-2017/18	57
Table 5: Distribution of selected health care professionals in the public and private health sectors in the NC Province in 1996	66
Table 6: Number of public healthcare facilities distribution in the Northern Cape Province	75
Table 7: Selected health professionals in public and private sector in 2017 in the NC Province	76
Table 8: The ten leading causes of death by age and sex 2016.....	80
Table 9: Sexual Offences courts established from August 2013 - March 2018 in the Northern Cape Province ..	94
Table 10: Northern Cape % GDP contribution by activity at current prices	106
Table 11: Job created against 2020 PGDS target per job driver	107
Table 12: EPWP work opportunities per phase	110
Table 13: CASP performance 2004/05 - 2013/14	112
Table 14: Illema/ Letsema performance 2008/09 - 2013/14	112
Table 15: Domestic and international arrivals in the NC	114
Table 16: SMMEs and Cooperatives supported.....	115
Table 17: EPWP Phase 4 targets for the NC.....	120
Table 18: Number of TVET colleges and student headcount enrolment by Province, 2016	129
Table 19: Number of student headcount enrolment in TVET colleges by qualification category and province,2016.....	129
Table 20: Number of students in TVET colleges who registers, wrote and completed NC (V) qualifications by province and level, 2016.....	130
Table 21: Number of students in TVET colleges who registered, wrote and completed report 190/1 N1 to N3 qualifications for Engineering Studies by province, 2016.....	130
Table 22: Number of students in TVET colleges who registered, wrote and completed Report 190/1 N4 to N6 part-qualification for Engineering Studies by province, 2016	131
Table 23: Number of students in TVET colleges who registered, wrote and completed Report 191 N4 to N6 qualifications for Business Studies by province,2016.....	131
Table 24: Number of students in CET colleges, by college and programme, 2016	132
Table 25: Number of students, lecturers and Community Learning Centres, by college, 2016	132
Table 26: Number of students in CET colleges who registered, wrote and completed the GETC: ABET Level 4	133
Table 27: Number of first-time undergraduate students enrolled at SPU, 2014 – 2018	134
Table 28: Skills output (MSF 2014-2019)	136
Table 29: Provincial Training and Development initiatives	136
Table 30: Eskom electrification projects in the NC.....	148

Table 31: REIPPPP in the NC by 2018	149
Table 32: Road Network per Road Type	151
Table 33: NC Roads rehabilitated since 2014	152
Table 34: Land delivery through redistribution per district per five year term (NC Province 15 year review, March 2009, page 48).....	166
Table 35: Number of projects, beneficiaries and hectares distributed from 2009/10 to 2017/18 in the Northern Cape (DRDLR, 31 March 2018).....	167
Table 36: Land Restitution progress in the Northern Cape from 1994 - 2018 as compiled from the NC 15 year review report and the DRDLR Annual statistical report 2018	169
Table 37: Number of Hectares per district planted with various crops through 18 projects between 2014/15 and 2017/18	171
Table 38: Support packages implemented in the Northern Cape between 2004 and 2018	172
Table 39: Support initiatives implemented in the Northern Cape to Smallholder farmers	173
Table 40: Implementation of the CRDP Programme	175
Table 41: Progress on Five Mega projects prioritised in the Northern Cape Province, as per Annual Performance Reports	177
Table 42: Summary of Droughts affecting the Northern Cape Province from 2004 - 2017	181
Table 43: Number of Households living in Formal, Traditional, and Informal Dwellings (Grouped).....	190
Table 44: Housing units delivered per Programme in 5 year cohorts for the period 1994/1999 – 2014/2019 ..	192
Table 45: NC: Accredited Municipalities.....	195
Table 46: Land acquired since 1994 by COGHSTA	197
Table 47: Number of Youth benefitted from Youth Empowerment Programmes in COGHSTA	197
Table 48: Households trained on Home Ownership Education Programme	198
Table 49: B2B categories of municipal performance: "well", "at risk" and "dysfunctional" during 2015/16	215
Table 50: Municipal: Audit Outcomes for the period 2006/7 - 2017/18.....	219
Table 51: Tabling of Annual reports by municipalities for the period 2006/07 to 2017/18.....	219
Table 52: Number of opportunities created per financial year for the period 2011/12 to 2018/19	224
Table 53: Headcount per Vote.....	255
Table 54: Artisanhip, Internship, Learnership, WIL and Bursaries programmes 2017/18	258
Table 55: Top 10 Service Delivery Complaints for Northern Cape Province	261
Table 56: FSDM coverage (June 2011 to September 2017).....	264
Table 57: FSD Sites.....	264
Table 58: Provincial Trend Analysis per Department, MPAT 1.2 to MPAT 1.8	266
Table 59: Actual audit outcomes for the Northern Cape provincial departments for the period 2009/10 to 2017/18	268
Table 60: Summary of the audit outcomes of provincial public entities for the period 2009/10 to 2015/16 ...	269
Table 61: Poverty Gap and the Severity of Poverty Per Province, 2006-2015.....	280
Table 62: Total number of Soup Kitchens Funded and Total Expenditure, 2009/10-2017/18.....	290

Table 63: The number of Drop-In-Centres funded and total expenditure from 2009/10-2017/18 290

Table 64: The number of beneficiaries and the budget for Social Relief, 2009/10-2017/18 291

Table 65: Number of ECD Centres, Learners and Practitioners and Expenditure. 2015/16-2017/18 293

Table 66: INSPIRE collaborative events in the NC..... 331

Table 67: Number youth benefiting from youth development programmes from 2009- 2018/19 350

Acronyms/ Abbreviations

	Acronym	Description
1	ABET	Adult Basic Education and Training
2	ACE	Advanced Certificate in Education
3	ACUMDA	African Cultural Music and Dance Association
4	ADRM	Alternative Dispute Resolution Mechanism
5	ADRMP	Agricultural Disaster Risk Management Plan
6	AFASA	African Farmers Association of South Africa
7	AgriNK	Agri-Noord-Kaap
8	AHS	African Horse Sickness
9	AI	Artificial Intelligence
10	AI	Avian Influenza
11	AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
12	AIMS	Agriculture Information Management System
13	ANA	Annual National Assessments
14	ANC	Antenatal Care
15	APAP	Agricultural Policy Action Plan
16	APR	Agricultural Potential Reports
17	AR	Annual Report
18	ARC	Agricultural Research Council
19	ART	Anti-Retroviral Treatment
20	ARV	Anti-Retro Viral
21	ASF	African Swine Fever
22	ASGISA	Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa
23	AV	Autonomous Vehicles
24	B2B	Back 2 Basics
25	BBBEE	Broad-based Black Economic Empowerment
26	BBi	Broadband Infraco
27	BCP	Business Continuity Plan
28	BHSSC	Bloodhound Supersonic Car
29	BNG	Breaking New Ground
30	CAADP	Comprehensive African Agricultural Development
31	CAPS	Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement
32	CASP	Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme
33	CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
34	CCMDD	Central Chronic Management Dispensing and Distribution
35	CCS	Compulsory Community Service
36	CDG	Care Dependency Grant
37	CDW	Community Development Workers
38	CEM	Council of Education Ministers
39	CETC	Community Education Training Centres
40	CHC	Community Health Centre
41	CITES	Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora
42	CMIP	Consolidated Municipal Infrastructure Programme

	Acronym	Description
43	COBIT	Control Objectives for Information and Related Technologies)
44	COGHSTA	Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs
45	COSAFA	Council of Southern Africa Football Associations
46	CPA	Communal Property Associations
47	CPF	Community Police Forum
48	CRDP	Comprehensive Rural Development Programme
49	CSF	Community Safety Forum
50	CSG	Child Support Grant
51	CSP	Concentrating Solar Power
52	CWP	Community Works Programme
53	DAFF	Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
54	DALRRD	Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
55	DDD	Data-Driven Districts
56	DEC	Departmental Executive Committee
57	DEDAT	Department of Economic Development and Tourism
58	DFA	Development Facilitation Act
59	DHET	Department of Higher Education and Training
60	DHIS	District Health Information System
61	DHMIS	District Health Management information System
62	DHS	Department of Human Settlements
63	DLA	Department of Land Affairs
64	DM	District Municipalities
65	DoC	Department of Communications
66	DRDLR	Department for Rural Development and Land Reform
67	DRP	Disaster Recovery Plan
68	DRPW	Department of Roads and Public Works
69	DTSL	Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison
70	DWS	Department of Water and Sanitation
71	ECD	Early Childhood Development
72	EGDF	Economic Growth and Development Fund
73	EGRA	Early Grade Reading Assessment
74	EIP	Environmental Implementation Plan
75	EMS	Emergency Medical Services
76	EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
77	EXCO	Executive Committee
78	FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization
79	FAS	Foetal Alcohol Syndrome
80	FB	Frances Baard
81	FBDM	Frances Baard District Municipality
82	FCG	Foster Care Grant
83	FET	Further Education and Training
84	FLISP	Finance Linked Individual Subsidy Programme
85	FPL	Food Poverty Line

	Acronym	Description
86	FPSU	The Farmer Production Support Unit
87	GADI	Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute
88	GDP	Gross Domestic Product
89	GDS	Growth and Development Summit
90	GEAR	Growth, Employment and Redistribution
91	GET	General Education and Training
92	GFS	Government Finance Statistic
93	GHE	Government Health Expenditure
94	GHS	General Household Survey
95	GP	General Practitioner
96	GTAC	Government Technical Advisory Centre
97	GVA	Gross Value Add
98	GWK	Griekwaland-Wes Kooperasie
99	HCE	Housing Consumer Education
100	HEI	Higher Education Institutions
101	HIMS	Health Information Management System
102	HIV	Human Immunodeficiency Virus
103	HRD	Human Resource Development
104	HRDC	Human Resource Development Council
105	HRH	Human Resources for Health
106	HSS	Housing Subsidy System
107	ICASA	Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
108	ICT	Information Communication Technology
109	IDC	Industrial Development Corporation
110	IDP	Integrated Development Plans
111	IFSNP	Integrated Food Security & Nutrition Programme
112	IFSS	Integrated Food Security Strategy of South Africa
113	IGRF	Intergovernmental Relations Framework
114	IMR	Infant Mortality Rate
115	IMS	Information and Management System
116	INEP	Integrated National Electrification Program
117	INSPIRE	International Science Promoting Innovation and Entrepreneurship
118	IoT	Internet-of-Things
119	IPAP	Industrial Policy Action Plan
120	ISAD	Information Society and Development
121	IT	Information Technology
122	ITIL	Information Technology Infrastructure Library
123	IUDF	Integrated Urban Development Framework
124	JCPS	Justice, Crime Prevention and Security
125	JTG	John Taolo Gaetsewe
126	KDC	Kimberley Diamond Cup
127	KIDJA	Kimberley Diamond and Jewelry Academy
128	KIDJI	Kimberley Diamond and Jewelry Incubator

	Acronym	Description
129	KKC	Kalahari Kid Corporation
130	KPA	Key Performance Area
131	KZN	Kwazulu Natal
132	LBPL	Lower Bound Poverty Line
133	LE	Life Expectancy at Birth
134	LED	Local Economic Development
135	LGTAS	Local Government Turn Around Strategy
136	LGTSA	Local Government Strategic Agenda
137	LM	Local Municipalities
138	LPDP	Livestock Production and Development Programme
139	LRAD	Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development
140	LSTM	Learner Teacher Support Material
141	MAFISA	Micro Agricultural Finance Institutions of South Africa
142	MBAP	Mineral Beneficiation Action Plan
143	MCWH	Mother, Child and Women's Health
144	MDG	Millennium Development Goal
145	MerSETA	Manufacturing, Engineering and Related Services Sector Education and Training Authority
146	MGE	Mzansi Golden Economy
147	MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
148	MISA	Municipal Infrastructure Support Agency
149	MMC	Maloof Money Cup
150	MMR	Maternal Mortality Ratio
151	MOU	Memorandum of Understanding.
152	MPA	Marine Protected Area
153	MPAT	Management Performance Assessment Tool
154	MRC	Medical Research Council
155	MSCC	Mittah Seperepere Convention Centre
156	MTEF	Medium-Term Expenditure Framework
157	MTP	Maritime Transport Policy
158	MTSF	Medium-Term Strategic Framework
159	MW	Megawatts
160	NAMC	National Agricultural Marketing Council
161	NC	Northern Cape
162	NCACC	Northern Cape Arts and Culture Council
163	NCCEMD	National Committee on Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths
164	NCDOE	Northern Cape Department of Education
165	NCDoH	Northern Cape Department of Health
166	NCDSAC	Northern Cape Department of Sport, Arts and Culture
167	NCISS	Northern Cape Information Society Strategy
168	NCPG	Northern Cape Provincial Government
169	NCPGDP	Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Plan
170	NCPL	Northern Cape Provincial Legislature
171	NCPLRO	Northern Cape Provincial Land Reform Office

	Acronym	Description
172	NCPS	National Crime Prevention Strategy
173	NCPTF	Northern Cape Premiers Bursary Trust Fund
174	NCRES	Northern Cape Renewable Energy Strategy
175	NCS	National Curriculum Statements
176	NCTA	Northern Cape Tourism Authority
177	NDA	National Department of Agriculture
178	NDMC	National Disaster Management Centre
179	NDoH	National Department of Health
180	NDP	National Development Plan
181	NDPE	National Diploma in Education
182	NEMA	National Environmental Management Act
183	NERPO	National Emergent Red Meat Organization
184	NETF	National Education and Training Forum
185	NGO	Non-Governmental Organizations
186	NGP	New Growth Path
187	NHBRC	National Home Builders registration Council
188	NHFC	National Housing Finance Corporation
189	NHI	National Health Insurance
190	NICC	National Interim Consultative Committee
191	NIHE	National Institute of Higher Education
192	NIP	National Infrastructure Plan
193	NNSSF	National Norms and Standards for School Funding
194	NPDE	National Professional Diploma in Education
195	NPO	Non Profit Organisations.
196	NQF	National Qualification Framework
197	NSDA	Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement
198	NSNP	National School Nutrition Programme
199	NSRP	National Sport and Recreation Plan
200	NTTF	National Education and Training Forum
201	NUSP	National Upgrading Support Programme
202	NVC	New Venture Creation
203	OBE	Outcomes Based Education
204	OHSC	Office of Health Standards Compliance
205	OPCA	Operation Clean Audit
206	OPCACC	Operation Clean Audit Coordinating Committee
207	OSD	Occupation Specific Dispensation
208	OSS	Open Source Software
209	OTP	Office of the Premier
210	PAIA	Promotion of Access to Information Act
211	PFMA	Public Finance Management Act
212	PGDP	Provincial Growth and Development Plan
213	PGITOC	Provincial Government Information Technology Council
214	PGNCC	Provincial Geographic Name Change Council

	Acronym	Description
215	PHC	Primary Health Care
216	PICC	Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission
217	PIGF	Premier's Intergovernmental Forum
218	PKS	Pixley Ka Seme
219	PKSDM	Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality
220	PLAS	Proactive Land Acquisition Strategy
221	PLC	Provincial Language Committee
222	PLF	Provincial Language Forum
223	PLWA	People Living with Aids
224	PMTCT	Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission
225	PNC	Presidential National Commission
226	PNC on ISAD	Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development
227	POA	Programme of Action
228	POPI	Protection of Personal Information Act
229	PPP	Public Private Partnership
230	PRMG	Provincial Roads Maintenance Grant
231	PSDF	Provincial Skills Development Forum
232	PSL	Professional Soccer League
233	PSNP	Primary School Nutrition Programme
234	QLFS	Quarterly Labour Force Survey
235	RBIG	Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant
236	RDP	Reconstruction and Development Plan
237	REID	Rural Enterprise and Industrial Development
238	REIPPPP	Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme
239	REQV	Relative Education Qualification Value.
240	RFQ	Request for Quotation
241	RID	Rural Investment Development
242	RISFSA	Road Infrastructure Strategic Framework for South Africa
243	RMSH	Robert Mangaliso Sobukwe Hospital
244	RUMC	Rural Urban Market Centre
245	RVF	Rift Valley Fever
246	SA	South Africa
247	SABC	South African Broadcasting Commission.
248	SANAC	South African National Aids Council
249	SANRAL	South African National Roads Agency Limited
250	SAPO	South African Post Office
251	SAPS	South African Police Service
252	SAQA	South African Qualifications Authority
253	SARAO	South African Radio Astronomy Observatory
254	SASCE	South Africa Schools Choral
255	SASSA	South African Social Security Agency
256	SCoA	Standard Chart of Accounts

	Acronym	Description
257	SDBIP	Service Delivery Budget Implementation Plan
258	SDF	Spatial Development Framework
259	SDG	Sustainable Development Goal
260	SDH	Social Determinants of Health
261	SDIP	Service Delivery Improvement Plan
262	SES	Socio Economic Status
263	SETA	Sector Education and Training Authorities
264	SGB	School Governing Body
265	SHIs	Social Housing Institutions
266	SHRA	Social Housing Regulatory Authority
267	SIATIS	South Africa Information Technology Industry Strategy Project
268	SIP	Strategic Integrated Projects
269	SITA	State Information Technology Agency
270	SKA	Square Kilometre Array
271	SLAG	Settlement Land Acquisition Grant
272	SMME	Small, Medium and Micro Enterprises
273	Solar PV	Solar Photovoltaic
274	SPLUMA	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act
275	SPU	Sol Plaatje University
276	StatsSA	Statistics South Africa
277	TB	Tuberculosis
278	TOGAF	The Open Group Architecture Framework
279	TVET	Technical Vocational Education Training
280	U5MR	Under five Mortality Rate
281	UBPL	Upper Bound Poverty Line
282	UHC	Universal Health Coverage
283	UISP	Upgrading Informal Settlements Programme
284	UN	United Nations
285	UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
286	URSI	Union of Radio Science
287	USAASA	Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa
288	USDG	Urban Settlements Development Grant
289	VEP	Victim Empowerment Programme
290	VNP	Virtual Private Network
291	VOCS	Victim of Crime Survey
292	W&R SETA	Wholesale and Retail Sector Education and Training Authority
293	WHO	World Health Organisation
294	WIL	Work Integrated Learning
295	WMN	Wireless Mesh Network
296	XDR	Extreme Drug Resistant
297	ZFM	Zwelentlanga Fatman Mgcawu

PART B.

Legislation and Policy Framework

Introduction

As a country, South Africans have been witness to the evolution of the legislation and policies over the last twenty-five years of our democracy, with the Constitution of South Africa and the Reconstruction and Development Plan being the most prominent founding pillars. Since 1994, there has been very little shift in policy, but more of a change in focus and, in particular, an elaboration of priorities. This is borne out by the fact that, whilst in the first decade of our democracy the emphasis lay in the provisioning of social services, in recent years there has been a conscious attempt by government to stimulate economic growth and development by, amongst other things, introducing development planning instruments at National, Provincial and District levels, and the introduction of the ASGISA programme.

This section will succinctly outline the development of key policy and legislation developed over the last twenty-five years, which have become instrumental in shaping our democracy, driving the developmental agenda as well as steering government policy and service delivery implementation.

The Constitution of RSA, 1996

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 1996, has been hailed as one of the most progressive in the world. It set the foundation for the ambitious task of transforming the apartheid state into a democratic and inclusive state. The Constitution underscored the importance of universal adult suffrage and to achieve this, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and democratic government system should be in place. The Constitution has three essential features:

- A Constitutional democracy with all arms of the state subject to the Constitution. A rights-based framework for all citizens based on equality before the law.

- Socio-economic or second generation rights, such as the right to education and a legal framework for the state to reverse the effects of apartheid.

Guided by the Constitution, government was divided into national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The Constitution provided for institutions of representative democracy, including Parliament, provincial legislatures and municipal councils. Apartheid laws were repealed and a Bill of Rights in the Constitution guaranteed all citizens both socio-economic and basic human rights.

Reconstruction and Development Plan (RDP)

In order to rebuild and transform the economy after years of apartheid regime's economic isolation and financial sanctions which were enforced by the international community, the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP), which was part of the election platform of the African National Congress in the 1994 elections, was chosen as the primary socio-economic programme.

One of the most active arenas of change has been to shift the programmes of the state towards the reconstruction and development of our country, with a particular focus on the poor and marginalised – to eliminate poverty and provide access to housing, water, electricity, sanitation, education, health, social protection support to the millions deprived of these basic rights under apartheid.

The RDP identified five major policy programmes outlined in The White Paper on the Reconstruction and Development Programme (1995) as follows: Create a strong, dynamic and balanced economy; Develop human resource capacity of all South Africans; Ensure that no one suffers racial or gender discrimination in hiring, promotion or training situations; Develop a prosperous, balanced regional economy in Southern Africa; and Democratise the state and society. In short this policy was aimed to address and redress the inherited gross inequalities of apartheid, socially, economically and spatially.

As was first articulated in the original 1994 RDP document, the ANC government sought "to mobilize all our people and our country's resources towards the final eradication of apartheid and the building of a democratic, non-racial and non-sexist future". The

Reconstruction and Developmental Plan (RDP) was the policy framework for the fundamental transformation of South Africa. The key objectives of the RDP have continued to define public policy since 1994. In some areas, the emphasis may have changed, but the broad objectives of eradicating poverty, creating employment and reducing inequality still remain.

Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR)

Although the RDP was viewed as the cornerstone of government development policy, it did not deliver as was hoped, particularly in terms of economic growth, which impacted negatively on the policy itself. Government experienced some difficulties in the implementation of the RDP, such as a fiscal constraint due to the poor fiscal and economic legacy it inherited after fifty years of Apartheid. Secondly, an organisational constraint was experienced due to the lack of an efficient public service and a distressful inability of the new government to build the necessary state capacity. Thirdly, there was an inability of the new government to prioritise the RDP and to integrate it as the guiding principle of its socio-economic policies.

When faced with these constraints Government introduced a macroeconomic policy framework in 1996, called the Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR) strategy, to stimulate faster economic growth which was required to provide resources to meet social investment needs. The policy encompassed most of the social objectives of the RDP, but was also aimed at reducing fiscal deficits, lowering inflation, maintaining exchange rate stability, decreasing barriers to trade and liberalizing capital flows.

Under GEAR policy, fiscal deficit, inflation and government consumption targets were all slightly met, reporting figures of 2,2%, 5,4% and 18% respectively by the end of 2000, bringing about greater macroeconomic stability, better reporting and increased accountability. Additionally, management of public finances improved drastically under GEAR and the only success seen with regard to GDP was that the negative growth rate of the early nineties was reversed. Lastly, tightening of the monetary policy, restructuring all government levels led to a reduction in government expenditure.

Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (ASGISA)

ASGISA, as a further development on the first two developmental strategies following post 1994, acknowledged the challenges of prolonged poverty driven by unemployment, and low earnings, and the jobless nature of economic growth. ASGISA envisioned reducing poverty by 2010, and halving unemployment from the 28% in 2004 to 14% by 2012 by 2014. ASGISA recognized that the policies implemented to address these issues needed to be at the forefront of economic policy decision making. It thus built on the foundations of the RDP's goals of building a united, democratic, non-sexist and non-racial society, and a single integrated economy.

The New Growth Path (NGP)

In 2010, ASGISA was replaced with the New Growth Path Framework aimed at enhancing growth, employment creation and equity. The policy's principal target was to create five million jobs over a period of 10 years. This framework reflected government's commitment to prioritising employment creation in all economic policies. It identified strategies that will enable South Africa to grow in a more equitable and inclusive manner, while attaining South Africa's developmental agenda with massive investment in infrastructure being central to the framework and a critical driver of jobs across the economy.

The framework identified investments in five key areas namely: energy, transport, communication, water and housing. Sustaining high levels of public investment in these areas was necessary to create jobs in construction, operation and maintenance of infrastructure.

The New Growth Path further identified five other priority areas as part of the programme to create jobs, through a series of partnerships between the State and the private sector. These priority areas are Green economy, Agriculture, Mining, Manufacturing and Tourism.

National Development Plan Vision 2030 (NDP)

In early 2013, the government introduced the National Development Plan (NDP) Vision 2030 as South Africa's long-term socio-economic development roadmap. This policy was adopted as the cornerstone and blueprint for a future economic and socio-economic development strategy for the country as of 2012/13 at Mangaung in December 2011. The NDP is viewed

as a policy blueprint for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality in South Africa by 2030. According to the plan, South Africa can realise these goals by drawing on the energies of its people, growing an inclusive economy, building capabilities, enhancing the capacity of the state, and promoting leadership and partnerships throughout society.

The NDP aims to achieve the following objectives by 2030:

- Uniting South Africans of all races and classes around a common programme to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality.
- Encourage citizens to be active in their own development, in strengthening democracy and in holding their government accountable.
- Raising economic growth, promoting exports and making the economy more labour absorbing.
- Focusing on key capabilities of both people and the country.
- Capabilities include skills, infrastructure, social security, strong institutions and partnerships both within the country and with key international partners.
- Building a capable and developmental state.
- Strong leadership throughout society that work together to solve our problems.

Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF)

As South Africa entered the fifth cycle of the democratic era, it aimed to deepen transformation and ensure implementation of the NDP. Upon review of the 20-years of democracy, significant progress was made since 1994, but challenges were identified that needed to be overcome. Amongst these, inequality and unemployment continued to negatively affect the lives of many people with few people working, investment being slow and education lagging behind. The weak state of the economy further impeded efforts to reach the development goals.

The second phase of our democratic transition thus called for bold and decisive steps to place the economy on a qualitatively different path that eliminates poverty, creates jobs and sustainable livelihoods, and substantially reduces inequality. This required radical economic transformation and a sustained focus on addressing the uneven quality of service delivery thus giving effect to the 2014-2019 electoral mandate of:

- Radical economic transformation, rapid economic growth and job creation.

- Rural development, land and agrarian reform and food security.
- Ensuring access to adequate human settlements and quality basic services.
- Improving the quality of and expanding access to education and training.
- Ensuring quality health care and social security for all citizens.
- Fighting corruption and crime.
- Contributing to a better Africa and a better world.
- Social cohesion and nation building.

Northern Cape Provincial Legislature

At the start of the democratic government there had been no culture of Provincial Law making. Over time the relationship between National and Provincial Law making became clearer. The legislature began its first term from scratch, with respect to a new concept of Provincial Governance, a new Province and the absence of a Legislature Building. The newly built Legislature complex was opened in February 2003 (NC 10 Year Review, 2004).

The seat of the NCPL is in Kimberley. The Institution also has five (5) regional offices in the Northern Cape Province and one NCOP Office in Cape Town. The Cape Town office supports the Northern Cape's permanent and special delegates in their official business in and around Cape Town as well as in the country as determined by the NCOP's programme from time to time. The regional offices of the NCPL are outreach extension offices, supporting and enhancing public education and participation in the province.

The mandate of the Legislature is focussed on three important functions: Law making, oversight and public participation. The first two terms of the Legislature largely focused on the development of the Legislative framework to carry out its Legislative mandates of law making and oversight. During the fourth and fifth term of the Legislature, the focus has been predominantly on oversight and public participation.

The Northern Cape Provincial Legislature's role and ultimate objective is to represent the people of the Northern Cape and ensure government by the people in terms of the Constitution. It achieves this by preparing legislation, overseeing the executive and by facilitating public involvement in the processes of the Legislature and its committees.

A number of programmes were developed over the past decade to educate the public about the legislature's role and its processes. Over the next five years the Legislature will implement programmes to bring the legislature closer to the people of the Northern Cape. Public access to the legislature will also be improved. The Legislature will persist in developing tools and providing support services to Members to perform their duties in their constituencies. This will be achieved by access of Members to the Legislature Regional Offices.

Section 118 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa requires a legislature to facilitate public involvement in the processes of the legislature and its committees. In terms of engagement with communities the Legislature undertook public hearings, held workshops, hosted sector parliaments and processed various petitions.

The Legislature through its engagement with the communities on key development programmes has created better understanding in the communities about programme delivery. To this end the Northern Cape Petitions Act has promoted an improved channel for deepening democracy in the province. There are however areas that need to be improved, such as public attendance of legislature hearings and the number of oversight visits conducted by the Legislature.

The NC Legislature is tasked with enacting Provincial Legislation in the absence of National Legislation with the first Act passed being the NC Exchequer Act, Act No 1 of 1994. A total of 126 Acts were passed for the period 1994 – 2018, with most of these being financial legislation, while some notable with direct effect on the lives of the people of the Northern Cape. One of the key transformative legislation passed as early as 1996 was the Northern Cape Schools Act. The Northern Cape Traditional Leadership, Governance and Houses of Traditional Leaders Act, Act 2 of 2007 provided the opportunity for Traditional Leaders to exercise their authority within a democratic local government further giving recognition to the institution of traditional leadership acknowledging its important role in deepening and enriching democratic governance.

Since 2009, the Legislature has been focusing largely on oversight and public participation. The Legislature intends to now focus its resources on implementing the NCPL Oversight Model, establish mechanisms and processes for improved oversight and public participation and the improvement of the skills of its Members and employees.

Intergovernmental Relations

The Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act (IGRF), No.13 of 2005 requires provinces to establish a framework for national, provincial and local government, to:

- (1) to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations,*
- (2) to provide for mechanisms and procedures to facilitate the settlement of intergovernmental disputes and*
- (3) to provide for matters connected therewith.*

The IGRF Act also requires all three spheres of government to provide effective, efficient, transparent, accountable and coherent governance, to advance the well-being of the people and their constitutional rights. It also requires all spheres of government to best address the challenges of poverty eradication and development, by making a concerted effort to work together and to integrate, as far possible, their actions in the provision of a comprehensive service package.

However, the establishment of the Northern Cape Intergovernmental Relations Forum (IGRF) in 2001, preceded the promulgation of the intergovernmental Relations Act of 2005. The membership of the initial IGRF was the Executive Council of the Province and all Mayors of Municipalities and it was chaired by the Premier. Heads of provincial departments, national departments in the province and Municipal Managers also attended these meetings. Around the same period a Technical IGF was established and it comprised of Heads of provincial departments, Heads of the national departments in the province and Municipal Managers and other senior officials. Its sole purpose was to support the IGRF.

After the promulgation of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act in 2005 the IGRF was replaced with the Premier's Intergovernmental Forum (PIGF), which has basically the same composition as the IGRF, but local government representation is limited to District Municipalities only. Functionally of the PIGF is essentially the same as its predecessor. The intergovernmental relations structure is replicated at the district level, where it is referred to as the District Intergovernmental Relations Forum (DIGF). The DIGF is chaired by the

Executive Mayor of the district municipality and is attended by Mayors of all local municipalities within the district, all Municipal Managers and representatives of provincial and national departments based in the district.

The PIGF convenes on a quarterly basis and is chaired by the Premier and alternatively by the either the MEC of COGHSTA or the Chairperson of SALGA. It is preceded by the Technical PIGF, which provides technical support in terms of; drafting and evaluation of reports, consolidation of all information and ensuring that provincial and local government development planning is coordinated through the forum.

The functions of the PIGF includes amongst others, to discuss and consult on matters of mutual interest which include the following:

- Implementation of national, provincial and local government policy and legislation affecting local government interests;
- Matters arising in the President's Co-ordinating Council and other national intergovernmental forums affecting local government interests in the province;
- Coordination of provincial and municipal development planning to facilitate coherent planning in the province as a whole;
- Coordination and alignment of strategic performance plans and priorities, objectives and strategies of the provincial government and local government in the province;
- and matters of strategic importance that affect the interests of local governments in the province.

Finance

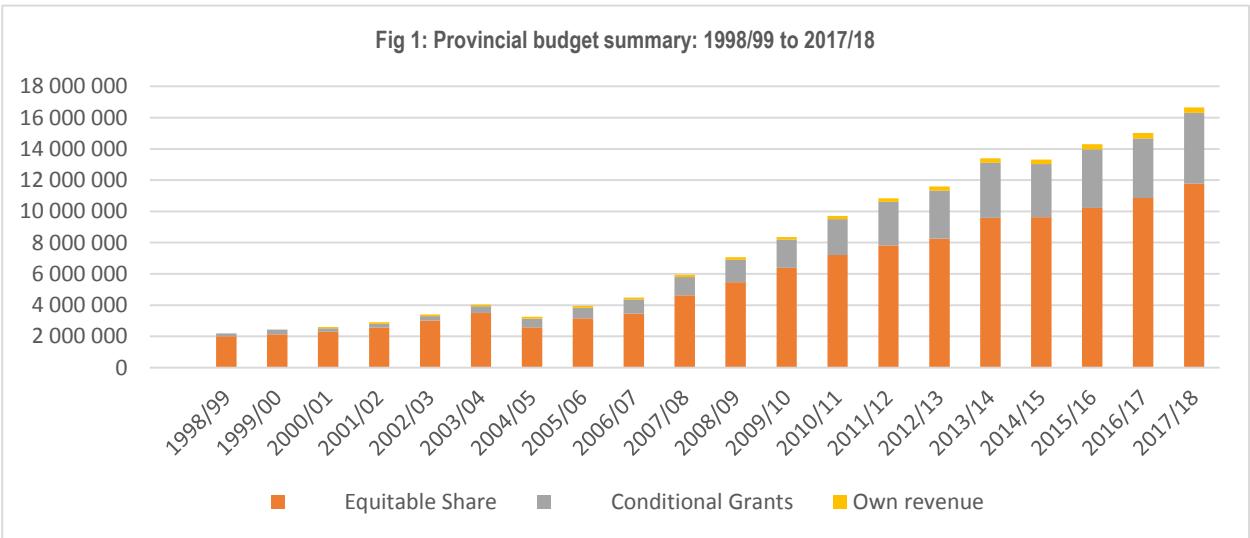
Background

- After the first democratic elections in 1994 provinces were established under the Interim Constitution. As such the flexibility to allocate their own budgets did not materialise until 1997/98, after the adoption of the Constitution in 1996. Prior to this, allocations were largely made through function committees for education, health and welfare, amongst others.
- The intergovernmental system was in its infancy and provincial systems and capacity were being developed. This includes the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996), which gave birth to Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), Intergovernmental Fiscal Framework Act and the Division of Revenue.
- It is worth mentioning that major reforms were implemented in 2000/01. These include Standard Chart of Accounts (SCoA), which deals with the coding of items for classification, recording and reporting of payments and receipts within the financial system and is linked to the Economic Reporting Format (ERF).

Provincial Revenue

1. The Figure below indicate provincial budget summary trends between 1998/99 and 2017/18 financial years.

Figure 1: Provincial budget summary: 1998/99 to 2017/18



2. Provincial revenue is made up of three components, i.e. equitable share which constitute the largest share of the provincial revenue, followed by conditional grants and provincial own revenue, which contributes the smallest portion in the provincial revenue. During this period total provincial revenue has increased from R2,191 billion to R16,655 billion.
3. With respect to the percentage share to the total provincial revenue, equitable share's proportion has been decreasing from 92% in 1998/99, to 71% in the 2017/18 financial year. This trend has been influenced by various technical adjustments effected on the equitable share by National Treasury, due to changes in the fiscal position of the country and the provincial demographic trends, which lead to various budget cuts. It is worth noting that with respect to per capita spending per province, Northern Cape spending is the highest due to various factors, such as the vastness of the province. Currently, the equitable share formula is under review with the aim of incorporating the rural component into the formula, in order to consider the rural and urban cost differentials.
4. There is a strong correlation between the size of the transfer from national and the population size of a province. Census figures for the past three censuses (i.e. 1996, 2001 & 2011) indicates a decrease in the provincial population proportion to the national population. There has been a decrease from 2,5 percent in 1996 to 2,2 percent in 2001 and 2011 respectively, and this trend affected the age cohort of 0 - 34 years and has an impact in the equitable share formula.
5. Conditional grants portion has been increasing during the same period from 8% to 27%. In 2000/01, there were only 16 conditional grants as compared to 23 conditional grants in 2017/18, and the Health Department has enjoyed bulk of the conditional grants during this period.
6. Provincial own revenue contributes the smallest share in the total provincial revenue, there has been an increase since 2000/01 financial year from R89 million to R349,5 million in 2017/18. The biggest sources of revenue in the province, are motor vehicle licenses, casino taxes, hospital fees and liquor licence fees. The increase over the period relates to various reforms and developments, such as the increase in the number of motor vehicles in the province, the listing of regulatory entities such as Gambling and Liquor Boards.

7. In light of the budget constraints that are facing the province, attempts are being made to take full advantage of the limited revenue sources and ensuring that the taxes (motor vehicle licenses, casino taxes, liquor licenses fees) are being collected efficiently and effectively. Trends during this period indicates that on average, provincial own revenue contributes 3% to the total provincial revenue. It should also be noted that increases in some instances are as a result of interest received in the provincial revenue fund, due to slow spending and underspending of the departments.
8. During this period various steps were taken by Provincial Treasury to improve the collection of own revenue, as this will also enhance the province's ability to deliver services. These includes establishing or creating Fiscal Policy directorate to ensure a more focussed approach on revenue related issues, the migration of the renewal of motor licence vehicles from municipalities to the South African Post Office and the construction of weighbridges on busy roads within the province.
9. Also worth of noting, are the trends on surplus or deficit during the period wherein the province recorded a surplus of R44,8 million in 1999/2000 financial year. It should be noted that during this period Government Finance Statistic (GFS) system prescribed that funds set aside for debt repayment be recorded as a surplus.
10. The surpluses also included funds that are committed to specific projects that are underway, or services that have been rendered for which payments could not be made by the end of the financial year (i.e. conditional grants rollovers and contingency reserves in respect of HIV/AIDS).

Provincial Expenditure

1. Government expenditure can be divided into capital and current expenditure. Transfers and subsidies to private institutions or other organs of state are also classified as either current or capital.

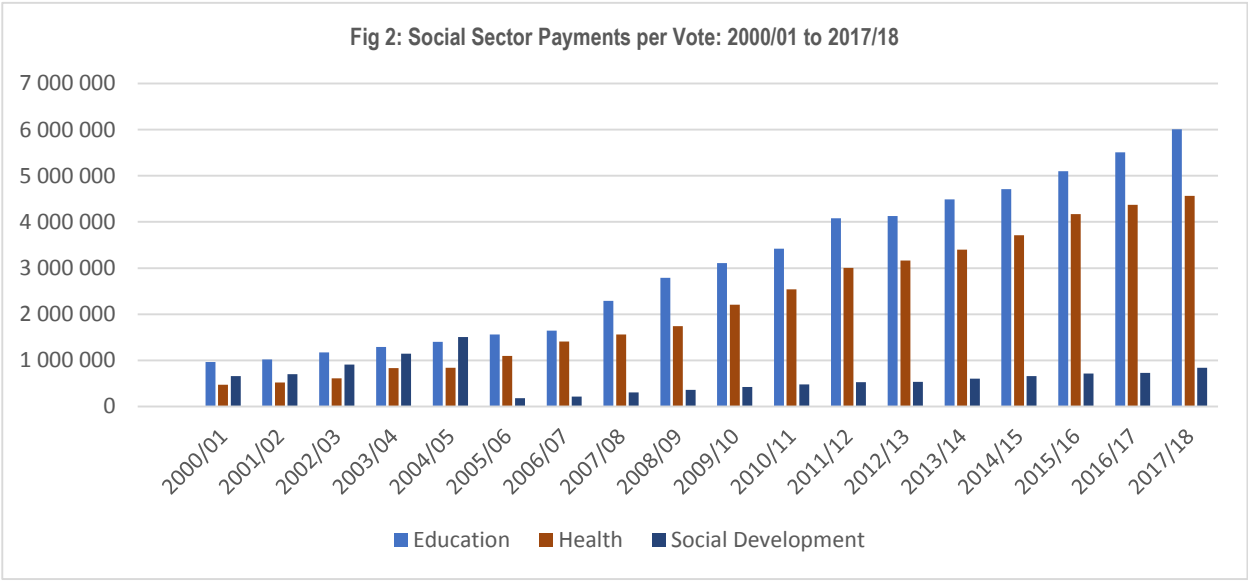
Social Sector

2. Social sector spending grew from R2,107 billion in 2000/01 to R11,769 billion in 2017/18 financial year. During the first five years the province was concentrating on

increasing access to services and achieving greater equity in spending as such much emphasis was placed on social services cluster. It is worth noting that during this period the sector’s percentage share to the total provincial spending stood at 80% on average, and thereafter decreased to 74%.

3. The Figure below indicate trends on social sector payments per vote.

Figure 2: Social Sector Payments per Vote: 2000/01 to 2017/18



Education

1. The bulk of the education budget is spent on compensation of employees, as education is a personnel intensive sector. Expenditure grew from R965 million in 2000/01 financial year to R6,006 billion in 2017/15. Although the percentage share to the total provincial payments show a decreasing trend during the first five years, expenditure has increased by 9,7% during this period. The main focus over this period was to improve access, quality and equity in education. This was done through improving systems for planning, budgeting and monitoring, the sector implemented national school funding norms from January 2000.
2. In many cases, schools increased the numbers of educators and learners without having the classrooms to accommodate them. As such, 41% of the schools nationally indicated a shortage of classrooms, with Northern Cape indicating 10%. In response to this, additional allocation was made available in the form of infrastructure grant to provinces and various conditional grants, such as Early Childhood Development Grant and HIV/AIDS Grant for life skills training in schools, with the aim of prevention through inducing behavioural change as such spending on education. Considering the ongoing needs for non-personnel non-capital resources, a key question is whether resources within the education sector are allocated appropriately.
3. Included in the expenditure from 2007/08, is the expenditure in respect of no-fee school policy, which removed the burden of paying school fees from the poorest learners by declaring schools in quintiles one and two, to be no-fee schools. The introduction of this policy has allowed learners from the poorest households to remain in school for longer and has thus had an impact on broadening access to education, such that in 2009/10, the province spent an estimated amount of R308,8 million on no-fee schools, which benefited 143 160 learners or 5,4% at 395 schools (or 66%).
4. Spending also grew considerable between 2010/11 and 2014/15. This relates to Learner Teacher Support Material (LTSM), mainly as a result of the provision of new support materials aligned with the Curriculum and Assessment Policy (CAPS)- to have a positive impact on outcomes.

Health

1. The goal of government's Outcome 2 is a long and healthy life for all South Africans. To accomplish this, four priority goals have been identified to increase life expectancy, decrease maternal and child mortality, combat HIV and AIDS and decrease the burden of tuberculosis (TB), and strengthen health system effectiveness, this is also envisaged by the National Development Plan (NDP).
2. According to the World bank report health expenditure as a total percentage of GDP in South Africa was 8,80 as of 2014, the highest value over the past 19 years. The expenditure on Health has increased from R468 million in 2000/01 financial year, to R4,567 billion in 2017/18 financial year. This increase has been informed by various policy priorities that were implemented and the introduction of conditional grants during the period. The growth in Health's expenditure level started to increase in the 2001/02 financial year, because it was largely funded from ring-fenced conditional grants for hospital construction and rehabilitation.
3. During this period, the Government Aids Action Plan was also implemented with the main focus on prevention through activities like distribution of condoms, piloting female condoms, support to NGOs, and piloting of prevention of mother-to-child transmission projects within the province. By the end of 2001/02 the province was spending R26 million per annum on HIV/AIDS related patients. The Home and Community Based Care programme was implemented and 150 Community Health Workers were introduced through NGOs at a stipend of R500 per month.
4. Between 2002/03 and 2003/04, Health expenditure increased to 20% of the total provincial spending as a result of the increase in conditional grants, especially the infrastructure grant which lead to the upgrading of Robert Sobukwe Hospital. This included the out-patients' clinic and pharmacy, the provincialisation of Harmony homes which lead to the increase of the Robert Sobukwe Hospital complex to 100 beds.

Social Development

1. Spending on social development has increased from R654 million in 2000/01, to R1,507 billion in 2004/05. Expenditure grew at 7% year-on-year, while the percentage share to the total provincial spending increased from 25 percent to

32,1% during this period - making social development the second largest spending department after education.

2. It should be noted that during this time, the department was administering the social welfare grants. This rapid growth in expenditure is mainly due to the expansion of the social safety net, particularly the introduction and phased extension of the child support grant from 11 years old until children turn 14 years, in line with government's commitment to progressively realising children's rights to access to social security. This saw an increase of beneficiaries from 13 508 children in 2000/01 to 69 664 children in 2004/05.
3. Also included in the growth, was expenditure related to other beneficiaries such as people living with disability and inflation-related increases in social grant values. In 2000/01, there were 27 874 disability beneficiaries in the province. This number grew to 42 659 beneficiaries in 2004/05. The period also saw the introduction of a programme for emergency food relief, which was introduced in 2003/04 financial year.
4. From 2005/06, the responsibility for social assistance grants was shifted from the provincial sphere to the national sphere. This process saw the establishment of the South African Social Security Agency (SASSA), and as of 2006/07 the social assistance function was funded through the national. Thereafter the expenditure decreased to 4,4% of the total provincial spending. Over the years, there has been additional funding made to cover national and provincial priorities. Social development has been focusing on the main policy intervention which aimed at strengthening social welfare and community development services.
5. From 2006/07, spending on social development show an average increase of 24%, while the proportion of total provincial spending grew to 5,1% as a result of additional funding towards the expansion of Early Childhood Development services, expansion of Home Community Based Care centres, the absorption of social work graduates and employment of Auxiliary Workers in response to Child Act of 2005, which allowed functions that were previously undertaken by social workers to be performed by other social service personnel. This aimed to reduce the burden on social workers. Also included in the spending growth on social welfare services

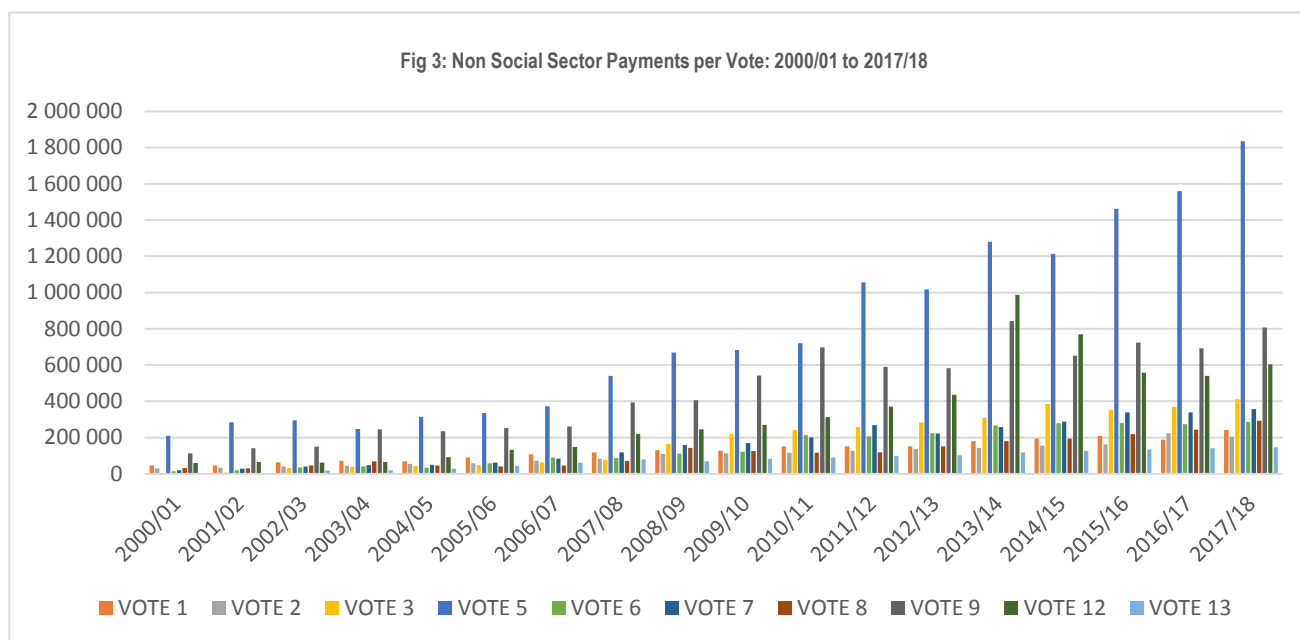
during this period is the spending in support of employment strategies such as the conclusion of an occupation specific dispensation (OSD).

6. These services are delivered either directly, or through subsidising non-profit organisations (NPOs). As such, transfers to NGOs, saw an expenditure increase from 22% in 2005/06 financial year to 27% in 2017/18 financial year, making transfers to non-profit organisations the second largest spending item after compensation of employees. It is also worth noting that during this period the province made various top up or additions to the national funding.
7. A comparison analysis across the sector shows that the Northern Cape Department of Social Development gets a higher proportion of 5% of the total provincial budget, if compared to its counter parts in other provinces.

Non-social sector

1. The sector shows an expenditure increase from R558 million in 2000/01 financial year to R4,824 billion in 2017/18. It is worth noting that during the first two years, the Environment function was situated in the Department of Agriculture and Land Reform until the 2002/03 financial year, where a new department was established i.e. Department of Environment Affairs and Tourism.
2. The Transport function was moved from Roads and Public Works to the Department of Safety and Liaison. In 2009/10 the Tourism function was moved to Economic Affairs.

Figure 3: Non Social Sector Payments per Vote: 2000/01 to 2017/18



3. Over this period, non-social sector departments experienced an expenditure increase. This was due to the introduction of various conditional grants, such as the Integrated Human Settlement Development grant under COGHSTA, towards the delivery of houses. COGHSTA spending grew to a percentage share of 6% on average to the total payments.
4. During this period, the housing sector experienced some challenges. This saw the sector moving from Housing to Human Settlements because location is a key dimension of property value and that to ensure that houses ultimately become homes that are part of viable, safe communities.
5. Included in the non-social sector spending during this period, are provincial priorities that were funded from the provincial fiscus. These priorities include Economic Growth and Development Fund, which has increased from R10 million in 2004/05 to R28 million in 2017/18, and the Kimberley Diamond Cup sport event. These projects are within the Department of Economic Development and Tourism.
6. Department of Roads and Public Works takes the largest percentage share to total payments at an average of 9% over the period. The department's expenditure grew from R209 million in 2000/01 to R1,835 billion in 2017/18. This trend is as a result of provincial road infrastructure grant, with the main focus of maintaining roads in order to ensure that the quality of the existing network is sustained and improved.

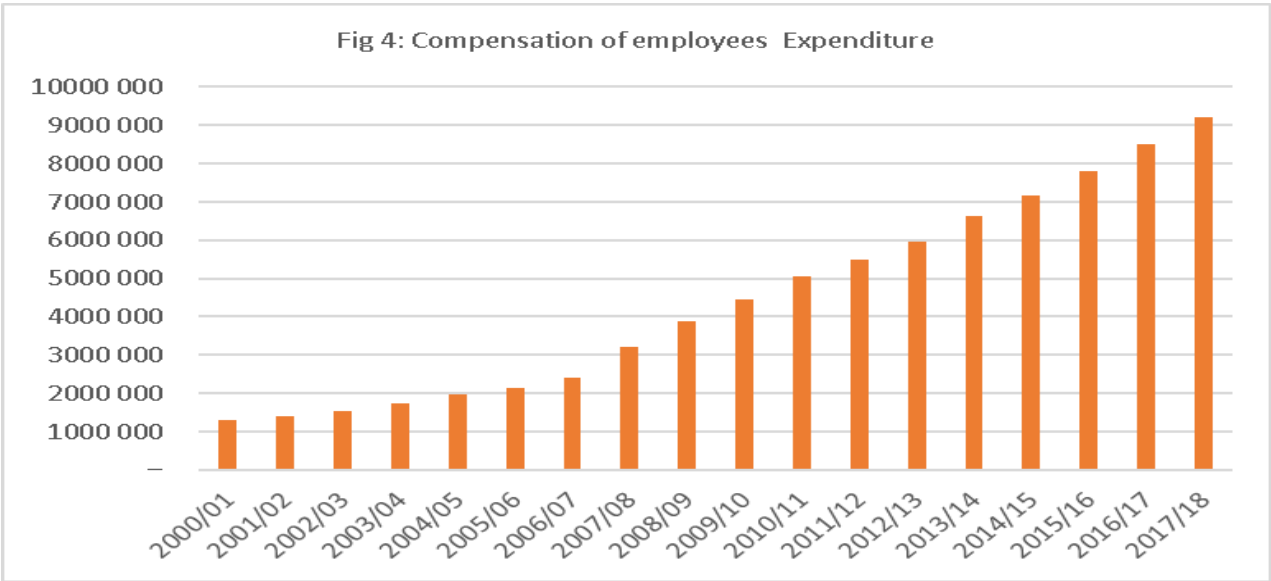
The Provincial Roads Maintenance Grant (PRMG) was introduced in 2011/12 as a supplement funding source for roads construction and maintenance.

7. Agriculture is one of the major contributors to the provincial economy. During this period, the department shows an increase in spending as a percentage of total provincial payments from 2% in 2000/01, to 4% in 2017/18 financial year. This trend has been influenced by various conditional grants, such as Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP) and Ilima/letsema grant, which were introduced in 2004/05 to promote and facilitate agricultural development in particular subsistence farming, and assist small holder and commercial farmers to contribute to the commercial economy and also to address food security.
8. Sport, Arts and Culture spending grew from R19,6 million in 2000/01 financial year, to R356 million in the 2017/18 financial year. From 2005/06, the department's spending grew from an average 1% to 2% of the total provincial payments. Over the years, the increase relates to the additional allocations in respect of conditional grants in respect of Library Services grant and Mass Sport Participation grant. Over the years, the department has experienced challenges on the implementation of the library services grant, which include slow spending and ultimately rollovers.
9. Department of Environment and Nature Conservation takes the smallest expenditure share of 0.9% from an average of 1,1% before 2009/10 financial year, when the Tourism function was transferred to the Department of Economic Development. This department is originally from Agriculture and Land Reform.
10. It is worth noting that Northern Cape is the only province with Environment as a standalone function. In other provinces the function is with Agriculture or Economic Development. Currently the budget of the department is R152,625 million, of which 74% relates to compensation of employees, while the Compliance and Enforcement function takes 7% of the budget. Considering the crucial role the department is expected to play in the province, and given the dominance of various industries such as mining and solar energy producers that need stringent environmental monitoring, this requires a review on this function.

Economic Classification

1. The Figure below shows the provincial payments on compensation of employees.

Figure 4: Compensation of Employees Expenditure



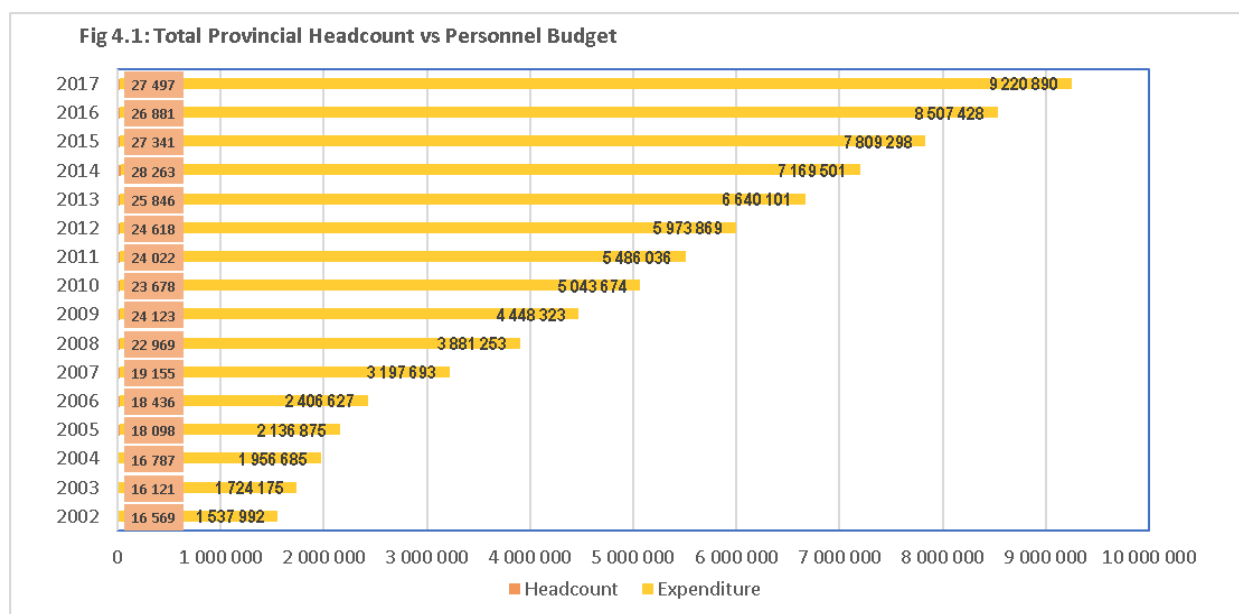
Compensation of employees

- 2. Over this period, spending on compensation of employees has increased from R1,317 billion in 2000/01 to R9,220 billion in the 2017/18 financial year. This trend has been influenced by various policy priorities within various departments. The spending trend on the public sector wage bill has been increasing by more than 5% above inflation every year since 2007/08.
- 3. In 2000/01, financial provincial employees’ compensation constituted an average of 50% of the total provincial budget. This has increased to 56% in the 2017/18 financial year. This trend is due to various policy priorities that were implemented during the period, such as, in the first year of PFMA implementation (2000/01), many departments focused on establishing the structures necessary for implementation, like chief financial officers, internal audit units, audit committees. This was followed by the spending in support of employment strategies in the social sector departments (i.e. Education, Health and Social Development) - such as the occupation specific dispensation (OSD). This saw an increase on personnel spending.
- 4. Apart from the national priorities, additional funds were made by the province to capacitate the CFOs offices in response to supply chain management related

challenges. Costs of living adjustments were also catered during the period. Cost of living adjustments are by far the largest drivers of wage bill growth. The wage settlements are the most significant source of risk for the province.

- The figure below indicates total headcount per vote between 2002/03 and 2017/18 financial year.

Figure 5: Total Headcount vs Personnel Budget



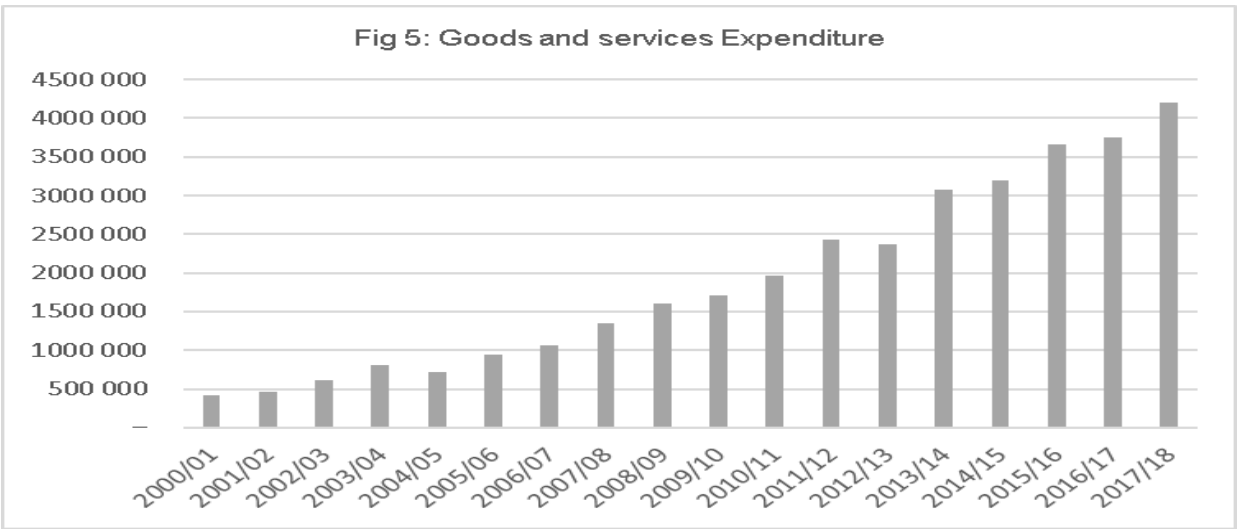
- Prior to the 2002/03 financial year, the PERSAL function was centralised at the Office of the Premier and most departments did not go through the process of developing organograms.
- Personnel numbers grew by 10 928 during this period (i.e. from 16 569 to 27 497). Education and Health constitute the largest share of the total provincial work force i.e. 3 659 and 2 696 respectively. When comparing the growth of personnel numbers with that of spending on compensation of employees, it must be noted that the increase on personnel expenditure over the period has been influenced by various wage settlements and inflationary related increases. Outcomes of annual wage negotiations have contributed to this strong growth trend over the past several years, with the Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council resolutions often establishing higher-than-budgeted wage increases.
- Departments have to find resources in other areas of their budgets to cover these costs. Although departments do receive some additional funding to cover additional

personnel costs, the effects of the wage agreements continue into the subsequent years and departments have to take these into account when formulating personnel budgets.

9. Any shortcomings in managing this part of the budget can undermine the overall service delivery, hence the province implemented moratorium in 2015/16 financial year, as a strategy to manage this item because any shortcoming in managing this part of the budget has a potential of undermining the overall service delivery and other priority areas. Given the large share of employee compensation in their budgets, departments must monitor and evaluate their expenditure and must cost the system of salary progression as accurately as possible.

Goods and services

Figure 6: Goods and Services Expenditure

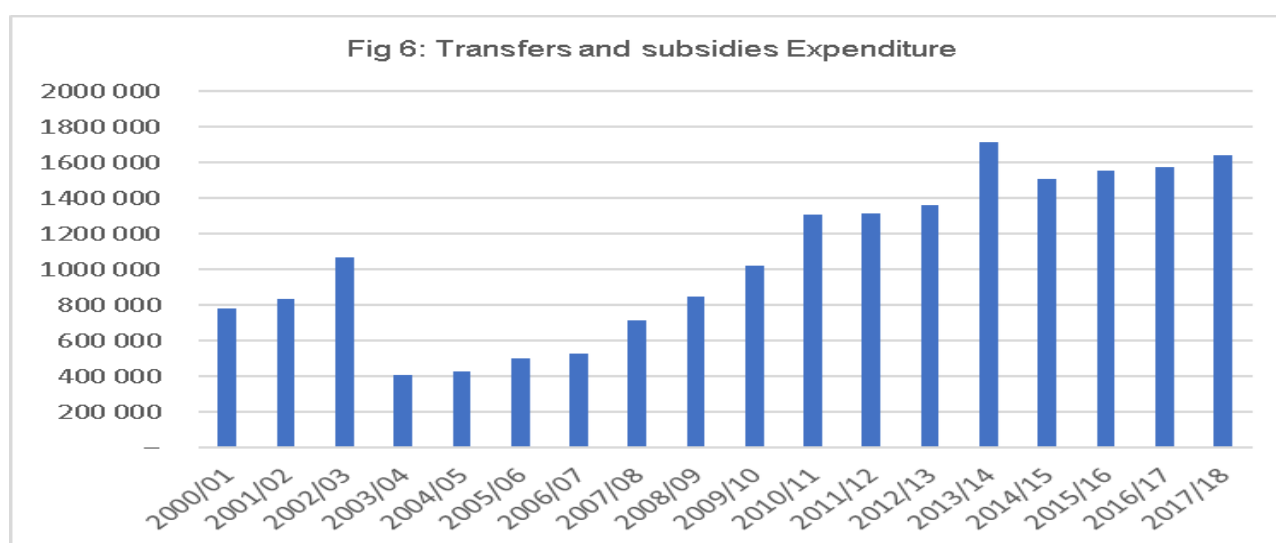


1. Goods and services is the second largest current spending item after compensation of employees. It accounts for 23% on average of the total provincial payments. Spending on this item has grown from R412 million in 2000/01 financial year, to R4,200 million in 2017/18 financial year - in line with the inflation.
2. Most of these items are designated as non-negotiable, and departments are required to protect or prioritise them when budgeting. Bulk of the spending relates to the Department of Health in respect of expenditure on medicines, medical and surgical consumables, maintenance, laboratory services and patients' food.

3. From 2011/12, spending on goods and service grew and the largest spending areas are medicine and medical supplies, contractors, property payments, outsourced services, laboratory services, and learner and teacher support material.
4. With respect to Education, Learner and Teacher support material, including text books, is part of goods and services expenditure and is a core component of a successful education system.

Transfers and subsidies

Figure 7: Transfers and Subsidies Expenditure

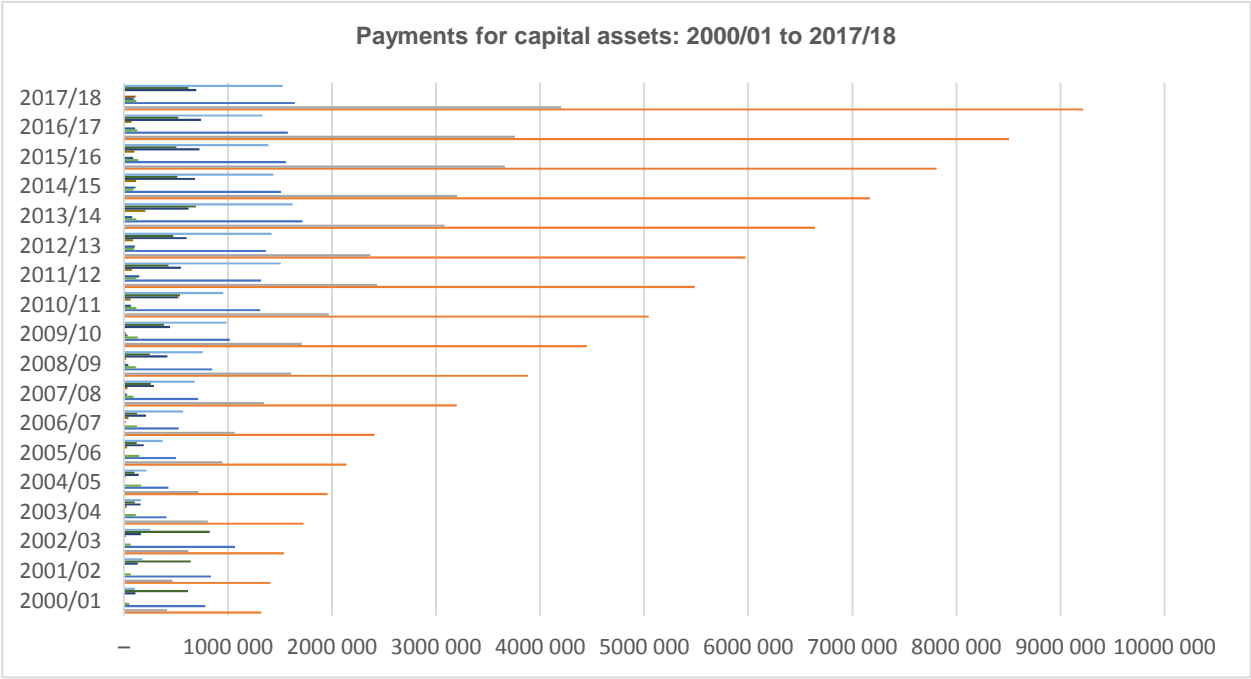


1. Spending on transfers and subsidies shows an inconsistent growth during the first five years of the period. This trend has been influenced by the function shift of the social grants. However, from 2003/04 financial year spending on transfers and subsidies has increased from R407 million to R1,641 billion in the 2017/18 financial year, at an average of 8 percent year on year.
2. This trend has been influenced by various policy priorities that were introduced during the period, such as funding of no fee schools in line with the funding norms as stipulated by National Basic Education, the support of NGO sector.
3. During the 2013 MTEF, subsidies to FET colleges were transferred by the Department of Higher Education and Training, which directly controls this function. This reduced the transfers within the Department of Education. The slight increase in transfers and subsidies is mainly due to quintile 3 schools becoming no-fee schools and the equalisation of funding to these schools.

4. The listing of entities by various departments during the period also resulted in the expenditure growth on transfers and subsidies, as most entities were listed in 2008/09. Currently the province has 6 listed entities of which four are under the auspices of Economic Development and Tourism and are going through a review, with the aim of rationalising two. However, considering the persistent decline of equitable share and the constant provincial own revenue, the province might need to consider reviewing all its entities in the near future and consider various options. For instance, McGregor Museum is the only schedule 3C listed museum as an entity country wide, the tourism function within NCEDA i.e. Witsand Nature Reserve - while there's a tourism entity i.e. NCTA.

Payments to capital assets

Figure 8: Payments for capital assets: 2000/01 to 2017/18



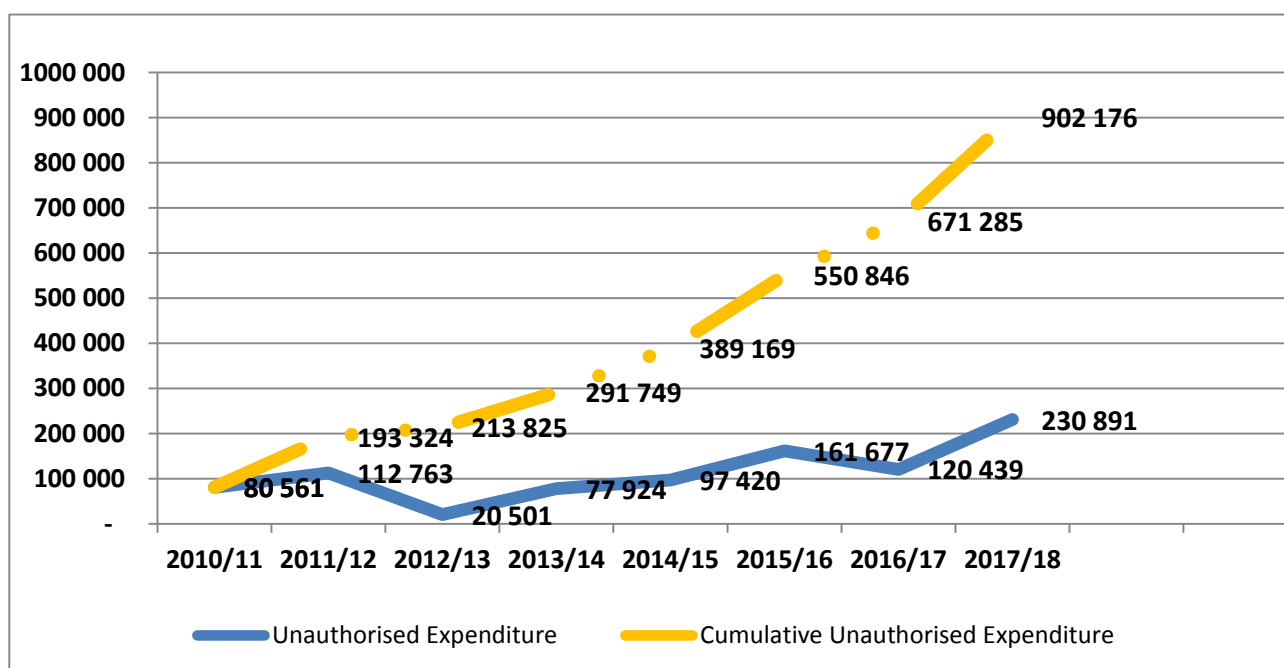
1. Payments to capital assets grew from R103 million to R1,524 billion in the 2017/18 financial year. To stimulate economic growth, government prioritised investment in economic infrastructure (Department of Roads and Public Works, Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development) and social infrastructure (Department of Health, Education and Social Development).

2. This a sharp increase on infrastructure investment since the 2011 medium term expenditure framework (MTEF). The percentage share to total payments grew from 4 percent to an average of 11% over the 2011 medium term expenditure framework (MTEF).
3. This trend was mainly due to reforms on infrastructure grants system, which aimed to institutionalise proper infrastructure grant planning, particularly the social sector. This includes investments in hospital revitalisation, capital investment in forensic pathology services and the rollout of the national emergency medical services in respect of Department Health.
4. The growth also reflects the prioritisation of the school infrastructure programme as the province aimed to reduce and eventually eliminate the infrastructure backlog, and also the provision of Grade R facilities to accommodate the expansion of Grade R with respect of Department of Education. The Roads infrastructure grant, which is the largest contributor to the provincial capital payments, also grew during this period.

Cumulative Unauthorised Expenditure

1. The coming into effect of the PFMA made the Provincial Treasury more confident that departments could manage their finances better. However, this was not the case as social sector departments started to overspend. Provincial Treasury had to make a provision for debt redemption as a first call on provincial revenue and of the total revenue available to the province setting aside R43,222 million for each year of the 2002 MTEF to redeem the debt.
2. The figure below shows the cumulative unauthorised expenditure trends for the period 2010/11 to the 2017/18 financial year.

Figure 9: Cumulative unauthorised expenditure trends (2010/11 – 2017/18)



3. There has been a persistent increase of cumulative unauthorised expenditure which emanates from the 1998/99 financial year. By the end of 2003/04, cumulative unauthorised expenditure amounted to R845,1 million, of which R414,8 million was authorised by the Legislature in the 2004/05 financial year. This reduced the initial position of cumulative unauthorised expenditure to R430,7 million as at the end of the 2004/05 financial year.
4. This necessitated the establishment of the Provincial Debt Redemption Strategy in the 2006/07 financial year, with the main objective of clearing the debt, while EXCO took a decision that all departments should break-even. However, departments continued realising overspending during this period, such that as at 31 March 2018, total accumulated unauthorised expenditure amounted to R902,1 million with Education and Health as the largest contributors i.e. R246,3 million and R481,5 million respectively.
5. While the province has managed to reduce the debt between 2008/09 and the 2013/14 financial years, the continued over expenditure by Health and Education seemed to have reversed the situation. As such, total cumulative unauthorised expenditure in 2017/18 from the social sector is almost equal to the opening balance of 2003/04. This is a cause for concern, as this trend negates all efforts to reduce the cumulative unauthorised expenditure and thus the Provincial Debt Redemption

Strategy and if the situation is left unattended, the province will end up having unmanageable overdraft.

General Observations

1. The following observation are worth noting:
 - With respect to the total provincial receipts, equitable share which constitutes the larger share of receipts, has been declining since 2009/10 from an average share of 84% to 72%, while conditional grants have shown an increase from 14% to 25% during the same period. Although the province has managed to cushion the impact of this decline on equitable share, it is not sustainable. This requires the province to develop more revenue enhancement strategies in order to augment the impact of the declining equitable share.
 - Over this period, major focus has been towards the social sector, i.e. increasing access to education. This includes universal Grade R enrolment, Early Childhood Development, implementation of school nutrition.
 - The province has paid a major focus on infrastructure investments. As such, spending on infrastructure grew to an average of 8% since the 2009 MTEF.
 - The province has managed to control the personnel budget, in that spending has been maintained at an average of 53% of the total provincial payments. It must be noted that prior OSD implementation in the social sector, personnel spending was kept at 52%. During the period, expenditure increases have been influenced by various policy decision such as Occupational Specific Dispensation in the social sector.
 - The province has a cumulative unauthorised expenditure of R902,176 million. This represents 5,4% of the provincial budget that could be redirected to fund other provincial priorities. Departments must stick to their budgets, otherwise this trend will negate the Debt Redemption Strategy and over crowded service delivery.

Annexure 1

Table 1: Provincial budget summary

	Audited Outcome																			
	1998/99	1999/00	2000/01	2001/02	2002/03	2003/04	2004/05	2005/06	2006/07	2007/08	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
R'000																				
National Transfers :	2 191 410	2 428 116	2 515 300	2 805 978	3 300 030	3 936 273	3 137 424	3 840 043	4 367 483	5 798 359	6 897 231	8 184 873	9 496 952	10 612 590	11 320 450	13 110 621	13 027 945	13 974 067	14 677 197	16 306 090
Equitable Share	2 011 968	2 131 297	2 302 133	2 559 623	3 000 498	3 511 881	2 577 522	3 145 231	3 451 507	4 637 822	5 464 846	6 396 473	7 201 470	7 827 173	8 255 155	9 591 623	9 620 463	10 225 645	10 862 660	11 787 153
Conditional Grants	179 442	296 819	213 167	246 355	299 532	424 392	559 902	694 812	915 976	1 160 537	1 432 385	1 788 400	2 295 482	2 785 417	3 065 295	3 518 998	3 407 482	3 748 422	3 814 537	4 518 937
Own revenue			89 031	106 623	96 683	100 405	113 834	110 927	127 049	141 258	166 844	181 844	214 964	225 664	269 908	283 011	295 685	330 949	346 435	349 567
Total Provincial Receipts	2 191 410	2 428 116	2 604 331	2 912 601	3 396 713	4 036 678	3 251 258	3 950 970	4 494 532	5 939 617	7 064 075	8 366 717	9 711 916	10 838 254	11 590 358	13 393 632	13 323 630	14 305 016	15 023 632	16 655 657
Total Expenditure	2 393 125	2 491 649	2 664 523	2 952 086	3 467 233	4 153 394	3 338 008	3 956 612	4 488 439	5 934 970	7 093 021	8 178 922	9 297 213	10 848 623	11 235 987	13 063 721	13 063 721	14 415 733	15 175 909	15 175 909
Surplus/(deficit) after financing		44 837	-29 251	-38 979	-70 520	-116 716	36 643	91 349	5 029	4 647	80 987	374 570	605 136	294 111	636 711	786 179	105 785	-57 653	-70 165	349 547
Percentage share to total receipts																				
Transfer from National	100%	100%	97%	96%	97%	98%	96%	97%	97%	98%	98%	98%	98%	98%	98%	98%	98%	98%	98%	98%
Equitable Share	92%	88%	88%	88%	88%	87%	79%	80%	77%	78%	77%	76%	74%	72%	71%	72%	72%	71%	72%	71%
Conditional Grant	8%	12%	8%	8%	9%	11%	17%	18%	20%	20%	20%	21%	24%	26%	26%	26%	26%	26%	25%	27%
Own Revenue			3%	4%	3%	2%	4%	3%	3%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%
Surplus/(Deficit)		2%	-1.1%	-1%	-2%	-3%	1%	2%	0.1%	0%	1%	4%	6%	3%	5%	6%	1%	-0.4%	-0.5%	2%

Annexure 2

Table 2: Social Sector Payments per Vote: 2000/01 to 2017/18

	Audited Outcome																	
R'000	2000/01	2001/02	2002/03	2003/04	2004/05	2005/06	2006/07	2007/08	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
Education	965 069	1 021 709	1 170 965	1 288 873	1 397 085	1 563 461	1 642 659	2 287 517	2 789 109	3 105 228	3 421 128	4 077 770	4 126 127	4 489 622	4 709 217	5 101 117	5 511 818	6 006 305
Health	468 017	517 395	608 508	832 624	836 022	1 096 575	1 406 473	1 556 594	1 742 109	2 205 223	2 540 982	3 006 731	3 165 498	3 401 801	3 713 980	4 168 265	4 369 138	4 567 352
Social Development	654 446	698 417	910 810	1 145 540	1 507 407	175 446	216 793	304 418	357 648	420 016	478 233	522 687	531 722	604 415	654 471	713 793	729 776	839 410
Total Expenditure	2 107 227	2 265 731	2 729 832	3 314 380	3 789 444	2 896 991	3 347 819	4 266 581	5 047 254	5 899 707	6 640 801	7 875 798	8 045 255	8 752 489	9 364 542	10 321 075	10 948 995	11 769 111
Percentage share to total Provincial Payments																		
Education	36%	34%	34%	31%	30%	40%	36%	39%	39%	38%	37%	38%	37%	34%	35%	35%	36%	36%
Health	18%	17%	18%	20%	18%	28%	31%	26%	25%	27%	27%	28%	28%	26%	28%	29%	29%	28%
Social Development	24.6%	23.5%	26.3%	27.6%	32.1%	4.4%	4.7%	5.1%	5.0%	5.1%	5.1%	4.8%	4.8%	4.6%	4.9%	5.0%	4.8%	5.1%

Annexure 3

Table 3: Provincial Payments per Vote: 2000/01 to 2017/18

R'000	Audited Outcome																	
	2000/01	2001/02	2002/03	2003/04	2004/05	2005/06	2006/07	2007/08	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
Premier	46 037	44 658	63 782	71 231	67 628	88 863	106 806	118 356	130 003	126 662	149 142	151 090	151 787	180 120	194 538	208 098	187 984	241 162
Legislature	29 252	33 616	40 824	43 901	53 832	57 439	71 634	82 951	108 755	112 319	115 805	126 521	136 825	143 278	154 766	161 361	223 531	204 580
Transport, Safety And Liaison	3 942	5 791	30 670	38 985	41 778	46 421	62 638	77 135	165 957	218 141	242 339	257 285	282 063	310 301	383 975	353 227	368 154	410 284
Roads And Public Works	209 885	284 326	294 946	246 680	313 344	335 028	371 715	540 583	669 202	683 217	720 018	1 055 695	1 016 536	1 280 919	1 213 976	1 462 408	1 559 757	1 835 027
Economic Development And Tourism	13 653	18 309	34 093	41 012	32 557	57 116	88 999	85 290	110 469	122 096	213 805	206 956	223 288	266 380	278 030	279 671	272 467	284 938
Sports Arts and Culture	19 695	28 210	39 549	47 343	48 930	61 509	81 894	118 052	158 388	169 240	200 458	268 610	221 908	256 651	286 874	337 900	338 263	356 044
Provincial Treasury	32 128	30 412	45 710	67 677	45 183	39 910	45 356	70 970	141 904	124 072	115 849	117 844	151 597	180 289	193 099	218 566	242 923	292 696
Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements And Traditional Affairs	111 735	139 984	150 217	245 076	235 037	252 909	260 531	394 314	404 963	541 091	697 702	589 541	581 941	841 569	651 875	723 625	691 313	806 148
Agriculture and Land Reform & Rural Development	60 404	65 758	60 488	64 813	90 574	132 306	148 260	219 645	245 315	269 676	311 362	369 638	436 462	987 816	769 374	557 947	540 109	604 301
Nature Conservation and Environmental Affairs	–	–	16 672	19 639	27 199	43 776	61 678	79 145	69 199	81 941	90 390	98 543	102 739	117 641	127 586	133 652	140 676	145 462
RDP	51 325	79 367	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Non Social Sector Expenditure	578 056	730 431	760 279	866 718	928 863	1 071 501	1 237 833	1 707 296	2 134 956	2 366 514	2 766 480	3 143 180	3 202 407	4 447 323	4 126 507	4 302 803	4 424 501	5 035 180
Total Provincial Expenditure	2 665 588	2 967 952	3 467 234	4 153 394	4 696 576	3 950 759	4 565 436	5 934 970	7 093 021	8 178 922	9 297 213	10 848 911	11 128 493	13 060 802	13 331 761	14 419 630	15 175 909	16 593 709
Percentage share to total payments																		
Premier	2%	2%	2%	2%	1%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%
Legislature	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	2%	1%	2%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%
Transport, Safety And Liaison	0.1%	0.2%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	2%	3%	3%	2%	3%	2%	3%	2%	2%	2%
Roads And Public Works	8%	10%	9%	6%	7%	8%	8%	9%	9%	8%	8%	10%	9%	10%	9%	10%	10%	11%
Economic Development And Tourism	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	2%	1%	2%	1%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%
Provincial Treasury	1%	1%	1%	2%	1%	1%	1%	1%	2%	2%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	2%	2%	2%
Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements And Traditional Affairs	4%	5%	4%	6%	5%	6%	6%	7%	6%	7%	8%	5%	5%	6%	5%	5%	5%	5%
Agriculture and Land Reform	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	3%	3%	4%	3%	3%	3%	3%	4%	8%	6%	4%	4%	4%
Nature Conservation and Environmental Affairs	0%	0%	0%	0%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%

Annexure 4

Table 4: Summary of provincial payments and estimates by economic classification

R thousand	Audited Outcome																	
	2000/01	2001/02	2002/03	2003/04	2004/05	2005/06	2006/07	2007/08	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
Current payments	1 730 380	1 874 721	2 154 174	2 530 648	2 672 460	3 083 617	3 472 592	4 543 019	5 489 763	6 162 843	7 012 785	7 923 092	8 341 963	9 723 577	10 374 238	11 472 555	12 267 996	13 426 996
Compensation of employees	1 317 438	1 407 389	1 537 992	1 724 175	1 956 685	2 136 875	2 406 627	3 197 693	3 881 253	4 448 323	5 043 674	5 486 036	5 973 869	6 640 101	7 169 501	7 809 298	8 507 428	9 220 890
Goods and services	412 942	467 332	616 182	806 473	715 138	946 311	1 064 881	1 344 582	1 607 760	1 710 964	1 967 365	2 433 624	2 366 526	3 080 398	3 202 092	3 659 536	3 755 812	4 200 625
Interest and rent on land					637	431	1 084	744	750	3 556	1 746	3 431	1 568	3 078	2 646	3 721	4 756	5 481
Transfers and subsidies to:	780 942	836 587	1 065 959	407 653.0	427 548	500 209	524 323	711 803	848 905	1 018 628	1 310 499	1 314 239	1 364 942	1 716 178	1 508 760	1 555 490	1 574 192	1 641 366
Provinces and municipalities	52 431	63 885	62 579	112 213	164 261	145 946	124 877	92 425	111 399	131 166	117 581	119 349	97 788	119 187	86 698	137 103	128 004	118 356
Departmental agencies and accounts	39	422	553	1 187	4 339	5 830	4 917	29 072	41 016	33 905	67 279	145 468	104 876	78 126	109 063	87 959	107 204	95 513
Higher education institutions	2 207	1 001	2 163	4 640	1 066	6 878	14 570	12 364	12 135	18 285	2 242	1 326	2 634	2 874	1 125	1 796	2 589	110 373
Foreign governments and international organisations				-				5				-	-	-	-	-	-	4 095
Public corporations and private enterprises	950	1 103	16 734	26 847	14 613	28 970	42 915	31 651	19 383	9 082	62 141	77 287	84 202	205 796	117 224	99 255	73 493	-
Non-profit institutions	110 459	129 722	161 789	158 528	141 541	190 118	210 529	287 479	415 986	441 395	522 898	544 999	601 293	620 067	681 137	724 851	741 576	695 358
Households	614 856	640 454	822 141	104 238	101 728	122 467	126 515	258 812	248 981	384 795	538 358	425 810	474 149	690 128	513 514	504 526	521 326	617 671
Payments for capital assets	103 055	175 634	249 629	162 943	218 547	369 937	369 937	369 937	369 937	369 937	369 937	1 506 108	1 418 285	1 620 662	1 434 522	1 385 021	1 329 628	1 524 171
Buildings and other fixed structures	72 112	127 207	161 545	159 085	162 658	289 799	424 001	588 244	667 430	882 032	797 935	1 264 636	1 220 285	1 401 808	1 179 161	1 140 511	1 121 275	1 330 311
Machinery and equipment	30 745	48 291	85 765	3 858	55 306	77 475	140 007	80 421	81 711	101 240	147 911	238 666	192 767	210 753	250 950	234 077	187 061	176 997
Heritage Assets												39		15				
Specialised military assets																		
Biological assets							2982	3 502	1 079	1 763	1 173	743	943	928	1 546	692	990	730
Land and sub-soil assets			2 041		177	88	54	486	912		38					40		
Software and other intangible assets	198	136	278		406	2 575	3 101	6 542	3 137	2 768	5 260	2 024	4 290	7 158	2 865	9 701	20 302	16 133
Payments for financial assets	883	1 636	1 835	68	1 076	1 964	14	908	84	9 648	21 612	-	-	-	14 241	2 668	4 093	1 176
Total economic classification	2 615 260	2 888 578	3 471 597	3 101 312	3 319 631	3 955 727	4 366 866	5 625 667	6 708 689	7 561 056	8 714 833	10 743 439	11 125 189	13 060 417	13 331 761	14 415 733	15 175 909	16 593 709

Annexure 5

CUMULATIVE UNAUTHORISED EXPENDITURE AS AT 31 MARCH 2018

	Prevoius Years Cumulative Balance as at 2003/04	Prevoius Years Cumulative Balance as at 2008/09	Cumulative Unauthorised Expenditure : Period 2010/11 to 2017/18								Cumulative Total : Period 2010/11 to 2017/18
			2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	
	R'000		R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000
Social Sector	778 179	642 419	38 999	77 621	18 985	64 380	91 636	92 790	120 439	223 050	727 900
Education	53 758	255 108	-	-	16 891	37 874	-	-	68 863	122 754	246 382
Health	265 886	387 311	38 999	77 621	2 094	26 506	91 636	92 790	51 576	100 296	481 518
Social Development	458 535	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other	66 972	72 257	41 562	35 142	1 516	13 544	5 784	68 887	-	7 841	174 276
Office Of Premier	6 122	4 557	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Legislature	8 156	8 861	783	417	1 421	1 260	-	-	-	-	3 881
Transport, Safety & Liason	1 032	3 395	-	1 598	95	-	1 837	2 923	-	-	6 453
Roads and Public Works	0	5 219	-	26 891	-	-	-	-	-	-	26 891
Sports, Arts & Culture	9 092	3 332	7 428	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	7 428
Agriculture & Land Reform	7 375	32 817	97	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	97
COGHSTA	-	8 713	33 135	6 236	-	12 284	3 947	65 964	-	7 841	129 407
Environment & Conservation	-	367	119	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	119
Provincial Treasury	-	4 996	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other combined (already authorised)	35 195	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Provincial Treasury Suspense Account		40 463									
Total Overspending	845 151	755 139	80 561	112 763	20 501	77 924	97 420	161 677	120 439	230 891	902 176
Less : Amount Previously Authorised by Legislature	414 824	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Balance	430 327	755 139	80 561	112 763	20 501	77 924	97 420	161 677	120 439	230 891	902 176
Less : Amounts Authorised in 2008/9, 2009/10 and 2013/14	426 814	755 139	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Balance to be cleared over the MTEF	3 513	0	80 561	112 763	20 501	77 924	97 420	161 677	120 439	230 891	902 176



Chapter 1

QUALITY BASIC EDUCATION



1.1 Problem statement

During the pre-democracy years, South Africa was governed by an apartheid system. One of the most effective ways to institutionalise apartheid was through education. There were four schooling systems, segregated according to race (White, Indians –Indian Education Act 1965, Coloureds –Coloured Person’s Act of 1963 and Black African- Bantu Education Act of 1953) depicting glaring inequalities. In 1994, the inequalities were expressed in the per capita funding, buildings, equipment, facilities, Learner Teacher Support Material (LSTM), teacher qualifications and teacher-pupil ratios and also to ‘results’ measured in terms of the proportions and levels of certificates awarded.

Considering all these dimensions, schools for Whites were well resourced in all aspects, far better off than any of the others, and schools for Indians and Coloureds were better resourced, far more than those for Black Africans. Compulsory schooling was extended to Whites, Indians and Coloureds. School buildings for Black Africans were limited, i.e. not sufficient for the many numbers of children, and therefore many did not attend school. According to Census 1996, from Statistics South Africa (StatsSA), 21,7% of school-going age people were not attending schools in the Northern Cape province. There was extreme disparity in terms of funding expenditure per learner. The funding expenditure per learner was as follows in 1993: R1,659 for Black, R2,902 for Coloured, R3,702 for Indian and R4,372 for White learners (Nkabindi, 199:44).

The other inherited backlog in 1994 pertain to teachers. Larger teacher: learner ratios in the education of African learners were accompanied by the low teacher qualifications. White teachers were appropriately trained and qualified, whilst many of the Black African teachers were under-qualified. A properly skilled teacher would have worked against the notion of preparing Blacks primarily for subservient labour jobs. Many Black teachers did not even have a matric certificate. Their qualifications ranged from Standard 6 with a Teaching Certificate to Standard 8 with Teaching Diploma. Some Black teachers only had a matric certificate with no professional training. At school level, the infrastructure backlog was immense, addressing the backlog included increasing classroom capacity, providing mobile classrooms, building fences around schools, upgrading sanitation, building laboratories, computer rooms and workshops for technical subjects, as well as building new schools

either in new residential areas or replacing old dilapidated buildings/unfit structures. School infrastructure for the Black Africans was one of the highly neglected areas before democracy, and the need for improvement was extremely huge.

1.2 The journey since 1994

1.2.1 Overview

At the dawn of democracy, re-design of education provisioning was treated with the urgency it required. The National Education Policy 27 of 1996, as well as South African Schools Act 84 of 1996, enabled the redress of past injustices in education, as well as providing an education of progressively high quality for the previously marginalised Black learners. In addition, curriculum change in post-apartheid South Africa started immediately after the election in 1994, when the National Education and Training Forum (NETF) began a process of syllabus revision and subject rationalisation. The NETF curriculum developers removed overtly racist and other insensitive language from existing syllabi. The Lifelong Learning through a National Curriculum Framework document (1996) was the first major curriculum statement of a democratic South Africa. It was informed by principles derived from the White Paper on Education and Training (1995), the South African Qualifications Act (No 58 of 1995) and the National Education Policy Act (No 27 of 1996).

General and Further Education and Training Bands was taken by the Council of Education Ministers (CEM) on 26 February 1997. This decision envisaged the phasing in of Outcomes Based Education (OBE) into both the General Education and Training (GET) and Further Education and Training (FET) phases by 2005. Hence, the brand name, Curriculum 2005. The implementation of Curriculum 2005 took place in an environment characterised by enormous infrastructural backlogs, resource limitations, inadequate supply of quality learning support materials and absence of common national standards for learning and assessment. Although it had good intentions, many of the Black African teachers who were not well trained, found the process very difficult to manage. A review began, due to pressure from teachers via teacher unions. The Minister of Basic Education appointed a Task Team to investigate the nature of the challenges experienced in the implementation of the school curriculum. The Department of Basic Education (DBE) took the recommendations of

the Ministerial Task Team as a mandate for revision, not only of the school curriculum, but also of the many support systems, including systemic testing, the provision of workbooks, and teacher development. The first step in fulfilling this mandate was to develop a plan, the Action Plan to 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025. New policies were issued at the same time as the Action Plan, most important of which was the National Curriculum Statements (NCS).

One of the initial changes made in 1994, was to cancel segregation by opening all public schools to all races. A new admission policy was introduced, which opened up the better resourced schools to all races. Even though the schools were now open to all races, the issue of redress of resourcing had to be tackled. One of the ways to address equity, was through the introduction of the National Norms and Standards for School Funding (NNSF), implemented in 2000. The NNSF required that 60% of the available resources be distributed to the poorest 40% of learners (Sayed & Motala). The implementation of these norms required provincial education departments to develop policy instruments for ranking schools into five quintiles, quintile 1 being the poorest and 5 the least poor. Quintile 5 would thus receive the least funding from government. The implementation of the NNSF funding mechanism was used to address inherited inequalities in schools by using an equitable share formula. The formula takes into account provincial variables such as the size of the school age population, the number of learners enrolled in ordinary primary schools, the distribution of capital needs, the size of the rural population in each province and the size of the population for social security grants weighted by a poverty index (Sayed & Motala). Pro -poor policies were adopted that were not only aimed at increasing access to education, but also at improving the quality of education, particularly in respect of the poor. Interventions to facilitate access to basic education for disadvantaged learners such as the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP), No-Fee Schools, free learner transport and increased access to Grade R were put in place.

The introduction of the outcomes system in 2009, resulted in a greater emphasis on improving educational outcomes through various interventions. The first of these included the distribution of workbooks to schools and the Annual National Assessments (ANA) Programme. This programme enabled the education department to obtain an objective

assessment of the health of the basic education system in the province. With regards to teacher training and development, the ANC-led government then introduced qualifications such as Advanced Certificate in Education (ACE), as well as Professional Diploma in Education (NPDE) to improve capacity of teachers. The NPDE qualification was registered by the South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA) in 2000. It was an interim qualification which intended to upgrade the under-qualified teachers to the required Relative Education Qualification Value (REQV). In addition, to strengthen the quality of education, the Funza Lushaka bursary scheme was introduced to attract new learners to study towards teaching qualifications. Furthermore, the Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement (CAPS) was introduced in 2011. This system spelled out what teachers should teach and assess, how lesson plans should be prepared and how teaching should take place.

Education is a priority area for the South African government and to give effect to this, in 2010 the Department of Basic Education (DBE) released *Action Plan to 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025*, a report outlining the priority areas that need to be addressed in this period. The plan's overall aim is to improve learner performance by overcoming the weaknesses in the education system. In 2012 the National Development Plan vision 2030 (NDP:2030) was adopted in 2012. Chapter nine of the NDP document prioritises for improvement in education and training outcomes. The plan sets out targets and actions for 2030, for each phase of the education system: early childhood development, primary and secondary schooling, further education and training, and higher education and training. The Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) and Education 2030 agenda was adopted in 2016. The vision of the SDGs is to transform lives through education - "Ensure inclusive and equitable quality education as well as promote lifelong learning opportunities for all". Through all these plans government objective is to:

- Expanded access to Early Childhood Development (ECD) and improve the quality of Grade R.
- 80% of students should complete 12 years of schooling and increase in learner retention rates.
- Increase the number of schools and Grades 3, 6 and 9 who achieve 50% and more in literacy, mathematics.

- Increase the number of Grade 12 learners who pass Mathematics, Physical Science and Computer Application Technology.
- Improve the Grade 12 pass rate and Grade 12 learners who become eligible for a Bachelors programme at a university.
- Improve the quality of teaching and learning through development, supply and effective utilisation of teachers.
- Improved quality of teaching and learning through provision of adequate, quality infrastructure and Learning and Teaching Support Materials (LTSM).
- Improve the frequency and quality of the monitoring and support services provided by district offices to schools, partly through better use of e-Education.
- Ensure that all schools are funded at least at the minimum per learner levels determined nationally and that funds are utilised transparently and effectively.

1.2.2 Legislation and Policies

Since 1994, a number of policies have been implemented and legislation promulgated to create a framework for transformation and the provision of quality public education and training. The following are some of the key policies and legislation:

- Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP), of which the objective was to improve access in all levels of education, provide high quality education through teacher education and development and provide increased equity and efficiency (1994).
- The National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP), previously known as Primary School Nutrition Programme (PSNP,) was initiated in 1994 as one of the presidential RDP lead projects to provide quality nutritious food in schools.
- The White Paper on Education and Training enabled the Minister of Education, working with the provinces, to set the political agenda and determine the national norms and standards for education planning, provision, governance, monitoring and evaluation (1995)
- The South African Schools Act (SASA) provided for a uniform system for the organisation, governance and funding of schools. It sought to ensure that all learners have the right of access to quality education without discrimination, and it made

schooling compulsory for all children from the year they turn seven to the year in which they turn 15 (or the end of Grade 9) (1996).

- The learner transport policy, developed by the Department of Transport in collaboration with the Department of Education, is guided by the White Paper on National Transport Policy (1996). The policy provides for the subsidised transportation of learners who attend school from Grade R to Grade 12 and live in areas where they have to walk to school for more than 5km.
- National Norms and Standards for School Funding (NNSSF) implemented in 2000, to address school infrastructure backlog.
- White Paper on Inclusive Education, allows for Special Schools for learners with the most intense barriers to education (2001).
- The Further Education and Training Colleges Act (Act 16 of 2006) regulated further education and training, which was defined as all learning and training programmes leading to qualifications at levels 2 to 4 of the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) or such (other) levels determined by the South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA) (2006).
- The aim of the No-fee Schools Policy was to bring financial relief to the parents of school-going children who cannot afford to pay school fees (these children would otherwise have been denied access to schools). The policy is currently being implemented in school quintiles 1, 2 and 3 (2006).
- The Human Resource Development Strategy 2010–2030 sought to dramatically improve learning attainment at all levels of the schooling system (2009)
- Education and skills were identified as one of the ten key priorities in government's strategic agenda for the period 2009–2014 (2009).
- Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement (CAPS) was introduced in 2011.

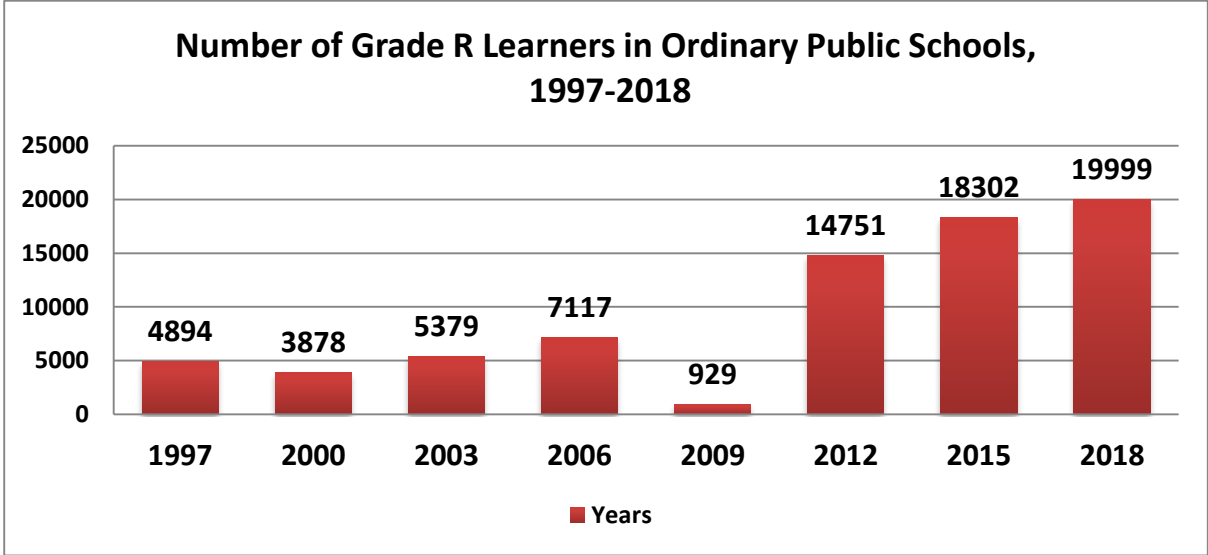
1.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

1.3.1 Growth in expansion on Grade R

Grade R education is crucial for preparing learners for Grade 1. As a result, the province made significant strides in expanding access to grade R between 1997 and 2018. Grade R is

a key year in a child's educational development because it focuses on helping children take important steps towards independence while teaching them vital social skills.

Figure 10: Number of Grade R Learners in Public Ordinary Schools, 1997-2019



Source: NCDoe, Annual Reports 1997-2018

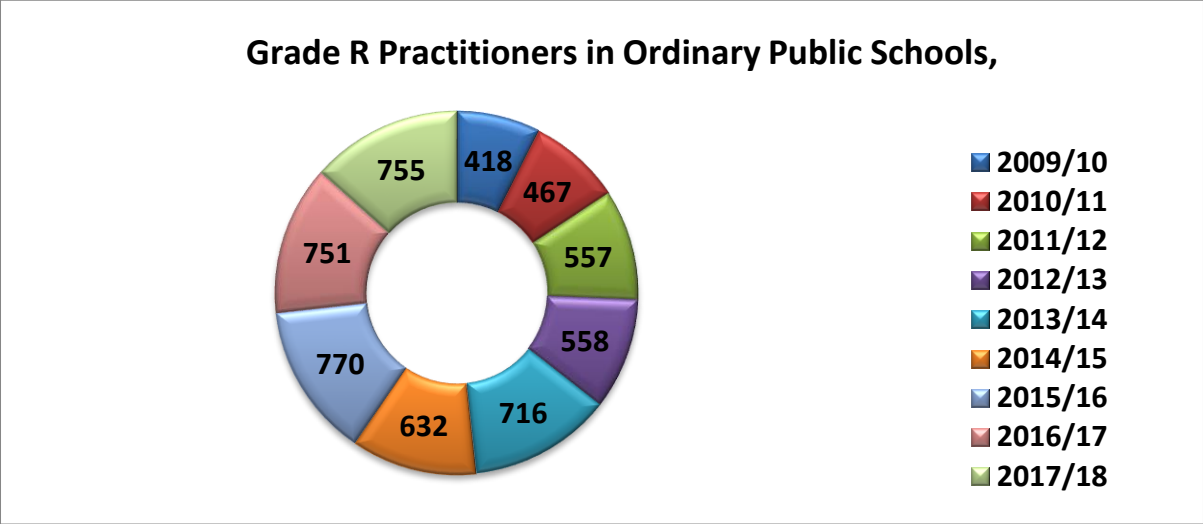
The Northern Cape Province continues to make significant progress in increasing access to Grade R in the province. According to the figure above, there has been an overall increase in the number of learners accessing Grade R in the province from 4 894 in 1997, to 19 999 in 2018. This translates into an increase of 15 105 in Grade R learners over a period of 21 years.

Evident from figure above, the number of Grade R learners declined drastically to 929 in 2009. The 2009 abnormal figure (929) is attributed to an extremely low return of survey forms from the schools. The department resolved to stick with the figure as per returned survey forms. The low /none return of survey forms from schools was a major challenge encountered by the province. The province had since tightened accountability and responsibility of schools’ principals and the return rate of surveys has since improved.

To date, there are currently 381 public schools that offer Grade R in the province and are annually supplied with workbooks. Though the province has registered these enormous strides in relation to coverage of Grade R, more still needs to be done to ensure all children of appropriate age have access to Grade R. Notwithstanding the progress made in Grade R provision since 1997, children in province are still faced with significant challenges especially

those residing in rural areas in terms of access, inadequate infrastructure and funding. The figure below, provides the total number of Grade R practitioners employed in public ordinary schools from 2009/10 - 2017/18 financial year.

Figure 11: Grade R Practitioners in Public Ordinary Schools.



Source: NCDoE, Annual Reports 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Years

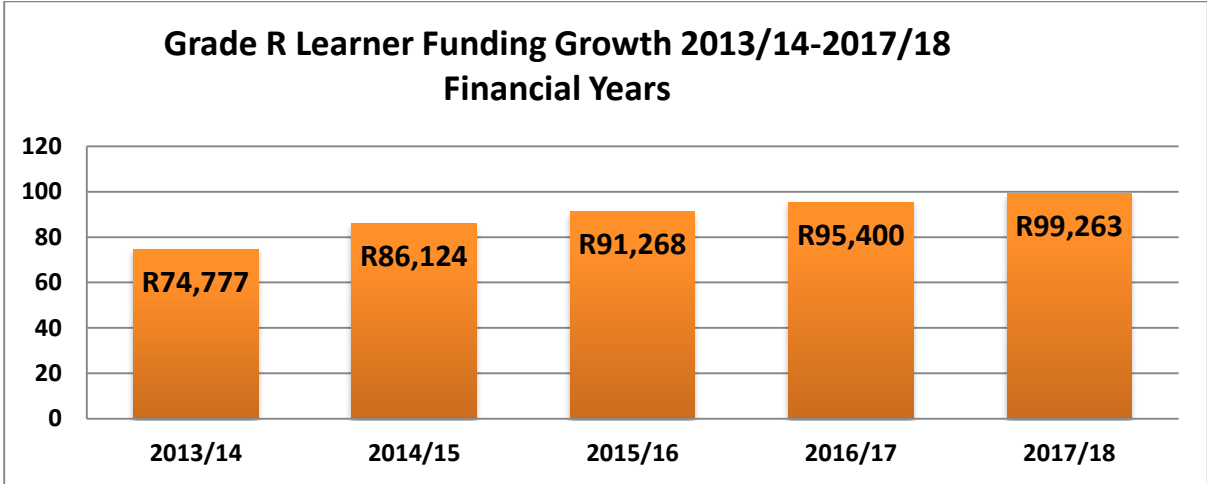
The number of Grade R practitioners increased from 418 to 755 between 2009/10 and 2017/18 financial year. The gradual increase in the number of ECD practitioners since 2009/10 is as a result of the aggressive expansion of Grade R in Public Ordinary Schools. This same pattern is to be expected as the province continues to expand access to Grade R. In the 2017/18 financial year, there were 755 Grade R practitioners in the province, and 734 had an NQF level 4 qualification and above. In an attempt to further improve the qualifications of Grade R practitioners, the province provided training to Grade R practitioners on the Diploma in Grade R Teaching. The Diploma in Grade R Teaching is the minimum qualification for practising Grade R practitioners. The purpose of the Diploma in Grade R Teaching is to develop teachers who have focused knowledge and skills appropriate for Grade R teaching.

Grade R practitioners teach Grade R within a prescribed curriculum, according to the relevant Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statements (CAPS) documents. Grade R falls under the Foundation Phase, in which learning content focuses on three subjects, namely Language, Mathematics and Life Skills. The Grade R practitioners have a challenge of

delivering the Grade R literacy curriculum. Furthermore, the limited professional training of Grade R practitioners has impacted on the literacy delivery.

In order to capacitate Grade R practitioners and ultimately improve the quality of Grade-R, practitioners who could not complete their Diploma in Grade R Teaching were supported through Cluster sessions and mentorship programmes. A Curriculum Road show was held across the province to support practitioners in the implementation of the Curriculum. The Maths and Numeracy competences and skills of learners and practitioners in both public schools and community based sites were enhanced and improved through the Basic Concept Project as well as Maths Olympiad Programme. The table below shows the growth in Grade R learner funding from 2013/14 to 2017/18 financial year.

Figure 12: Grade R Learner Funding Growth, 2013/14-2017/18 Financial Year.



Source: NCDoe, Annual Reports 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Years

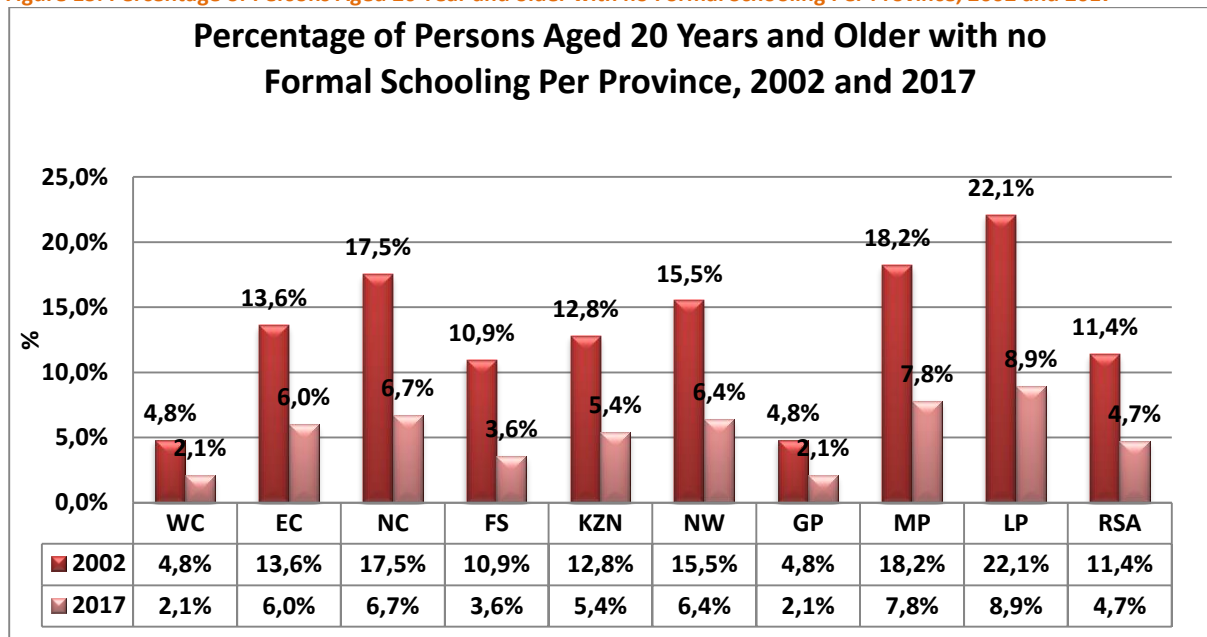
Grade R funding increased from R74,7 million in 2013/14 to R99,2 million in the 2017/18 financial year. The increase in Grade-R learners and practitioners over the years is due to the growth in Grade-R funding.

1.3.2 Learner Enrolment

There has been steady growth in learner enrolment in the province. Contributing to this growth, is the improved accessibility of education through various new initiatives introduced by the ANC led government after 1994, such as the No Fee School Policy,

National School Nutrition Programme and the Learner School Transport. The figure below depicts the percentage of persons aged 20 years and older with no formal schooling.

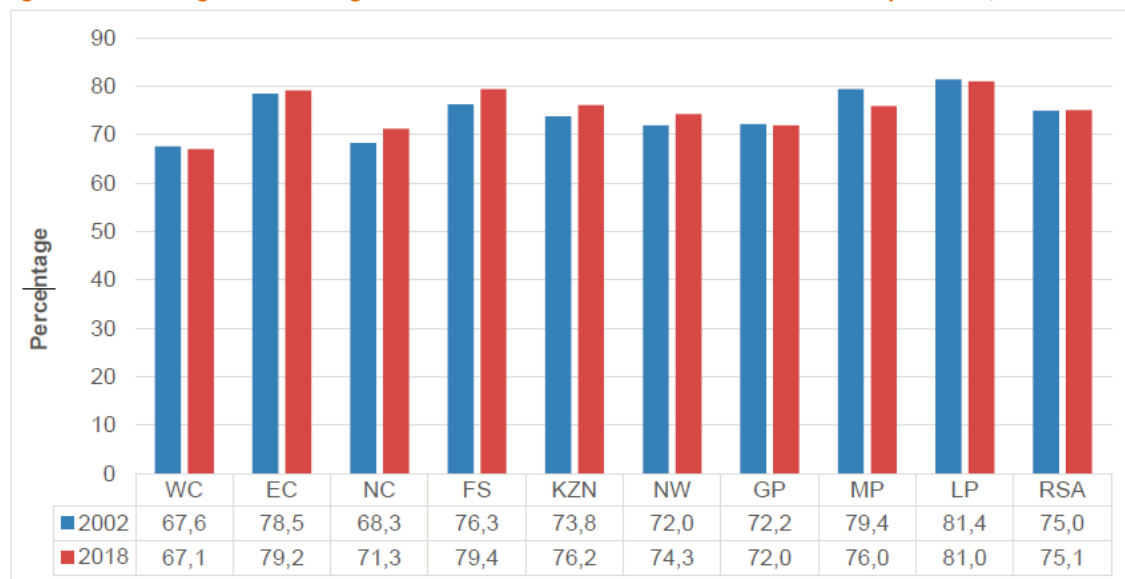
Figure 13: Percentage of Persons Aged 20 Year and older with no Formal Schooling Per Province, 2002 and 2017



Source: StatsSA: GHS 2002 & 2017

According to the General Household Survey of 2017 by Statistics South Africa, the number of persons aged 20 years and older in the province declined from 17,5% in 2002 to 6,7% in 2017. This indicates a change of 10,8% over a period of 15 years.

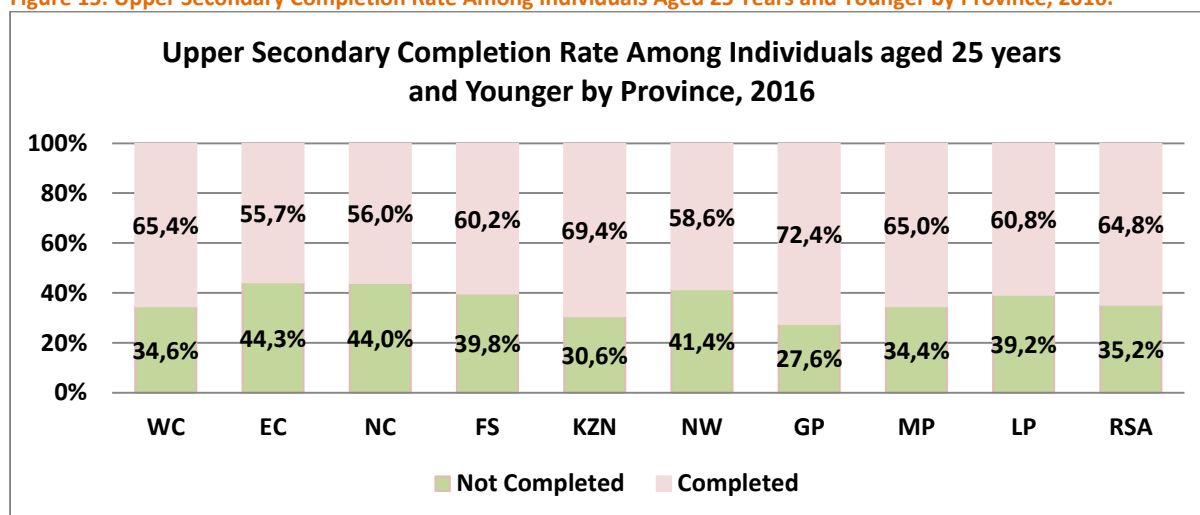
Figure 14: Percentage of Persons Aged 7-24 Years who Attended Education Institutions by Province, 2002 and 2018.



Source: StatsSA: GHS 2018

The figure above, illustrates the percentage of persons who attended education institutions by province between 2002 and 2018. The percentage of people who attended education institution increased from 68,3% in 2002 to 71,3% in 2018, which is positive change of 3% in 16 years.

Figure 15: Upper Secondary Completion Rate Among Individuals Aged 25 Years and Younger by Province, 2016.



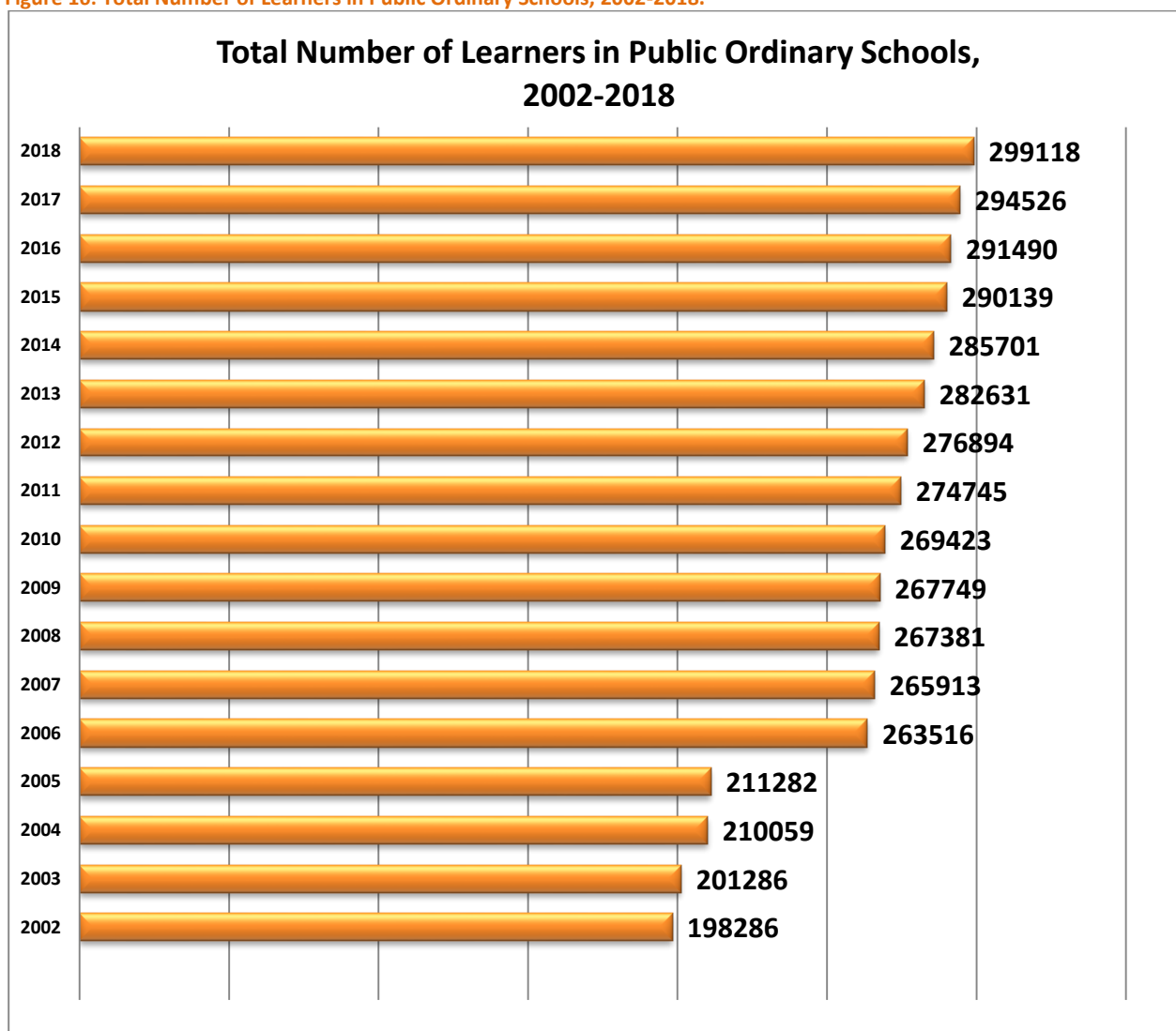
Source: StatsSA: Education Series Volume III: 2016

The figure above shows the upper secondary completion rate per province for 2016. The Upper secondary levels include Grades 10, 11 and 12. Evident from the above figure, the

upper secondary rate of the province was 56% in 2016. The Upper secondary completion gives one an opportunity to enter into the labour force or even further one's studies. According to the above figure, 44% of individuals between 15 and 24 might miss these opportunities, thus increasing in the unemployment rate.

The figure below, shows the total number of learners enrolled in public ordinary schools from 2002-2018.

Figure 16: Total Number of Learners in Public Ordinary Schools, 2002-2018.



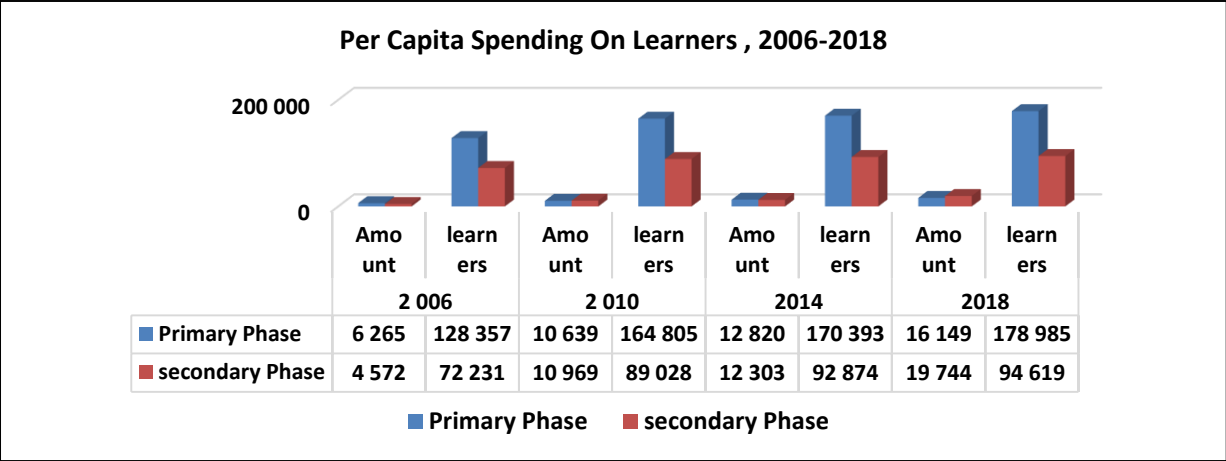
Source: NCDoe, Annual Reports 2002/03-2018/19

The number of learners in public ordinary schools increased from 198 286 in 2002 to 299 118 in 2018. The enrolment rate in public ordinary schools increased with 100 832 learners between 2002 and 2018. The growth was even more apparent in 2006, due to the 198 schools from the North West province that became part of the Northern Cape.

Between 2009/10 and 2017/18 financial year, the province completed 16 new schools, which also contributed to increases in learner enrolment. Another contributing factor was that the ANC led government cancelled segregation by opening all public schools to all races. A new admission policy was introduced which opened up the better resourced schools to all races. Also contributing to this growth, was the improved accessibility of education through various new initiatives introduced by the ANC led government after 1994, such as the No Fee School Policy, National School Nutrition Programme and the Learner School Transport amongst others.

One of the initial changes made in 1994, was to cancel segregation by opening all public schools to all races. A new admission policy was introduced which opened up the better resourced schools to all races. Even though the schools were now open to all races the issue of redress of resourcing had to be tackled. One of the ways to address equity was through the introduction of the National Norms and Standards for School Funding (NNSF) implemented in 2000. The implementation of the NNSF funding mechanism was used to address inherited inequalities in schools by using an equitable share formula. The formula takes into account provincial variables such as the size of the school age population, the number of learners enrolled in ordinary primary schools, the distribution of capital needs, the size of the rural population in each province and the size of the population for social security grants weighted by a poverty index. The figure below, depicts Per Capita spending on learners from 2006 to 2018.

Figure 17: Per Capita Spending on Learners, 2006-2018.



Source: NCDoe, 2006-2018

Evident from the figure above, the per capita spending for a Black African learner increased from R6 265 in 2006 to R16 149 in 2018 for primary phase, and from R4 572 to 19 744 for secondary phase over the same period. This amount does not include the other initiatives that government put in place to fight hunger and poverty. These include free schooling, feeding at school as well as transport subsidy.

The largest proportion of the provincial education budget is spent on the public ordinary school education programme. This consists of public primary and secondary schools, including the per learner allocations to schools. The cost of public ordinary school education grows year-on-year and this can be attributed to the growing number of learners in this sector, necessitating increased expenditure on items such free schooling, feeding at school, transport subsidy and LTSM.

1.3.3 Annual National Assessment

One of the major policy shifts in the country’s basic education sector is the introduction of the Annual National Assessment (ANA) in 2011. This was prompted by the poor performance of the South African learner in both regional and international benchmarking assessment especially in Literacy and Mathematics. Through ANA, the department was able to establish critical information on learner performance in Grades 3, 6 and Grade 9 in Mathematics and Languages and Literacy in public schools, including special schools and

state-funded independent primary schools in South Africa. This information includes diagnostic data to teachers in the classroom on areas of weakness, which becomes the focus of the remedial programmes in each school. The table below, reflects the overall performance of Grade 3 ,6 and 9 relating to ANA from 2011 to 2014.

Table 1: Annual National Assessment For Mathematics and Language for Grades 3, 6 and 9, 2011-2014

Grade and Subject	2011	2012	2013	2014
Grade 3 Language	28 %	49,4 %	46,2%	44,8%
Grade 3 Mathematics	21%	37,9%	50,5%	48,9%
Grade 6 language	27%	39%	52,8%	63,1%
Mathematics Grade 6	28%	23,8%	35,6%	24,4%
Grade 9 language	-	13,2	12,6	36,2
Grade 9 Mathematics	-	44,3	43,1	2,5

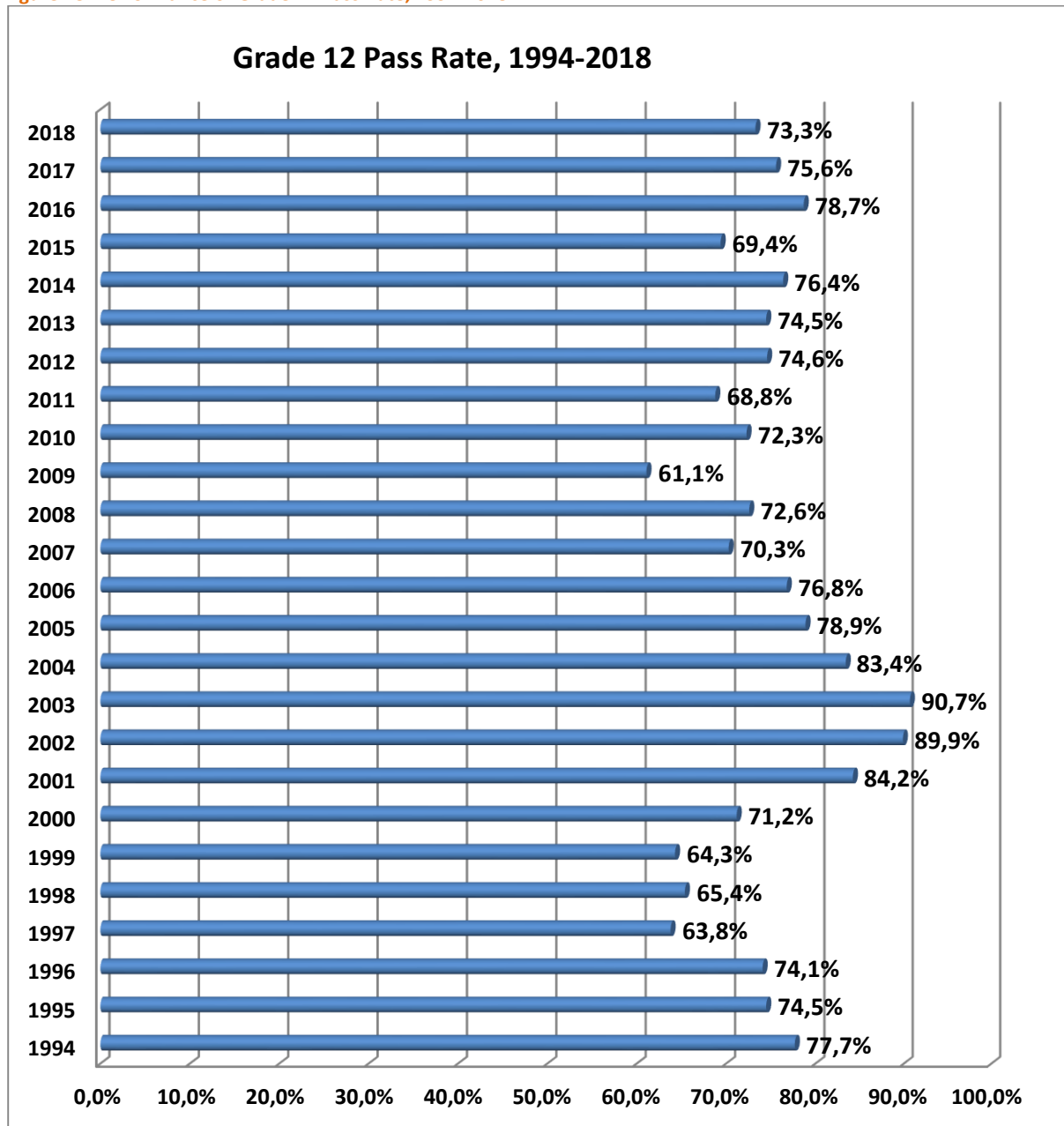
Source: NCDoE, Annual Reports, 2013/14-2015/16

Apparent from the above table, there was an improvement of 16,8% in Languages in grade 3 between 2011 and 2014, and an increase of 27,9% for Mathematics over the same period. The Grade 6 ANA results for Language depicts a significant increase of 36,1% between 2011 and 2014, whilst the Mathematics results declined with 3,6% over the same period.

The ANA tests were conducted in Grade 9 for the first time in 2012. The results for home languages increased with 23% between 2011 and 2014, whilst the results for Mathematics declined by 41,8% over the same period. The ANA was last administered in 2014, but the province tracks the results of all learners in all grades through the SA-SAMS. The new Data-Driven Districts (DDD), which runs off SA-SAMS also assist schools in tracking the performance of individual learners especially those lagging behind.

1.3.4 Grade 12 Pass Rate

Figure 18: Performance of Grade 12 Pass Rate, 1994-2018.



Source: NCDoe, 1994-2018

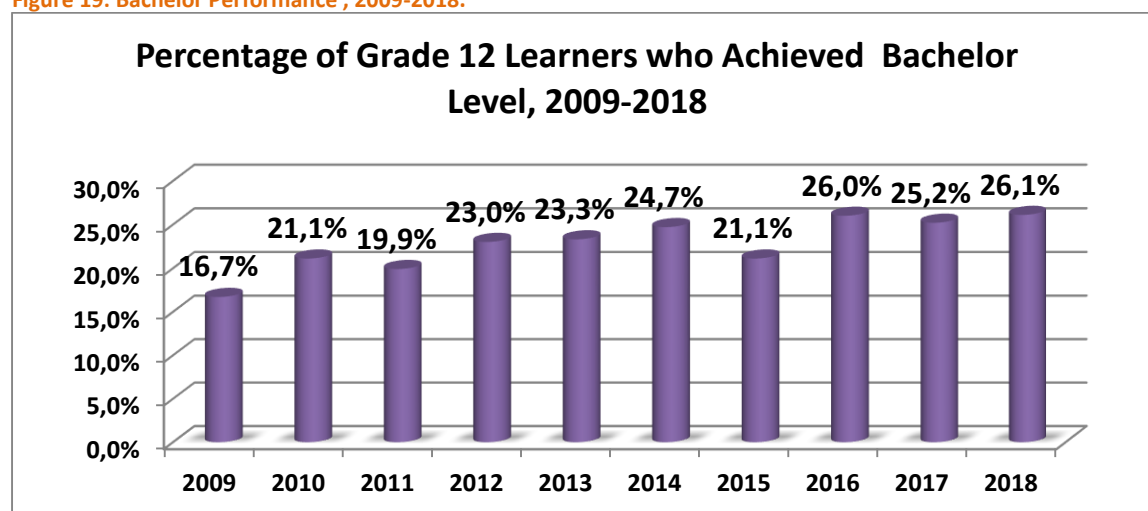
Figure 9 provides the matric pass rate for the past 25 years. The learner performance has had fluctuating results. Noted was excellent performances between 2002 to 2003. The best performance was recorded in 2003, when the province obtained 90.7%, which propelled NC to the first position in the country. The latest performances obtained was 73.3% in 2018.

The decline between 2014 and 2015 was due to the carry through effect of the prolonged community service delivery protest action in John Taolo Gaetsewe District Municipality

(JTGDM). In 2015, the National Department of Basic Education allowed learners who had failed grade 11 twice to progress to grade 12, even though they had not met the passing criteria. As a result, the pass rate was negatively affected when it dropped by 7% between 2014 and 2015. The decline in the provincial performance in 2017 can be attributed to the drop in learners' performance in Afrikaans Home Language. It needs to be noted that all Home Languages introduced new literature works in 2017. The possible negative impact thereof was mediated with a number of interventions, including workshops for teachers and learners. However, Home Languages were negatively impacted due to this change and languages, for example Setswana, that performed poorer than Afrikaans. The province also registered poor performance in Business Studies and History. It is clear that the reduction in terms of the duration and scope (size) of the annual provincial interventions, due to cost containment, negatively impacted the provincial performance.

The recurring challenge over the years in the matric pass rate, is the increased number of progressed and borderline learners entering matric, as well as underperforming schools - those that achieve less than 60% matric pass rate. The province put interventions in place to support progressed learners who underperform at high enrolment schools. This was done through the curriculum coverage, as well as sharpening of the learners' exam techniques, which take place in autumn, winter and spring camps.

Figure 19: Bachelor Performance , 2009-2018.



Source: NCDoe, Annual Reports, 2009/10-2017/18.

The total number of Grade 12 learners eligible for Bachelors programme increased from 16,7% in 2009, to 26,1% in 2018. The decline between 2014 and 2015 (as mentioned above), was due to the carry through effect of the prolonged community service delivery protest action in John Taolo Gaetsewe District Municipality (JTGDM). The underperformance during 2016 and 2017 was as a result of progressed learners and underperforming schools.

To address the lack of scarce skills required for meaningful participation in the economy, the national government has introduced the Dinaledi schools project. The aim of this programme is to increase the participation rates of learners from previously disadvantaged communities, in Mathematics, Physical Science and Computer Application Technology. There is a need not only to increase the quantity, but also the quality of the learners. The Table below, displays the Grade 12 pass rate in Mathematics, Physical Science and Computer Application Technology from 2009 to 2017.

Table 2: Grade 12 Pass Rate in Mathematics, Physical Science and Computer Application Technology.

Academic Year	Mathematics	Physical Science	Technology
2009	43.63%	33.35%	82.21%
2010	52.27%	45.50%	87.11%
2011	50.49%	43.98%	80.88%
2012	54.89%	60.13%	85.56%
2013	57.70%	61.50%	84.50%
2014	63.40%	60.40%	90.60%
2015	57.00%	54.30%	78.90%
2016	60.70%	57.40%	87.00%
2017	57.40%	56.80%	87.70%

Source: NCDoe, 2009-2017

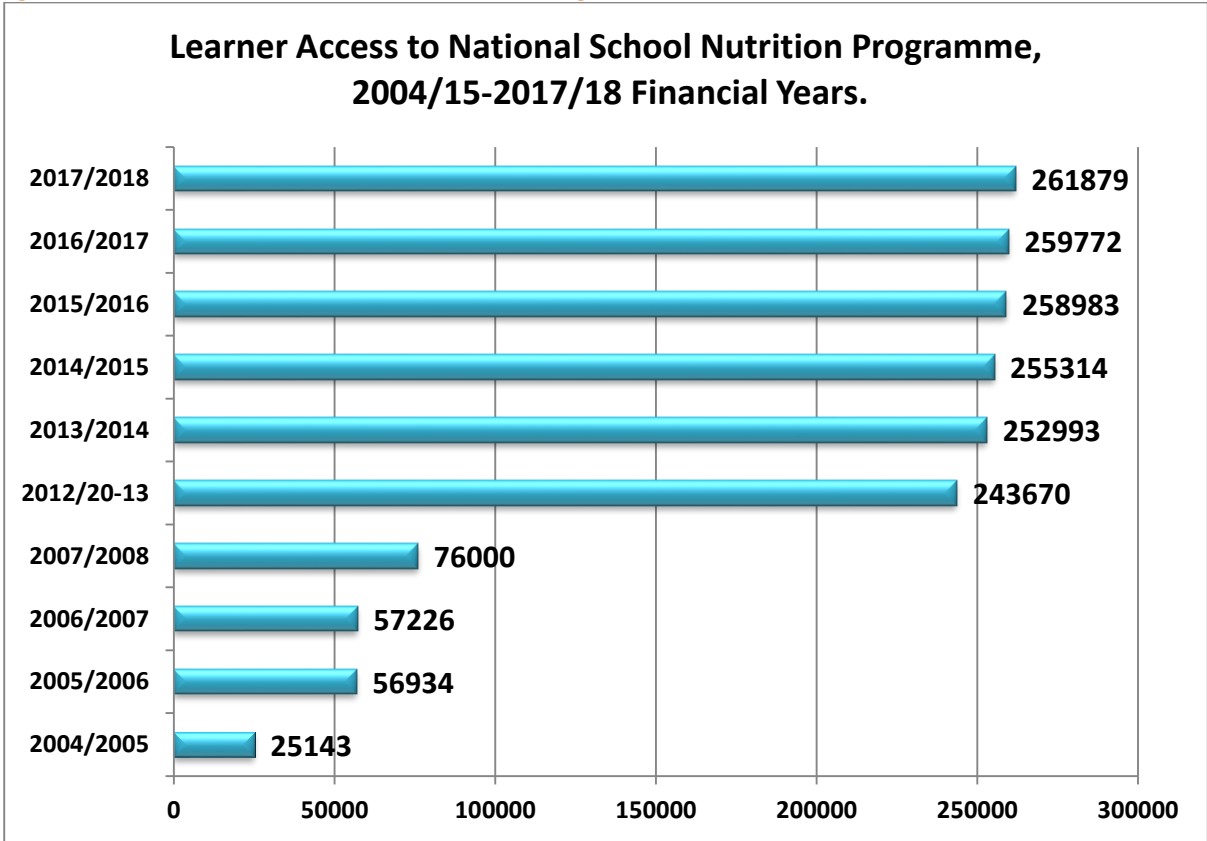
The pass rates in all of the three subjects improved between 2009 and 2017. The number of learners who passed Mathematics increased from 43,63% to 57,4% between 2009 and 2017. The Physical Science pass rate recorded the highest improvement from 33,5% in 2009 to 56,8% in 2017, while the number of grade 12 learners passing Computer Application Technology improved from 82,2% to 87,7% over the same period. These improvements can be attributed to the provincial interventions put in place, such as the Hey Maths! ICT platform, which was introduced in 2011 to strengthen the teaching in schools. This programme is currently operational in 200 identified primary and secondary schools. HeyMath is a software programme for learning and teaching Mathematics. The department

introduced the HeyScience ICT platform in 2015 with the objective of strengthening performance in Physical Science.

1.3.5 National School Nutrition Programme

The National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP) was introduced in 1994 as part of the Reconstruction and Development Programme (a framework introduced by the ANC-led government to address the immense socio-economic challenges). This programme was first managed from the Department of Health. In 2004, the programme was transferred to the Department of Education. The NSNP aims to reduce challenges of poverty amongst the neediest learners, as it was noted that some learners go to school hungry and may not have access to food at schools.

Figure 20: Learner Access to National School Nutrition Programme, 2004/5-2017/18.



Source: NCDoE, Annual Reports 2004/05-2017/18

The Northern Cape used a decentralised model for NSNP. Funding is calculated using learner numbers based on the SNAP survey (a mandatory 10-day survey to determine

learner numbers for the year) and quintile level to determine funds for each school. The National Department of Education introduced the programme to feed learners in the primary phase, (for learners in quintiles 1, 2 and 3), but the Northern Cape Province feeds both the primary and secondary learners. All public schools are categorised on a national ranking mechanism from quintile 1 to 5, with quintile 1 being poorly resourced schools in poor communities. The programme has since grown from providing nutritious meals to 25 143 learners in 2004/05, to 261 879 learners in 2017/18 financial years. According to the 2018 General Household Survey (StatsSA: General Household Survey 2018, 2019, p. 17), 82,6% of learners in the Northern Cape benefit from the school nutrition programme.

The NSNP has since been earmarked as one of the government strategies to alleviate hunger and poverty in the communities. The programme thus contributes to the economic development of local people through co-operatives and small enterprises as service providers. The programme also contributes to economic development of local people through employment of Volunteer Food Handlers (Cooks), who prepare meals for the learners. The food handlers receive skills training on how to prepare food, basic hygiene and earn stipends which ranged from R1 483 per month.

The NSNP also provide nutrition education as part of the Life Skills academic curriculum and in environmental management such as hand washing and recycling for all involved including the learners, teachers and food handlers. The programme also focuses on sustainable food production. Many schools established food gardens to varying degrees of success.

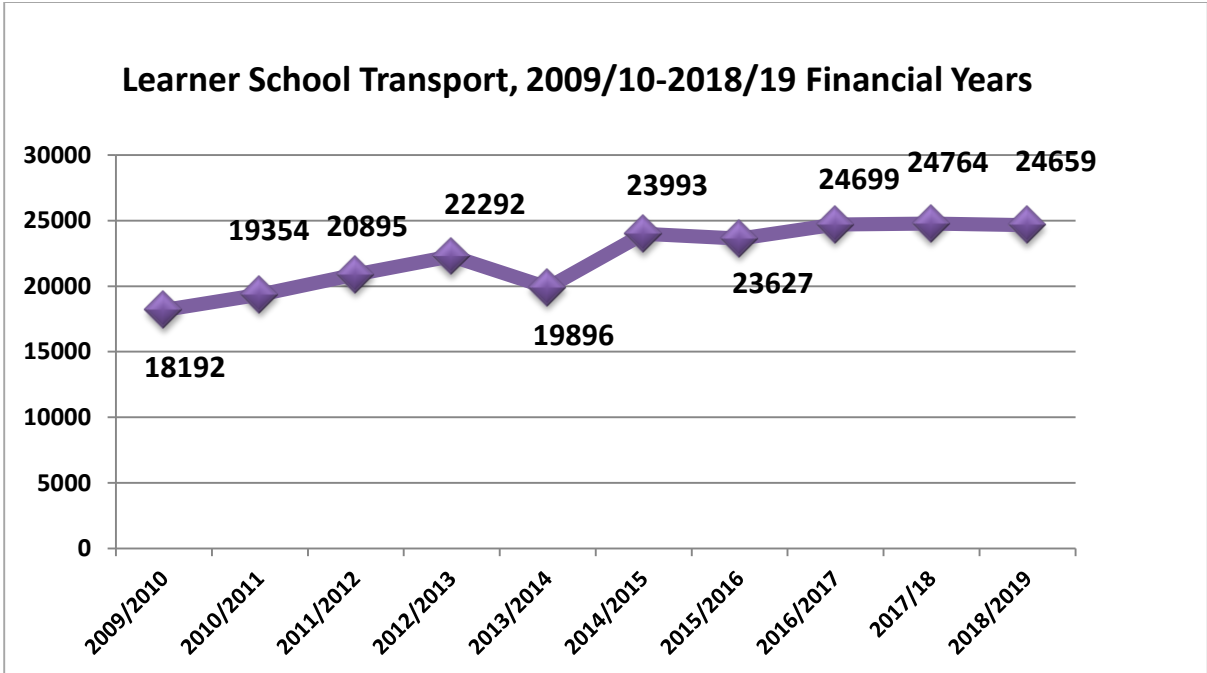
1.3.6 Learner School Transport

The learner transport policy developed by the Department of Transport in collaboration with the Department of Education is guided by the White Paper on National Transport Policy (1996), the National Land Transport Act, Act 05 of 2009, the National Land Transport Strategic Framework, the National Development Plan (NDP) and other legislations such as the National Road Traffic Act, Act 93 of 1996, South African Schools Act and the Child Act. The policy guides principles, including operational safety, efficiency, equity and redress as well as operational sustainability. The policy provides for the subsidised transportation of

learners who attend school from Grade R to Grade 12, who travel more than 5 kilometres from their place of residence to schools as determined by the South African Schools Act to access basic education. Provision of learner transport ensures that children from farm and rural areas are able to access basic education.

Previously, the learner transport function was the responsibility of the Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison (DTSL) in the province. In April 2018, the learner transport function was transferred from DTSL to the Department of Education.

Figure 21: Learner School Transport, 2009/10-2018/19 Financial Year.



Source: NCDoE, Annual Reports 2009/10-2017/18

The Department of Education continues to make significant progress in the provision of learner transport. The number of learners benefiting from learner transport increased from 18 192 to 24 659 between the 2009/10 and 2018/19 financial years. However, there are challenges because of the vastness of the province and poor road infrastructures, sourcing suppliers with roadworthy transports and funding. The challenge of provisioning of adequate learner transport to deserving learners is more acute in the John Taolo Gaetsewe district, due to poor road infrastructure in that area. Despite these challenges, the department is committed to ensuring that deserving learners have access to school transportation.

1.3.7 No Fee Schools

The South African Schools Act (SASA 84 of 1996) allows the school and School Governing Body (SGB) to charge schools fees for quintile 4 to 5 schools that were not declared as “No-fee” schools. However, the national government also provided guidance on the exemption from payment of school fees. This was to assist parents to access quality education for their children, irrespective of their background or financial constraints. No-fee school policy is one of government’s pro-poor policies in pursuance of expanding access to basic education

Table 3: The Number of No Fee Schools, Learners and Budget Allocation.

Year	Learners	No. Of Schools	% Of Schools	Budget
2007	102 369	326	54.15%	R56 945 699
2008	112 912	352	58.47%	R84 510 822
2009	132 586	381	63.61%	R102 684 871
2010	171 018	453	75.75%	R138 324 846
2011	176 279	451	76.57%	R150 682 380
2012	176 587	421	76.13%	R160 102 852
2013	179 732	414	75.00%	R171 457 660
2014	180 723	412	74.91%	R184 274 895
2015	186 844	415	75.18%	R199 939 782
2016	188 087	407	74.68%	R211 607 403
2017	189 601	407	74.68%	R223 183 735
2018	192 198	407	74.68%	R238 919 004

Source: NCDoe, Annual Reports, 2007/8-2017/18

The table above, depicts the total number of learners, no fee schools and the expenditure to assist parents to access quality education for their children, irrespective of their background. The province increased the number of no fee schools from 326 to 407, between 2007 and 2018. For the 2017/2018 financial year, 407 schools in quintiles 1, 2 and 3 were declared No Fee Schools, which is 74.68% of the total schools in the Northern Cape Province. This represented 70,16% of learners in no fee schools, which exceeds the National prescribed percentage by 8,66%.

In achieving the objectives of the No Fee School Policy as encapsulated in the Amended South African Schools Act, a total allocation of R223 183 735 was provided during the 2017/18 financial year towards Services, Maintenance and Learner Support Material (LSM) categories. The allocated funding for no fee school represented 83,13% of the total Norms and Standards funding provided towards Public Ordinary Schooling Education.

1.3.8 Provision of School Infrastructure

School infrastructure for the Black Africans was one of the highly neglected areas before democracy. The need for improvement was extremely huge. The budget for infrastructure had to be managed in a highly sophisticated manner to rush the increase of quantity without compromising on quality. Infrastructure delivery included projects like increasing classroom capacity, providing mobile classrooms, building fences around schools, upgrading sanitation, building laboratories, computer rooms and workshops for technical subjects, as well as building new schools either in new residential areas, or replacing old dilapidated buildings/unfit structures.

Table 4: Provision of School Infrastructure, 2009/10-2017/18

PROGRAMMES	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
Water Supply	27	13	9	12	6	0	0	0	0
Electricity Supply	13	9	14	10	16	0	0	0	0
Sanitation Supply	15	5	5	3	5	0	0	0	0
Fencing Supply	7	12	5	9	19	15	42	52	9
Additional classrooms built in, or provided for, existing public ordinary schools (includes replacement schools)	46	19	14	10	43	63	6	92	11

PROGRAMMES	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
Specialist rooms built in public ordinary schools (includes replacement schools)	1	1	12	13	17	6	1	10	0
New or additional Grade R Classrooms Built	13	8	11	13	15	14	8	9	6
New Schools completed and ready for occupation	2	1	2	3	1	1	3	3	0
New schools under construction (includes replacement schools)	4	5	6	4	3	5	6	14	6
Schools where scheduled maintenance projects were completed	53	13	31	24	17	29	44	38	38
The number of public ordinary schools where upgrades or additional supply was provided in terms of water in line with agreed norms and standards.						30	41	52	10

PROGRAMMES	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
The number of public ordinary schools where upgrades or additional supply was provided in terms of electricity and in line with agreed norms and standards.						6	19	8	17
The number of public ordinary schools where upgrades or additional supply was provided in terms of sanitation in line with agreed norms and standards.						10	24	9	35

Source: NCDoe, 2009/20-2017/18

Achievements in the provision of public school Infrastructure since 2009/10 2017/18 is as follows: 304 classrooms have been built, 61 specialists rooms, 97 Grade R classrooms, 16 new schools were completed and 287 schools received corrective or preventative maintenance between 2009/10 and 2017/18 financial year.

Between the 2009/10 and 2013/14 financial years, the province supplied 67 schools with water, 62 schools with electrical, 33 schools with sanitation and 170 schools with fencing. At the end of the 2013/14 financial year, all the schools in the province had access to water, sanitation and electricity supply, hence no services were provided during 2014/15. Since all the schools had access to the above mentioned services, the province only started providing upgrades or additional supply where required in line with the agreed norms and standards. Therefore, upgrades/additional supply was provided to 133 schools in terms of water, 50

schools in terms of electricity, and 78 schools in terms of sanitation in line with agreed norms and standards during 2017/18 financial year.

Despite there being progress in the provision of basic school infrastructure since 1994, the provision of school infrastructure is still a challenge in the province. The majority of Northern Cape schools, in terms of infrastructure, are mainly classified as small or medium as the average number of classrooms per school for the province is sixteen (16). There is, however, still a backlog on Minimum Education Areas (Classrooms, ECD Classrooms, Science Laboratories and Media Centres (Computer Centre and Library), as well as Education Support Areas (which includes Nutrition Centres and Administration Spaces among others) within 83% of Northern Cape Schools and are prioritised according to various factors (prioritisation strategy). In order to have all schools operating optimally and schools that are fully suitable for its required function, these facilities need to be provided with all minimum, supportive and administrative infrastructure. At present there are only 17% of schools functioning at this level with minor Infrastructure needs.

1.4 Persistent challenges

- Despite there being progress in the provision of basic school infrastructure since 1994, the provision of school infrastructure is still a challenge in the province. The majority of Northern Cape schools in terms of infrastructure are mainly classified as small or medium as the average number of classrooms per school for the province is sixteen (16). There is however still a backlog on Minimum Education Areas (Classrooms, ECD Classrooms, Science Laboratories and Media Centres (Computer Centre and Library)) as well as Education Support Areas (which includes Nutrition Centres and Administration Spaces among others) within 83% of Northern Cape Schools and are prioritised according to various factors (prioritisation strategy). In order to have all schools operating optimally and schools that are fully suitable for its required function these facilities need to be provided with all minimum, supportive and administrative infrastructure. At present there are only 17% of schools functioning at this level with minor Infrastructure needs.
- To partly address historical unequal resource allocation, government introduced the National Norms and Standards for School Funding in January 2000. Its aim was to

move non-personnel expenditure both capital and current towards schools in poor communities using poverty quintiles. Although the Funding Norms and Standards are pro-poor in design, their impact had been limited due to the small amounts relative to overall school funding. The quintile system marked a major break from school funding based on race to funding based on levels of poverty. Although the quintile system further strengthened a pro-poor funding mechanism, the funding has not resulted in an equalisation of resources among all the schools in the province. Some schools are better resourced than other which attributes to poor learner and teacher performance.

- Schools in the province are challenged with an unstable workforce: Many schools report high levels of teacher absenteeism on a regular basis. Some teachers are on a long-term incapacity leave commonly known as PILIR (Policy and Procedure on Incapacity Leave and Ill Health Retirement) which may stretch beyond 36 months). Without teachers in class it is very difficult for School Management to ensure that learning takes place. PILIR also affects budgeting because for every teacher absent for a certain period of time a substitute teacher must be employed.
- Learners with poor reading skills: many of the learners struggle with reading. Good Readers become lifelong readers who think critically, understand deeply the message of the written texts and can reproduce well thought responses.
- Inability to retain well-trained teachers as and those place in rural areas as many of the schools in the province are struggling to retain their good teachers who opt to for better prospects as a result increasing the vacant posts.
- Teachers struggling with the use of technology, some teachers who may not be well acquainted to technology tend to avoid or only minimally use technology in the classroom. Integrating technology enhances learning especially self-learning.
- Improving the matric pass rate.

1.5 Looking ahead

- Eradicate inappropriate school facilities by 2030, while strengthening inadequate structures and ensuring a sustainable maintenance programme for schools.

- Develop a strategy to support educational institutions and should include a clear monitoring and evaluation element that will focus on areas of improvement in learner achievements, teacher absenteeism and filling of vacant teachers posts.
- Strengthen the provincial long-term strategy on the recruitment of matriculants to train as teachers through the Funza Lushaka Bursary Scheme and develop a strategy for the retention of educators in the deep rural areas.
- Fully migrate ECD into Basic Education sector.
- Implement programs to support first 1000 days of children with effective collaboration between departments of Health, Social Development and Basic education through an Integrated ECD Strategy.
- Expand Early Grade Reading Assessment (EGRA) throughout the entire education system from 2020 to increase literacy.
- Develop teacher competency in subjects they teach, through teacher development directed by self-diagnosis rather than generic teacher development.
- Use Technology to bring excellent teachers in their subject areas into every classroom.
- Eliminate digital divide ensuring all schools are connected by 2021 and reach an agreement with ICASA to ensure zero rating of all educational websites identified by DBE
- Change curriculum to support the 4th Industrial economy and ensure that our youth at school are empowered and armed with the necessary tools to respond to the changing world of work and knowledge generation.
- Implementation of programme/interventions to improve the matric pass rate.



Chapter 2

A LONG AND HEALTHY LIFE FOR ALL SOUTH AFRICANS



CHAPTER 2

2.1 Problem statement

At the end of the apartheid era in 1994, the health system in South Africa was faced with massive challenges [(Health Systems Trust, 1996), (Vartanian, 2011)]. The central features of the apartheid era health system can be summarized according to three major characteristics as follows. (i) inequitable health system which delivered different health care services through differently financing mechanisms largely based on individual's socio-economic status. (ii) the health system was inadequately and inefficiently structured, being biased towards the curative care and higher level hospital services. Effective health promotion and prevention, as well as non-hospital primary health care services, were largely neglected (iii) the apartheid health policy not only promoted centralized health system to advance differential access to health care services based on the social, political and economic power, but also served as instruments of the state in achieving the apartheid goals mainly maintaining white supremacy. (Vartanian, 2011).

As evidence shows, during the apartheid era, the NC Province, like any other province in the country, was faced with huge burden of preventable and treatable diseases. Poor health status was largely concentrated among the socio-economically disadvantaged and vulnerable sub-groups of a population. By and large, the apartheid health system failed to guarantee access to basic and essential health care services for all [(Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, 1996), (McIntyre, Bloom, Doherty, & Brijlal, 1005), (Schneider, Bradshaw, Steyn, Norman, & Laubcher, 2009, pp. 37, 176-186)]. These resulted with differences in key health outcome indicators among sub-groups of a population. Worst health indicators were substantial among Black citizens. For instance, in 1998, there was a 12,7 year differences in the Life Expectancy at birth between white and black males, where life expectancy amongst white South Africans was 65,2 years in contrast to 52,5 years for black males. Infant Mortality Rate (IMR) for white infants was 13,1 deaths per 1000 live births, compared with 70 infant deaths per 1000 live births for blacks in 1985 (Jurjus, 2015). Prevalence and incidences of HIV and comorbidity Tuberculosis were substantially higher among the black and coloured population than as compared to whites. However, regardless of the burden of disease, there was unfair and skewed resources allocation towards to the

affluent and the private health sector, which was serving limited in member and wealthy people and white geographical areas. Public health facilities which served rural areas, former homeland areas, township areas, and informal settlements were systematically underfunded as a result of apartheid health policy [(Van Rensburg, Ataguba, & Benator, 2012), (Health Systems Trust, 1996), (Doherty, Kraus, & Herbst, 1996)].

Lack of health infrastructure was a challenge pre-1994. There was mal-distribution of hospital beds and clinics [(Doherty, Kraus, & Herbst, 1996), (Harrison, 2010)]. Many rural hospitals had very limited access to medical doctors, and medicines were not always available at public health facilities and/or was unaffordable to the majority poor. This means that the right of everyone to the highest attainable standard of physical and mental health was not being enjoyed equally across the population, mainly due to avoidable and unfair barriers to access to health care services [(Union of South Africa, 1944), (McIntyre & van den Heever, 2007), (Bradshaw, Nannan, & Laubscher, 2007)]. In 1994/95, it was estimated that there were 0,8 clinics per 10 000 people to service the South African population of about 41,7 million. Most of public health facilities were not maintained adequately due to constraints in resources. For instance, the audit of hospitals conducted by Scientific and Industrial Research in the country in 1996, found key challenges such as, 12% of the available stock of public hospital needed to be replaced, while 17% needed renovation [(Doherty, Kraus, & Herbst, 1996) (Harrison, 2010)].

According to the human resources for health, there was a mal-distribution of medical professionals between the public and private sectors, as well as among provinces. For instance, of the 17 438 General Practitioners (GP) working in South Africa in 1996, a total of 10 067 (58%) which is close to two-thirds, were working in the private sector and only 7 371 (42%) were located in public health sector. Furthermore, the distribution of GPs among provinces showed biased towards the relatively developed provinces such as Gauteng (3 006), Western Cape (1 255) and KwaZulu Natal (1 219). Table below shows the distribution of selected health care professionals in the public and private health sector in the NC Province in 1996.

Table 5: Distribution of selected health care professionals in the public and private health sectors in the NC Province in 1996

Categories of personnel	Nurse (All)			GPs (All)			Specialist (All)			Pharmacist (All)			Dentists (All)		
	Public	Private	Total	Public	Private	Total	Public	Private	Total	Public	Private	Total	Public	Private	Total
Northern Cape	1793	173	1966	112	184	296	10	39	49	27	176	203	3	58	62
South Africa	103336	16586	119922	7371	10067	17438	2685	3657	6342	953	14841	15794	418	3330	3748

Source: (Health Systems Trust, 1996, p. 89)

The Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement (NSDA), 2014, cited that *“the inequity in the health system is exacerbated by the fact that access to health care is unequal with the majority of the population relying on a public health care system that has a disproportionately lower amount of financial and human resources at its disposal relative to the private sector. For instance, the per capita spend in the public sector is estimated at R1, 600 whilst in the private sector it is R9, 800 in nominal terms. Furthermore, the distribution of key health professionals between the two sectors is also skewed. In the public sector there are about 4,200 patients to a general doctor compared to 243 patients to a general doctor in the private sector. While access in terms of reach has been achieved, more needs to be done in terms of improving quality of care, human resources management, infrastructure and making services more available to all South Africans to ensure better health outcomes.”* (Department of Health, 2010).

2.2 The journey since 1994

2.2.1 Overview

Since 1994, the new government, have made significant efforts in addressing inequity in health and promoting all-inclusive socio-economic growth that led to put health care reforms high on the country’s structural reform agenda (A National Health Plan for South Africa, 1994, pp. 1-5). Many progressive health policies, programmes and interventions have been developed in redressing the impacts of the South African health system prior to 1994, and for attaining the vision of “A Long and Healthy Life for All South Africans”. As such the path to better health for all was envisaged through a district-centred health system

and Primary Health Care (PHC) approach (White Paper for the Transformation of the Health System in South Africa, 1997).

The above approach contributed to a more evidence based planning process in the district and enabled district health managers and health care workers to develop effective action plans to address the challenges and health needs of the communities in their respective districts, as well as providing accessible health care services as close to the community settings they serve. Although the strategy mainly focuses on PHC as the main vehicle of service delivery; the continuum of care includes promotive, preventive, curative, rehabilitative and palliative care, as well as support from the provincial and national department of health (Handbook for District Clinical Specialist Teams, 2014). As a Province, there is a commitment to sustaining the gains that have been made in the last 25 years on democracy, and to expanding the coverage and improving the quality of health services provided to people living within the province.

2.2.2 Legislation and Policies

Over the last two and a half decades, the Northern Cape Province has been through an exciting process of transformation in combating unfair and unjust health system, as well as improving population health outcomes.

- The Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) of the 1994 considered good health status both as a prerequisite for social and economic development as well as an outcome of that process.
- White Paper on the Transformation of the Health system in April 1997 – endorsed as one of the key population health strategy for the elimination of discriminatory structures and practices in the public health system.
- The Mental Health Act 17 of 2002.
- National Health Act 61 of 2003 creation of a unified National Health system, incorporating public and private sectors.
- Comprehensive HIV/AIDS and STI Strategic Plan 2007 – 2011, included provision of ART to pregnant women and CD4 count of 350 or less.
- Green Paper for National Health Insurance (2012) – outlined the phased implementation approach of Universal Health Coverage (UHC) in South Africa.

- National Development Plan (NDP 2030) adopted by Cabinet and all parties in Parliament 2012 – envisages a health system that works for everyone and produce “A Long and Healthy Life for All South Africans.”
- National Health Amendment Act 12 of 2013 passed for the establishment of the Office of the Health Standards Compliance (OHSC) to inspect and certify health establishments based on the 2011 amendment on National Core Standards for health establishment in South Africa.
- National Health Insurance Bill (2018) approved by Cabinet for public consultation for the creation of the National Health Insurance Fund.

2.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

Primary Health Care (PHC) is being strongly advocated as the main vehicle of health service delivery to bridge the equity gap in geographical access to good quality health care, while continuum of care has been promoted through effective referral systems between different hierarchies of health care services. Major progress was also achieved with the implementation of the district health system, and it was possible to transform the public health system from a fragmented, racially divided, hospital-centred service to an integrated, comprehensive national service that attempted to fairly address the health needs of all South Africans in general, and the previously disadvantaged people and those who are living in rural areas in particular.

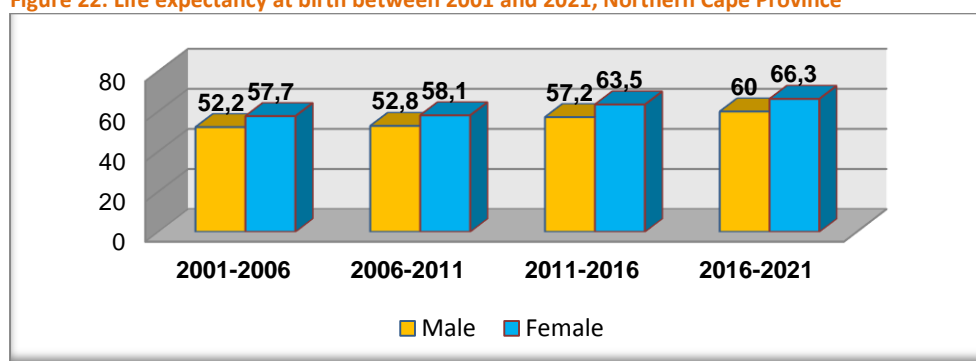
PHC is operationally defined as provision of essential care based on practical, scientifically and socially acceptable methods and made universally accessible to individuals and families in the community at a cost that the community and the country can afford without having financial hardship or impoverishment. As such, PHC is a paramount approach to achieving Universal Health Coverage (UHC), through the implementation of the National Health Insurance (NHI) in South Africa. Universal Health Coverage (UHC) brings together health systems and Social Determinants of Health (SDH) into one integrated field. This combined focus on health service delivery provides a strong basis for creating efficient health system, and ultimately improve service delivery for even better health outcomes for all through tackling the root causes for poor health and health inequalities.

According to the NHI implementation plan, capacitating public health facilities towards ideal facilities for improvement in the six building blocks of the health system, which are identified as critical elements for the delivery of equitable, accessible and good quality healthcare services, has been taking place in a pilot district Pixley Ka Seme in the Northern Cape Province. These include (i) human resources for health, including the specialists, (ii) health care finance, (iii) leadership and governance, (iv) medical products, medicine, vaccines, equipment (v) infrastructure, and (vi) health services (Everybody Business, 2007). It is worth to note that along improvements in the key system building blocks, testing to innovative ideas that improve the delivery as well and health outcome are taking place.

2.3.1 Life Expectancy at birth 2001 – 2021

According to Statistics SA 2018 mid-year population estimates of all provinces, the Northern Cape Province population was estimated about 1 225 600, which is 2.1% of the total population of South Africa. The Northern Cape's population had a higher proportion of females (51,6%) than their male counterparts (48,4%). According to same report, the life expectancy at birth has increased significantly for genders between 2001 and 2018. Life expectancy at birth increased from 57,4 years to 66,6 years for females, and from 52,2 years to 60 years for males. This was an increase of 7,8 years for males and 8,6 years for females during the reporting period. Nationally, life expectancy at birth for South Africans in 2018 was 61,1 years for male and 67,3 years for females (StatsSA: Statistical release P0302 - Mid-year Population estimates, 2018).

Figure 22: Life expectancy at birth between 2001 and 2021, Northern Cape Province



Source: (StatsSA: Statistical release P0302 - Mid-year Population estimates, 2018)

2.3.2 Prevention of unnecessary maternal and child deaths

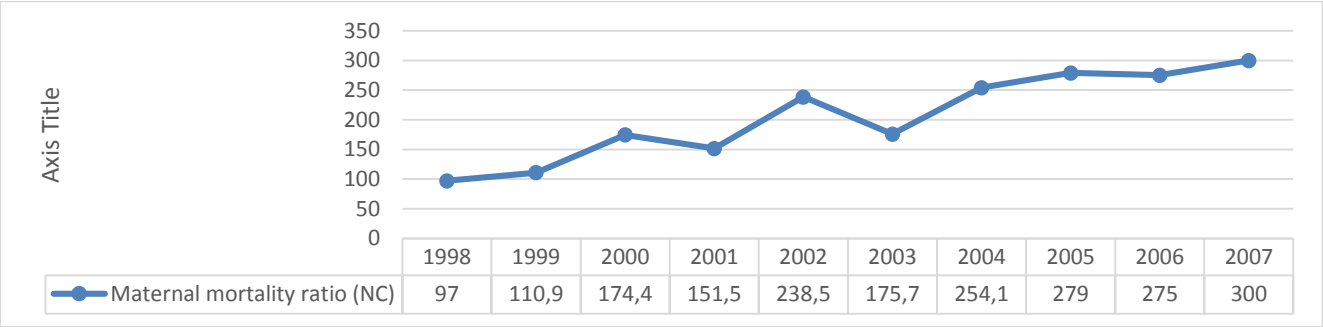
Consistent with the overarching health delivery strategy, the government of South Africa has placed health, in general, and the maternal and child health in particular, as a high

priority in its service transformation plan and the Health Minister’s Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement (NSDA). Accordingly, the country has been taking several bold steps to strengthen the entire health system in order to provide high quality and accessible health services which is free for all pregnant women at public health facilities. This has been recognised as a vital step in improving the maternal and child health outcomes in the country [(White Paper for the Transformation of the Health System in South Africa, 1997), (Guidelines for District Health Planning and Reporting, 2003, 2003), (A District Hospital Service Package for South Africa: A set of norms and standards, 2002)]. Based on this, free PHC services at the point of delivery, for pregnant and lactating women, children under the age of six years and all who use the public primary health care services introduced to make health care services more available and affordable in the province, as well as contribute for prevention of unnecessary maternal and child deaths as reflected in South African's maternal and child health policy.

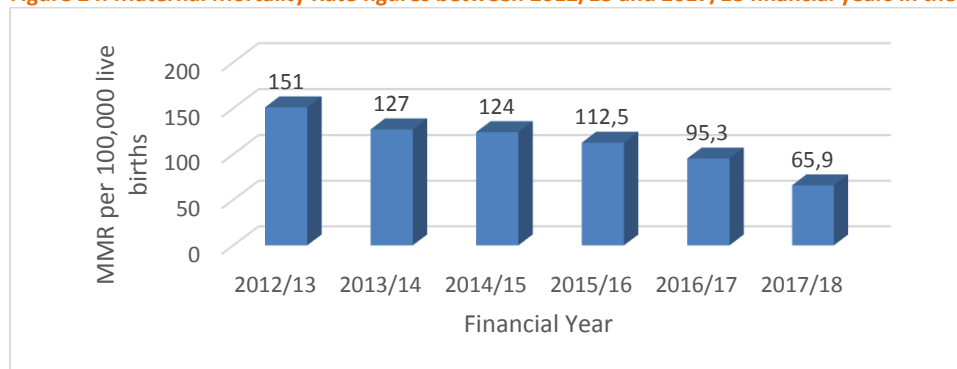
The National Department of Health 2007 guideline for maternal care for clinics, community health centres and district hospitals indicates that maternal healthcare is one of the priority reproductive health issues identified as requiring urgent attention in the country [(A District Hospital Service Package for South Africa: A set of norms and standards, 2002), (DoH: Strategic Priorities for the National Health System 2004- 2009, 2004), (DoH: Annual Reports 2007/8, 2008/9, 2009/10, 2010/11, 2011/12, 2007 - 2012), (DoH: Strategic Plan 2009/10 - 2011/12, 2009)]. Furthermore, government’s commitment to improve maternal health is demonstrated by making maternal deaths a notifiable condition and by the formation of the National Committee on Confidential Enquiry into Maternal Deaths (NCCEMD).

2.3.2.1 Maternal Mortality

Figure 23: Maternal deaths per 100,000 live births, Northern Cape 1998 - 2007



Source: (Northern Cape Province 15-Year Review, 2009)

Figure 24: Maternal Mortality Rate figures between 2012/13 and 2017/18 financial years in the NC Province

Source: (Department of Health, 2018)

Maternal health outcomes in the Northern Cape Province have improved significantly. The facility maternal mortality ratio (MMR) has declined from 250 per 100 000 in 2009/10 live births, to 65,9 per 100 000 live births in the 2017/18 financial year (DoH: Annual Report 2017/18, 2018). The MMR figure shows substantial improvement in averting unnecessary maternal deaths. According to the Sustainable Development Goal (SDG) 2030 target, the country has to reduce the MMR to less than 70 per 100 000 live births. This suggests that the Northern Cape Province already achieved the SDG 2030 target (Transforming our world: the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, 2015). This is a big achievement. However, the big concern is how to sustain this achievement and further reduce unnecessary maternal deaths.

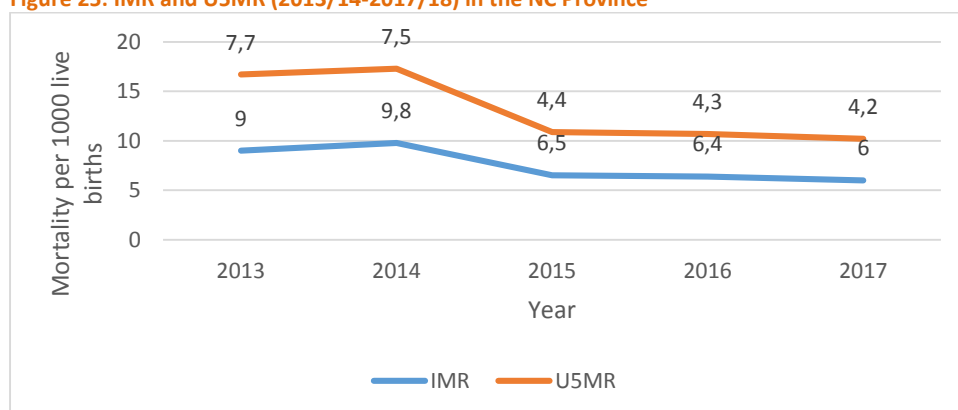
Nationally, the NCCEMD and the MRC rapid mortality surveillance report reflects a consistent decline from 2010 to 2016. The NCCEMD reported a decline from 176,22 maternal deaths per 100 000 live births in 2008-2010 triennium to 138 maternal deaths per 100 000 live births in 2014-2016. The MRC report indicated a decline from 200 maternal deaths per 100 000 live births in 2011, to 152 maternal deaths per 100 000 live births in 2015. Expansion of access to ART for pregnant women, and PMTCT programme and the introduction of two new vaccines (Rotavirus and Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccine -PCV7) significantly contributed for this reduction.

2.3.2.2 Infant and Under-five Mortality

The Northern Cape Province is also doing very well in reducing the under-five mortality (the probability of dying between exact ages one and five) and infant mortality rates (the probability of dying between birth and the first birthday). According to the Northern Cape Department of Health 2018 (HIMS) report (DoH: Annual Report 2017/18, 2018), under-five mortality has shown significant decline from 7,7 mortalities per 1 000 live births in 2013/14 to 4,2 under-five mortality rates in 2017/18 financial year. During the same period, infant mortality rate also showed a decline from 9 mortalities per 1 000 live births in 2013/14, to 6 mortality per 1 000 live births in 2017/18 financial year (DoH: Annual Report 2017/18, 2018).

Nationally, the StatsSA Medium-term population estimates in 2018 indicates that infant mortality rate and Under-five mortality rate significantly reduced between 2002 and 2018. Infant mortality rate reduced from 53,2 infant mortality per 1 000 live births in 2002, to 36,6 infant deaths per 1 000 live births in 2018. Similarly, under-five mortality rate reduced from 80,1 mortality per 1000 live births in 2002 to 4,0 under five deaths per 1000 live births in 2018. SDGs require the country to achieve U5MR of less than 30 per live births and an IMR of less than 20 per 1 000 live births. The figure below shows IMR and U5MR figures between 2012/13 and 2017/18 financial years in the NC Province.

Figure 25: IMR and U5MR (2013/14-2017/18) in the NC Province



Source: (Department of Health, 2018)

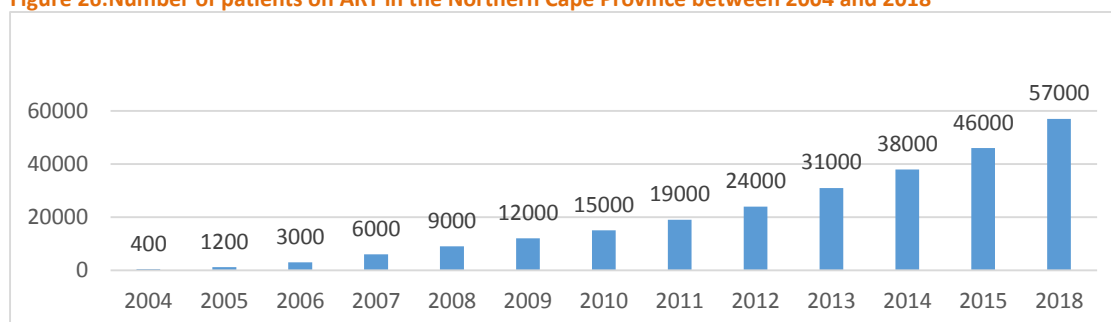
Improvements in Antenatal Care Coverage (ANC) birth, attended by skilled professionals and immunisation coverage, have contributed in reducing the number of MMR, infant and under-five mortalities. According to HIMS 2018 report, the proportion of ANC services utilization among pregnant women stood at 64%, with skilled birth attendance of more than

90%, while 83% children were fully immunized the recommend immunization for 12 months in 2017 (DoH: Annual Report 2017/18, 2018). Despite the progress, some reports indicated that Foetal Alcohol Syndrome (FAS) in the Northern Cape remains a concern, including Upington, Kimberley and De Aar. De Aar is considered to have among the highest incidents in the country. This needs more detailed study with adequate sample size and proper study methodology.

2.3.3 HIV/ AIDS and TB

Remarkable progress was made in terms of reducing new HIV infections with 57,6% (5 557 to 2 356) (South African Institute of Race Relations, 2018), as well as in terms of ART treatment since 2003 where the Cabinet approved the National Operational Plan for comprehensive HIV and AIDS Management, Treatment, Care and Support. Strengthened prevention programmes resulted in the reduction of the HIV positivity rate among 15 – 49 years, from 7,5% in 2012/13 to 4,0% in 2017/18. The total annual HIV test, showed an increase from 133 002 in 2012/13 financial year, and 289 982 in 2017/18 financial year. The number of HIV positive clients remaining on ART increased significantly from 31 355 in 2012/13 to 57 429 in 2017/18 (Johnson, Dorrington, & Molla, 2017). Nationally, access to ART increased from 45 500 people living with HIV in 2004 to 3,4 million in 2012 to 4,3 million in 2018 (DoH: Annual Reports 2007/8, 2008/9, 2009/10, 2010/11, 2011/12, 2007 - 2012).

Enhanced access to ART has contributed to increase in life expectancy at birth. Nationally, the percentage of deaths attributable to AIDS has decreased from 37,3% in 2002 to 22,1% in 2018. Despite these milestones, which resulted from the successful implementation of programmes to fight HIV and AIDS, the disease is still huge burden in the province compared to its population size as well as nationally. Globally, South Africa is 4th in terms of HIV/AIDS prevalence. The observed increases in HIV prevalence in the country could be as a result of longevity of PLWA and enhanced access to ART. The figure below shows the number of patients on ART in the Northern Cape Province between 2004 and 2018.

Figure 26: Number of patients on ART in the Northern Cape Province between 2004 and 2018

Source: (Johnson, Dorrington, & Molla, 2017)

Co-morbidity of HIV and TB is prominent in the province. Since 1994, Tuberculosis case notification as well as rate of new TB clients that successfully completed treatment, have significantly improved, at the same time proportion of clients lost to follow-up also decreased. Since the introduction of Bedaquiline in 2013, more than 640 patients have been started on this drug regimen. The treatment success rate increased from 0% in 2007 to 66,5% in 2016 and notable decline in mortality rates was observed amongst XDR patients (i.e., 76,5 in 2007 to 32,3% in 2015).

The opening of the TB site at the Dr Harry Surtie Hospital in 2013/14 financial year, not only contributed towards reducing work burden at West End Hospital, but also assisted patients to get the required services at a closer vicinity. These achievements were possible, partially through ensuring that facilities have essential medicines, proper equipment as well as resources. However, there is a lot to be done in these areas as part of the department's ongoing efforts to achieve ideal facilities. It is worth to note that, despite the progress, TB remained one of the leading causes of death, followed by HIV/AIDS in the NC Province as well as in the country.

2.3.4 Healthcare facilities and infrastructure

Since 1994, a number of new health facilities have been built or had undergone major upgrading in existing facilities. Many facilities have received new equipment in order to improve access and provide good quality health care services at community localities. The province has managed to construct seven (7) new hospitals through Hospital revitalisation programme, and twenty-four (24) clinics, and two (2) CHCs through Clinic Building and Upgrading Programme between 1994 and 2018. As a result, most of the Primary Health

Care (PHC) facilities are now at relatively accessible distance to the people they serve and of good standard.

The completion of the 287 bed New Mental Health Hospital in 2018 is among the new hospitals built in the province. Currently, the province has 1 tertiary-level hospital, 1 specialised hospital, 1 Regional hospital, 11 district hospitals, 33 Community Health Centres (CHC's) and 133 clinics that cater for healthcare services for an estimated number of 1.2 million people in the Northern Cape Province. There have been significant improvements in realising ideal clinic status where the Province achieved (89/159) ideal clinic status 2016/17. However, a lot still needs to be done to improve facility status.

Table 6: Number of public healthcare facilities distribution in the Northern Cape Province

District	Clinics	CHC	Satellites	Mobile	District Hospital	Regional Hospital	Tertiary Hospital
Frances Baard	25	4	5	5	2		1
John Taolo Gaetsewe	36	5	0	5	2		
Namakwa	26	10	0	0	2		
ZF Mgcawu	15	6	15	13	2	1	
Pixley Ka Seme	29	8	4	1	3		
Total	131	33	24	24	11	1	1

Source: Department of Health, APP 2019/20 (p. 81)

2.3.5 Human Resources for Health

Without adequate and skilled health care workers, and their right skills mix, as well as their distribution in the right place, it is difficult to provide efficient, effective, good quality and equitable health care services for all South Africans. Most of the public health facilities in the province experience shortage of human resources for health, compared to their catchment population size and the burden of diseases within those communities.

According to the 2018 NCDoh human resources plan document, there is currently a total of 6 866 staff working in the public sector. This was a 2,6% increase from 2014, which was at 6

689 employees. Out of this, 502 (7,3%) are medical practitioners and only 41 (0,59%) are medical specialists. Professional nurses account for the lion share of staff which account for 1 606 (23,39%). As a response to alleviating the shortage of doctors in the country, a co-operation agreement between South Africa and Cuba, regarding skills development and training, assisted to produce more medical doctors in the country. Since 2000, the NCDoh recruited students from poor communities across the five districts to pursue medical studies in Cuba through the Mandela-Castro Medical Collaboration programme. This approach yielded tangible results particularly as a response to alleviating the shortage of doctors in the rural areas. In 2018, out of 35 doctors produced thus far, 71% are serving in various health care facilities within the province, whereas the others are placed by National DoH to undertake their internship in other provinces and are expected to return to the province upon the completion of their internship programme. Some of these doctors are serving their respective districts and communities. However, there is high attrition rate among health care professionals in the province, as well as variations in their number year after year. The table below shows number of selected healthcare workers in the Northern Cape Province in public vs private health sectors (Day & Gray).

Table 7: Selected health professionals in public and private sector in 2017 in the NC Province

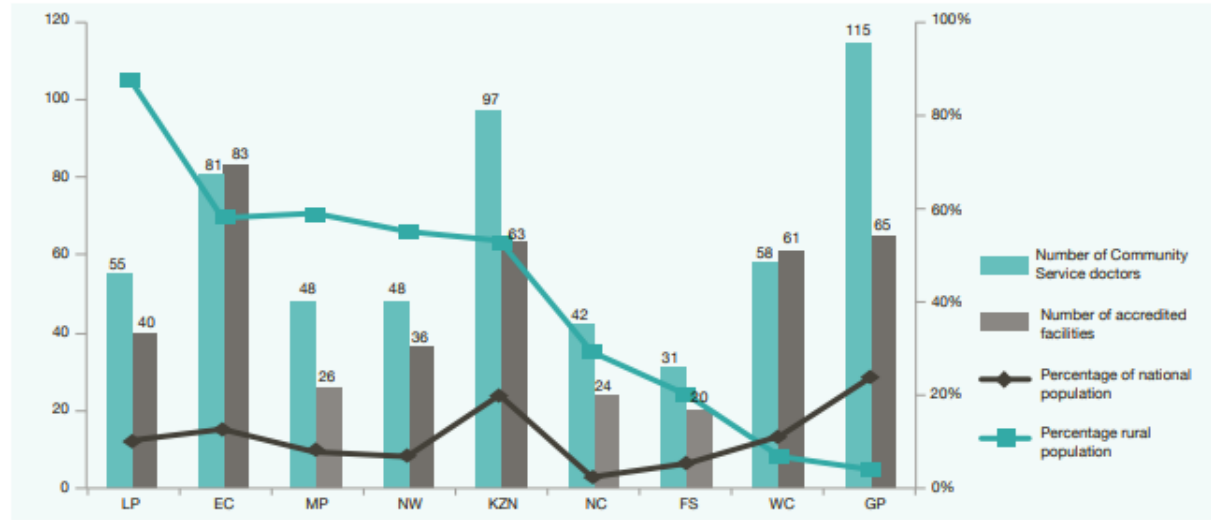
Health sector	Professional Nurse	Enrolled Nurse	Nurse Assistant	Pharmacist	Dentist	General Practitioner	Specialist
Public	1438	204	878	150	59	458	26
Private	2284	452	1075	197	98	502	120
Total	3722	656	1953	347	157	960	146

Source: (Day & Gray)

The experience of serious staff shortage at facilities, necessitates training and deployment of community health care workers to address human resources gap. Through training, they can perform tasks such as community mobilizations for vaccines, education on ANC and prenatal care, and care for chronic diseases, especially in the rural areas, training and paying community health workers also creates job opportunities for the poor. However, the current support is inadequate and there is a need to design strategies in supporting community health workers in terms of transport, financially and retaining them in the system.

The implementation of compulsory community service, in 1998, was an effective strategy for recruiting health professionals to rural and underserved areas and secondly, to provide young professionals with an opportunity to enhance their skills, acquire knowledge to assist them in their professional development and future careers. The figure below plots the number of CCS doctors allocated and the number of accredited facilities in each province against the percentage of each provincial population that is rural, to show allocations in terms of relative need in rural areas. Finally, in 2017, the Minister of Health stated that from 2018, rural communities would be prioritised in CCS placements. (SAHR - 20 years of community service in South Africa: What have we learnt?, 2018)

Figure 27: Percentage of provincial and national population that is rural, compared with the number of CS doctors and number of facilities accredited for CS by province (2001-2013)



Sources: Stats SA Census 2001 & 2011²² and annual CS survey.²³

2.3.6 Health Care Financing

There is limited knowledge on the cost of delivering health care services at public health facilities in the Northern Cape Province as well as nationally, which is posing a challenge in resources allocations for health sector as well as health programmes. South African spend over 8,5% of the GDP on health, approximately half of which is public and half private expenditures. In the province, government health budget has kept on increasing over the past ten-years (2007/08–2018/19), both in terms of government health expenditure and programme level budget allocations. The overall allocated budget for health sector increased from R1 577 billion in 2008/09 to R4 735 billion in 2018/19, which is about 200% increase in nominal terms. However, at the same time, the cost of providing health care has also been growing at increasing rate. This, coupled with population growth, aging

Page | 77

population who are exclusively dependent on public health facilities, high burden of disease, new mandates to expand access and coverage of quality health care services have been putting budget pressure on the public health sector.

2.3.7 Quality Health Care Services

The Office of Health Standard and Compliance (OHSC) inspection report on visited facilities in the Northern Cape Province, for monitoring compliance pertaining to the norms and standards set for public health facilities, indicated that 55% of our PHC facility obtained ideal clinic status in 2016/17 financial year. This suggests that access to good quality health care services has been increasing, and the health status of people living within the province has improved significantly.

To further improve the delivery of good quality health care services, community based clinical and hospital review boards are appointed to provide an oversight on the health services in their respective communities, as well as to ensure that the rights of those receiving the health services is protected and receive good quality services. The StatsSA General Household Survey (GHS) 2017 study on the level of satisfaction with public and private healthcare facilities, indicated that 49,7% and 86.6% of users were very satisfied in public and private facilities respectively. Only 9,1% of users in public facilities and 1,7% of users in private facilities indicated that they were very dissatisfied with the services provided (StatsSA: Statistical release P318 - General Household Survey 2016, 2017).

2.4 Persistent challenges

Despite these improvements, providing equitable and good quality health care services for all is still a challenge. This is partially due to the legacy of apartheid dual health system that is still: influencing the current health system resources allocation approach to be skewed towards the private health sector; weak public health system to effectively tackle the burden of disease; inefficiencies in the use of the available limited health care resources, residential and geographic vastness factors; instability in top leadership positions and immense social and economic determinants of health (SDH), which are primarily responsible

for poor health and health inequalities in the first place[(Worku & Woldeesenbet, 2015, pp. 30 - 38), (Wadee, Gilson, Thiede, Okorafor, & McIntyre, 2003)].

- **Medico-legal claims** - In recent years the department has been receiving an increased number of medico-legal claims against the department. Poor quality health care services due to inadequate resources, poor policy implementation, poor attitude of staff, lack of patients records and other factors also contributed to the increased medico-legal cases. In 2005/2006, the department faced medico-legal claims amounting to R17,7 million, which increased at the start of 2017/18 financial year, close to R1,4 billion. The highest number of claims come from obstetrics, gynaecology and paediatric sections.
- **Relatively high levels of disease burden** - Despite recent improvement, the province is affected by quadruple burden of diseases which include infectious diseases such as HIV/AIDS and TB, the increasing prevalence and incidents of non-communicable diseases, heavy prevalence of perinatal and maternal disorders, injuries and trauma. The table below (table 8) shows the list of the top ten leading causes of death by age and sex in 2016. As the table shows, the NC people suffer from a high burden of preventable illness and premature death, despite relatively high expenditure on health. Tuberculosis and HIV are the first two causes of death, mostly associated (co-infection) one with the other and accounted for 6,8% and 6,1% respectively. In addition, the non-communicable diseases such as other forms of heart disease, hypertensive diseases, cerebrovascular diseases, and diabetes mellitus, increasingly dominated the list of the top ten causes of deaths in the Province and accounted for 5,5%, 5,5%, 5,2% and 4,6% respectively. Conventionally, non-communicable diseases have been classified as diseases of affluence, but they are affecting the poor and disadvantaged sub-groups of a population due to change in life style and diet. Part of the causes of these poor health outcomes in the province can be explained by the exposure to high risk factors, including low level of income, poor living environment, unemployment, poor working conditions, unprotected sex, unhealthy diet and alcohol and tobacco consumptions. Inequalities in socioeconomic conditions contribute to inequalities in health outcomes and repeat the cycle of inequalities from generation to generation and putting more pressure on the health system.

South Africa has the highest inequality in the World, as measured by the Gini coefficient.

Table 8: The ten leading causes of death by age and sex 2016

Both sexes, all ages			Males, all ages			Females, all ages		
Tuberculosis	937	6.8%	Tuberculosis	587	8	Hypertensive diseases	482	7.5
HIV	848	6.1	HIV	426	5.8	HIV	422	6.5
Other forms of heart disease	762	5.5	Other forms of heart disease	376	5.1	Cerebrovascular diseases	416	6.4
Hypertensive diseases	761	5.5	Chronic lower respiratory diseases	356	4.8	Diabetes mellitus	412	6.4
Cerebrovascular diseases	718	5.2	Influenza and pneumonia	315	4.3	Other forms of heart disease	386	6.0
Diabetes mellitus	642	4.6	Cerebrovascular diseases	302	4.1	Tuberculosis	347	5.4
Chronic lower respiratory diseases	601	4.3	Hypertensive diseases	279	3.8	Influenza and pneumonia	254	3.9
Influenza and pneumonia	570	4.1	Ischaemic heart diseases	265	3.6	Chronic lower respiratory diseases	243	3.8
Ischaemic heart diseases	489	3.5	Other viral disease	256	3.5	Other viral disease	228	3.5
Other viral disease	485	3.5	Diabetes mellitus	230	3.1	Ischaemic heart diseases	224	3.5

Source: (Statistics South Africa, 2017)

- **Weak public Health System** - Capacitating public health facilities towards ideal status facility needs improvement in the six building blocks of health system which are identified by the World Health Organisation as critical elements for the delivery of equitable, accessible and good quality healthcare services. These include (i) human resources for health, including the specialists, (ii) health care finance, (iii) leadership and governance, (iv) medical products, medicine, vaccines, equipment, (v) infrastructure, and (vi) health services (World Health Organization, 2007). Most of health facilities in public health system, however are not strong and capacitated enough to prevent, detect and respond effectively the quadruple burden of diseases. In the Northern Cape Province, in addition to the quadruple burden of diseases, aging population, vast geographical area with dispersed human settlement patterns makes the delivery of health services challenging in the light of inadequate resources. As a result, the costs of the provision of health services are exacerbated

by factors which put significant pressure on limited resources to provide equitable and good quality healthcare services for more than 84% of the population who are entirely dependent on public health facilities for their health care needs.

- **Inadequate Financial Resources** - The department of health in the Northern Cape Province received about 26% of the budget of the province as a proportion of the provincial budget; which is probably not only below the norm in the country, but also the lowest. It is further compounded by the fact that there is a disjuncture between healthcare inflation and normal inflation. It is important to note that due to lack of effective promotion, preventive, and curative care at the primary care level, as well as limited scope of services and operating hours of most of PHC facilities, especially in rural areas, in particular male patients often bypass primary health care and go directly to the nearest hospital as their first point of contact each time they get sick. This action increases the cost of treatment due to high cost of care at higher levels. As a result, government healthcare funding and the annual rate of funding increase for public health care services compared to the population healthcare need has been inadequate. These features have persisted, in spite of several attempts over the last 25 years to strengthen the primary health care services that need for effective referral system between different levels of cares. Hospital services, primary health services and HIV/AIDS programme consumes the largest respective shares of provincial health budgets. Non-communicable diseases including cancer is becoming a huge challenge but are inadequately resourced.
- **Inadequate availability of Human resources for Health** – Districts and some public health facilities are still facing critical shortage of human resources for health who are appropriately trained, skilled and well-motivated. The vacancy rate for professionals which includes doctors, nurses, pharmacists and physiotherapists is estimated at more than 50% in the province. As a result, health facilities including even the new, state-of-the-art hospitals such as Dr Harry Surtie Hospital in Upington and New De Aar Hospital are running at critical shortage of staff. Shortage of specialists in the RMSH, a referral facility, is also a problem and unable to cope with the demand for specialist services. Notwithstanding the challenges in terms of inadequacy of human resources in the absolute number, there is also inequity in their distributions among provinces, districts and health facilities as well as the

private sector. According to the doctor-patient-ratio in the Northern Cape Province, it stands for 1 doctor for every 2 390 people - as opposed to the WHO's acceptable standard of 1 physician to every 5 000 people. This suggests that there are adequate doctors in the Northern Cape Province, but the problem might be their skewed distribution within district and facilities as a result of market behaviour.

➤ **High Prevalence of Social determinants of Health (SDH) that Promote inequity -**

There is a lack of effective integrated system to address the social determinants of health, which are the primarily responsible causes for poor health and health inequalities. Most of these factors lies outside the control of the health system. Addressing health needs requires tackling the root causes of ill health which makes people sick at first place. These include unemployment, low level of income, poverty, inequality, poor quality education, inappropriate living environment, mushrooming of shacks, poor housing conditions, unsafe water, lack of electricity, poor sewerage system, gender related abuse and unsafe transport that trigger poor health status. However, there is limited collaboration between the health sector and other sectors responsible for line functions to tackle the SDH in an integrated and collaborative ways.

2.5 Looking ahead

- To further strengthen primary care, and provide equitable, accessible, and good quality health services for all irrespective individual's socioeconomic status, the National Health Insurance initiative has been launched since 2011. Following this, the NDoH designed a new self-assessment tool to be used by primary health care facilities to assess, monitor and improve the quality of their management, infrastructure, equipment and service delivery capacity. Accordingly, the province invested in more than half of the PHCs facilities to become "ideal clinics". Based on this policy initiative, the province is working towards having ideal facilities at all levels. These incentives are likely to bring significant change in particular with a focus on equity in health system and good quality health outcomes and must be promoted aggressively in order to achieve the National Development Plan 2030 vision of a long and health life for all South Africans and the Sustainable Development Goals 2030 targets.

- **Accelerate the overhauling of the Health System Building Blocks** - There is a general consensus that PHC is the strategy for reducing health inequities and promoting geographical access to basic health care services, however, it is faced with challenges such as inadequate financing, human resources for health, infrastructure, equipment, leadership and others. South Africa as a country is on the right track to promote and implement Universal Health Coverage (UHC) through the implementation of the National Health Insurance (NHI). Thus, there is a need to accelerate the development and implementation of the NHI which basically improves the health system building blocks.
- **Health in All Policy Plans for Tackling the Social Determinants of Health (SDH)** - Avoidable and persistent health inequities across population groups based on their socioeconomic status is not only unfair, but also hinder realization of country's all-inclusive sustainable development goals. Generating evidence on health inequalities (and inequities) represents the first step to plan and implement remedial actions as well as monitoring progress thereafter. Health care delivery plan targets should include evidence on the SDH for tackling them, and monitoring progress through integrated bottom-up and top-down planning approach for setting priorities in line with limited resources. This will promote collaborative actions on social determinants of health. Hence, inclusion of communities, municipal facilities and districts in the process of developing health plan targets is critical in reducing existing gaps and creates more collaboration efforts for addressing the SDH challenges in a more collaborative and cost-effective way.
- **Reduce the inefficiency and wastage in the use of Resources** - Costing of the delivery of health services is needed to reduce inefficiencies and waste in scarce resources and particularly efficient supply chain management system as well as good monitoring and controlling mechanisms in place. Cost information at facility level aligned with key performance areas will provide policy and decision makers as well as healthcare managers in the financial management, planning, budgetary allocation that would result with more efficiency and accountability in the use of limited health sector resources.
- **Invest in Information Communication Technology (ICT)** - Due to the fourth industrial revolution in technologies and interface that is taking place in healthcare, the

fulfilment of health goal is dependent upon the availability of good leadership, good governance, and resources such as skilled manpower and funds as well as ICT. Fragmented ICT connectivity might be costly and unsustainable. Adding impetus to this reform agenda are those advancements of research, design and manufacturing that have dramatically changed the way in which we alleviate pain, restore health and extend life. (E.g. innovation like e-health, m-health and other remote applications)

- **Address the burden of diseases** - HIV/AIDS, TB and non-communicable diseases must remain the focus of the health sector. More attention must be paid to the prevention of the non-communicable diseases and their risk factors.
- **Address adequate availability of Human resources for Health** – Districts and some public health facilities, still facing critical shortage of human resources for health who are appropriately trained, skilled and well-motivated should be addressed. Primary health care system can be advanced by absorbing community health workers and the Mandela-Fidel Castro programme could strengthen and supplement the production of much needed medical practitioners and health professionals.



Chapter 3

ALL PEOPLE IN SOUTH AFRICA ARE AND FEEL SAFE



CHAPTER 3

3.1 Problem statement

In 1994, the country inherited multiple criminal justice and security systems that needed to be amalgamated and transformed in line with the democratic Constitution (DPME: Towards a 15 year Review 1994 - 2009, 2009). Until 1994, the police service was involved in the maintenance and enforcement of apartheid (Northern Cape 10-year Review, 2004). The criminal justice system lacked integrity and legitimacy and had vague and ambiguous mandates and functions. Policing, the primary purpose of which is crime prevention and investigation, took a back seat during apartheid years and as a consequence of the apartheid regime's gross disregard of crime and its underlying causes, violent forms of criminal conduct reached unprecedented levels.

The structure and functioning of the police had to be transformed to ensure greater accountability in terms of the law and the Bill of Rights. In order to reduce the levels of crime and enhance stability and security, transformation of the security and criminal justice functions was essential to bring about legitimacy, accountability and effectiveness. (The Presidency: Towards a 10 - year review, Synthesis Report on Implementation of Government Programmes, 2003). This transformation involved amalgamation, rationalisation and transforming of policing agencies to make them legitimate in the eyes of the community and create a solid base in the fight against crime. (DPME: 20-year Review, SA Background Paper, Safety and Security 1994 - 2014, 2014). Crime has a major impact on socio-economic development and reduces the ability to achieve other objectives such as creating jobs and improving health. The fight against crime is part of an integrated approach in the effort to accomplish the goal of a better life for all and to ensure that all feel safe in their homes, their places of work, their communities and in their own streets. (DPME: Mid term Report 2012, 2012, p. 12)

According to Chapter 12 of the National Development Plan (NDP), safety is a core human right and is a necessary condition for human development, improving quality of life and enhancing productivity. The NDP envisages that by 2030, people living in South Africa, feel and are safe, enjoying a community life, free of fear, especially vulnerable groups such as

women, children, older persons and persons with disabilities. In this regard, the NDP specifically emphasizes the need of “building safer communities, promoting accountability and fighting corruption”.

Achieving this vision requires a well-functioning criminal justice system in which the police, the judiciary and correctional services work together to ensure that suspects are caught, prosecuted, convicted if guilty and securely incarcerated and rehabilitated. Five Priorities are stipulated to achieve a crime free South Africa:

- Strengthen the criminal justice system – requiring cooperation among all departments in the Justice, Crime Prevention and security (JCPS) cluster.
- Increasing rehabilitation of prisoners - dependent on the quality of rehabilitation programmes and conditions into which they are released.
- Build safety using an integrated approach – tackling fundamental causes of criminality.
- Increase community participation in safety.
- Professional police service – the community to see them as a resource that protects and responds to people’s needs, based on the laws of the country and thus reduce the levels of crime.

3.2 The journey since 1994

3.2.1 Overview

Despite the positive changes effected since 1994, which contributed to the decrease in the levels of contact crimes in the Northern Cape, (29 477 in 2002/03 to 27 748 in 2004/05 (Provincial Profile 2004 - Northern Cape, 2004) and (SAPS: Crime Statistics 2017-18, 2017-18), government noted that even through substantial resources had been made available to address the problem of crime and other challenges, its performance still did not satisfy public expectation. In response to this challenge, government adopted the outcomes approach to improve its performance and thereby deliver quality service. In addition to having to address the challenges of crime, the criminal justice system had to pay particular attention to bringing down the levels of corruption in both the private and public sectors. High crime levels impact on South Africa’s social and economic development – violent

crime, contact crime and property crimes contribute towards fear of crime amongst citizens. There needs to be an integrated approach in addressing the root causes of crime, focusing on:

- Facilitating research to determine the root causes of crime - Independent service providers need to conduct research and surveys to gather information on the root causes of crime, the perceptions of safety and the fear of crime;
- Facilitating an integrated community safety approach - The relationship between drugs, alcohol and violence requires an in-depth study. Projects need to be implemented by JCPS cluster departments to address these issues in a comprehensive and decisive way;
- Facilitating community participation in community safety.

3.2.2 Legislation and Policies

With the transformational changes that were taking place, the legislation, policies and strategies that were necessary to address the challenges of crime were adopted by Government. These included the following:

- National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS) adopted in 1996. The strategy and plans of government in the fight against crime has been anchored within the NCPS which emphasised a shift from reactive crime control to proactive crime prevention.
- The South African Police Act, 68 of 1995.
- Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act no 116 of 1998).
- The White Paper on Safety and Security, 1998 - 2004, which identified two target areas for improving safety in South Africa: law enforcement and social crime prevention. (Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation, 2014) Information and Management Systems (IMS) has enhanced the analysis and management of crime and criminal information in support of crime investigation and prevention which are the cornerstones of the NCPS. Review in 2010 identified the need for two distinct policy interventions: focusing on policing environment and focusing on an integrated and developmental approach to crime and violence prevention. Review in 2016 seeking to realise the vision espoused in the NDP, reaffirming that building safer communities is a collective responsibility of both the state and its citizens.

- Public Service Anti-Corruption Strategy was adopted in 2002 and the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act was passed in 2004.
- Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act no 12 of 2004).
- In February 2005 Cabinet approved the White Paper on Corrections, 2005 - 2012, replacing the erstwhile White Paper of 1994, as a response to advances in the Constitutional and statutory framework of the time.
- The 2007 Review of the South African Criminal Justice System recommended a seven-point plan that was adopted by Cabinet focusing on rendering the criminal justice system more efficient and effective. – it outlined new coordinating and management structure at every level, with greater cooperation among the judiciary and the magistracy, the police, prosecutors, correctional services and the Legal Aid Board and empowering community police forums.
- Civilian secretariat for Police Act, 2011 (Act no. 2 of 2011).
- Cabinet approved a draft Cyber Security Policy Framework in 2012.
- National Anti-Corruption Strategy 2016.
- The Millennium 10-point plan, sought among other things to establish specialised courts.
- To introduce the Alternative Dispute Resolution Mechanism (ADRM), to improve court management and productivity, to transform the legal profession and the judiciary and to consolidate and improve prosecutorial services.

3.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

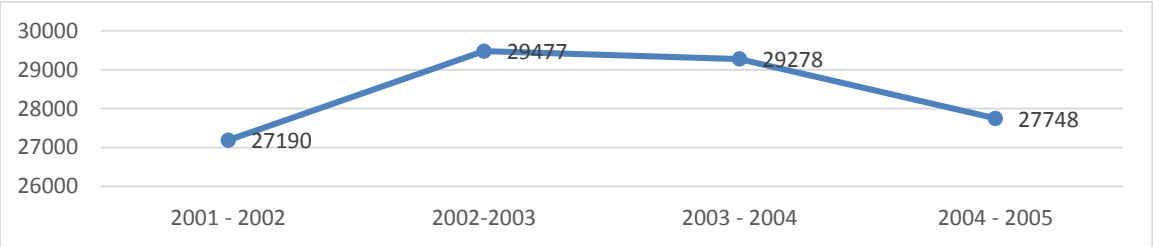
3.3.1 Reducing crime and enhancing safety in the Northern Cape

Even though the levels of serious and violent crime had started to decrease, they nonetheless remained unacceptable high. Drugs and substance abuse are contributing factors to the violent nature of crime and other social evils. The Victims of Crime Surveys, showed that the high crime levels impacted negatively on 'feeling safe' among the people. According to these surveys, crimes that induced the most fear in people included contact crimes (assault, murder and sexual assault) and trio-crimes (house and business robberies and hijackings), (DPME: 20-year Review, SA Background Paper, Safety and Security 1994 - 2014, 2014).

3.3.1.1 Contact crimes

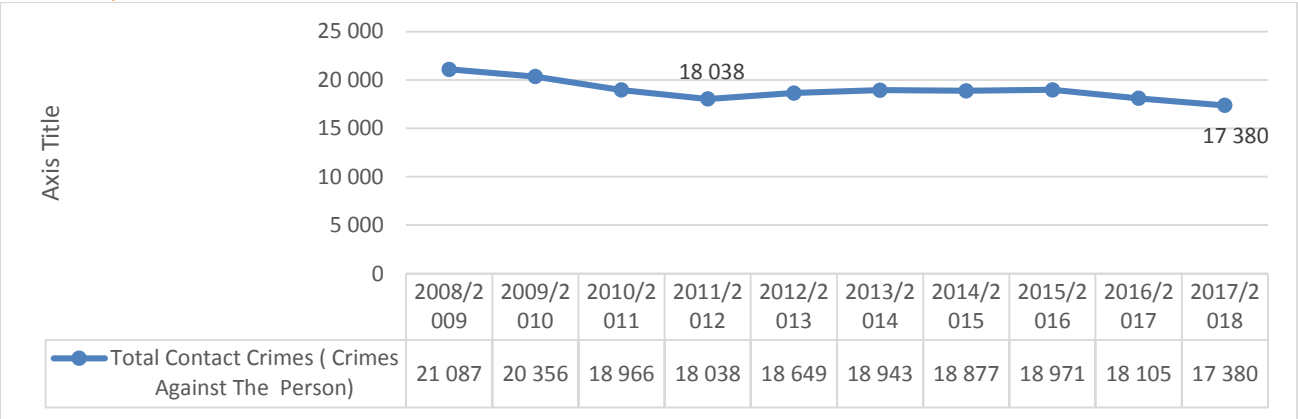
Contact crimes consists of the following crimes: murder, sexual offences/rape, attempted murder, assault with the intent to grievous bodily harm, common assault and robbery and robbery with aggravating circumstances. Government has made strides in reducing levels of contact crime even though progress in respect of certain categories of crime has been less than ideal. According to the figures below as per the Statistics South Africa 2004 report, and the South African Police Service Crime Statistic Reports, contact crimes decreased from 29 477 in 2002/03 to 18 038 in 2011/12, increasing slightly to 18 971 in 2015/16, but decreasing again to 17 380 in 2017/18, indicating a general decreasing trend over the period under review, in the Northern Cape Province.

Figure 28: Total Contact crimes in the Northern Cape from 2001/02 to 2004/05 as per Stats SA NC Provincial Profile, 2004



Source: (Statistics South Africa, 2004)

Figure 29: Total number of Contact crimes in the Northern Cape province from 2008/09 to 2017/18 As per Annual Crime Statistic Reports

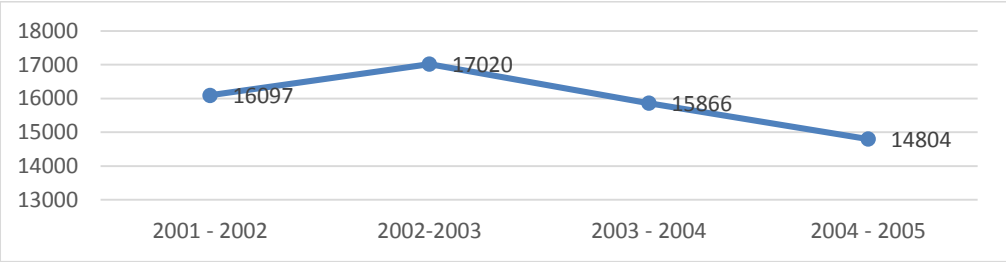


Source: (South African Police Service, 2017-18)

3.3.1.2 Property Crimes

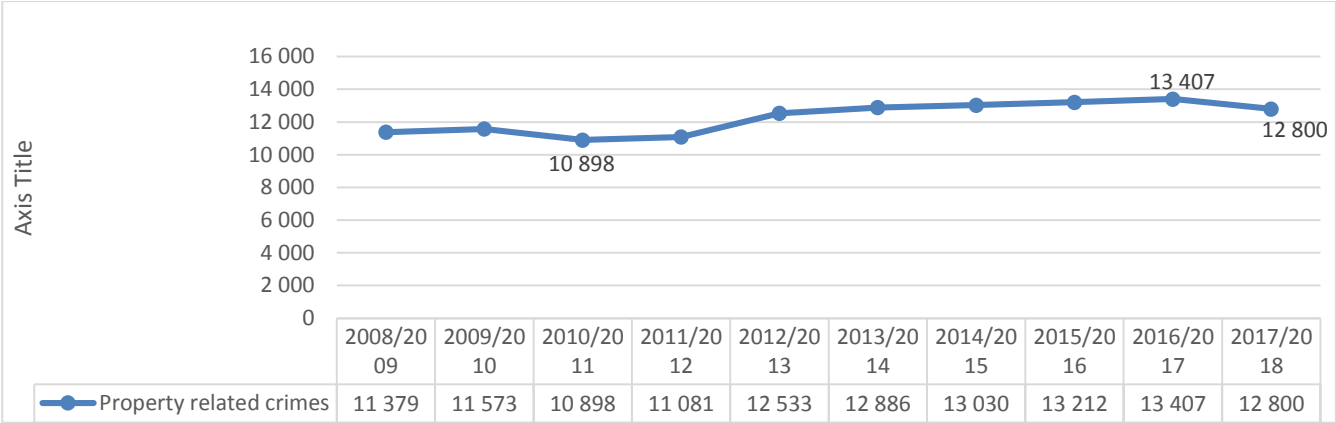
Property related crimes refers to burglary at residential and non-residential premises, theft of motor vehicle and motorcycle, theft out of or from motor vehicle and stock theft. Property related crimes indicated a decrease from 17 020 in 2002/03 to 10 898 in 2010/11, increasing to 13 407 in 2016/17, then slightly decreasing to 12 800 in 2017/18.

Figure 30: Total Property related crimes in the Northern Cape Province from 2001/02 to 2004/05



Source: (Statistics South Africa, 2004)

Figure 31: Total Property related crimes in the Northern Cape Province from 2008/09 to 2017/18



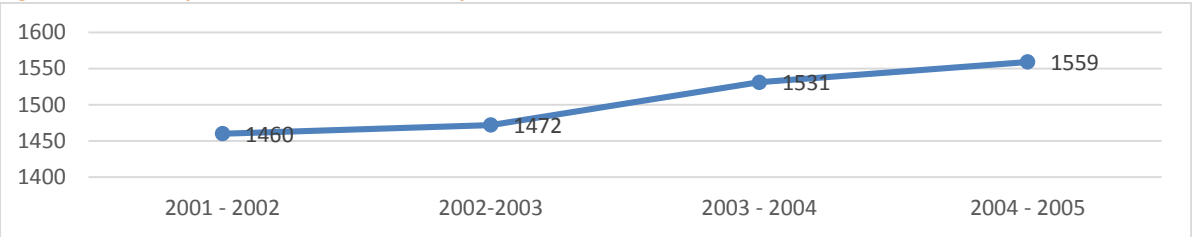
Source: (South African Police Service, 2017-18)

3.3.1.3 Sexual Offences

Civil society organisations have, over the years, decried the under-reporting of sexual crimes for a number of reasons. It is believed that the rate of reporting sexual offences is one in 13 in South Africa, as per the Justice Minister M. Masutha, March 2019. (Timeslive: Three-quarters of sexual offences cases ended in convictions: Masutha, 2019). According to the report on the feasibility and location of Thuthuzela care centres, 2008, key findings revealed that although most women in South Africa, believed that the worst incident of abuse was a crime, only 46% reported the matter to the police. Only 39% of the sexual abuse cases, perpetrated by relatives, and less than half of those, perpetrated by spouses or partners, were reported to the police, and therefore that data provided on sexual offences cases are only those that have been reported. Of the cases that were reported, only 13% said that their abusers had not been charged, 8% asked for the charges to be dropped, 7% said the abusers had not been arrested. (National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa, 2008)

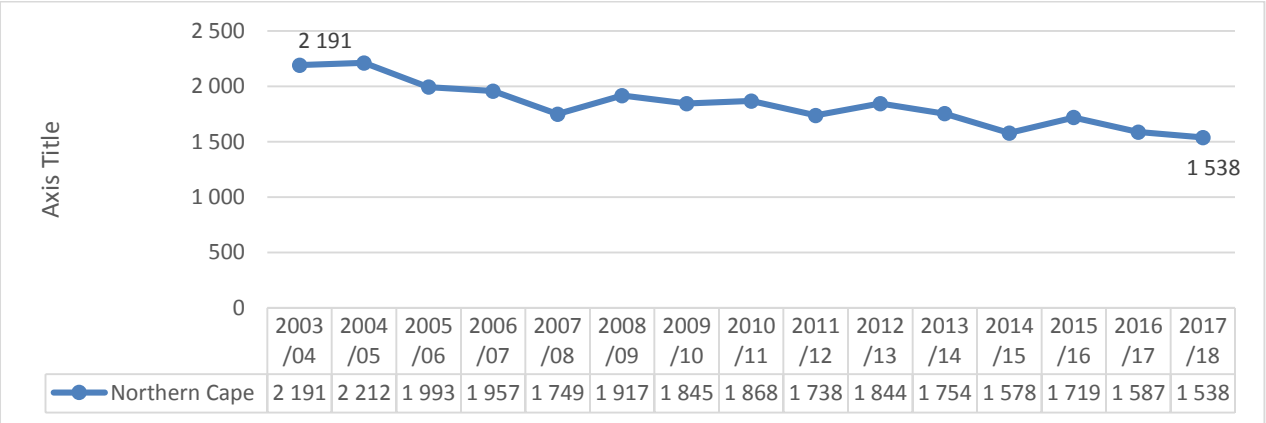
As per the figure below, the number of reported rape cases have increased from 2001/02 to 2004/05 as per the NC Provincial Profile, 2004 Report. To note in the figure below on the number of sexual offences in the Northern Cape, (inclusive of sexual Assault, rape, attempted sexual assault and contact sexual offences) as compiled utilizing SAPS annual reports and Annual Crime Statistics reports, is that reported sexual offences cases in the NC Province, decreased from 2 191 in 2003/4 to 1 749 in 2007/8, fluctuating between 2008/9 and 2015/16 and then decreasing again to 1 538 in 2017/18.

Figure 32: Total Rape cases in the Northern Cape Province from 2001/02 to 2004/05



Source: (Statistics South Africa, 2004)

Figure 33: Total number of Sexual Offences in the Northern Cape from 2003/04 to 2017/18

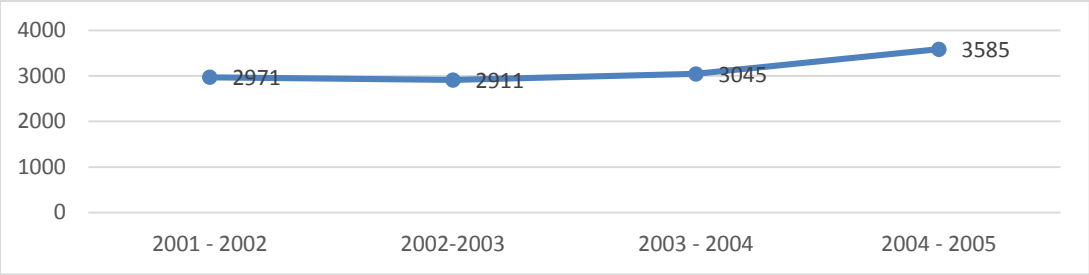


Source: SAPS Annual reports and Crime statistics

3.3.1.4 Crimes detected as a result of police action

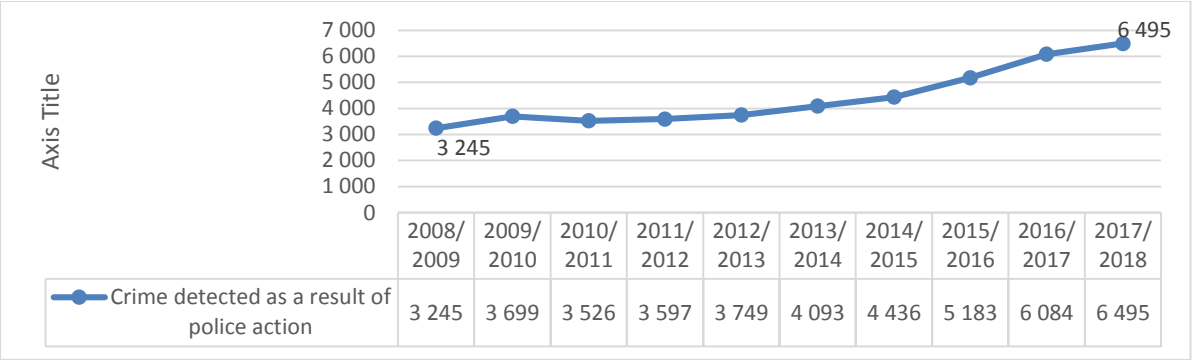
The crimes detected as a result of police action have increased from 2 971 in 2001/2 to 6 495 in 2017/18. This has led to serious busts, for the illegal possession of firearms and ammunition, drug-related crimes and driving under the influence of alcohol. Drug related crimes also increased from 1 931 in 2008/9 to 5 563 in 2017/18 according to the Crime statistics reports.

Figure 34: Total Number of Crimes detected as a result of police action between 2001/2 and 2004/5



Source: (Statistics South Africa, 2004)

Figure 35: Number of Crimes detected as a result of police action in the Northern Cape from 2008/9 to 2017/18



Source: (South African Police Service, 2017-18)

3.3.2 Effective Criminal Justice System

A critical challenge that government has and continue to encounter, is the fact that the efficiency and effectiveness of the criminal justice system has been less than optimal. This led to the adoption of the Seven-point plan in 2007. The aim of this plan was to modernise and transform the criminal justice system. The JCPS sector concentrated on increasing the number of finalised criminal cases. The improvement of the performance of the courts has been one of the priority areas of the JCPS cluster. This is a critical priority, as it facilitates the rendering of the accessible, fair, speedy and cost-effective administration of justice in the interests of a safer and more secure South-Africa.

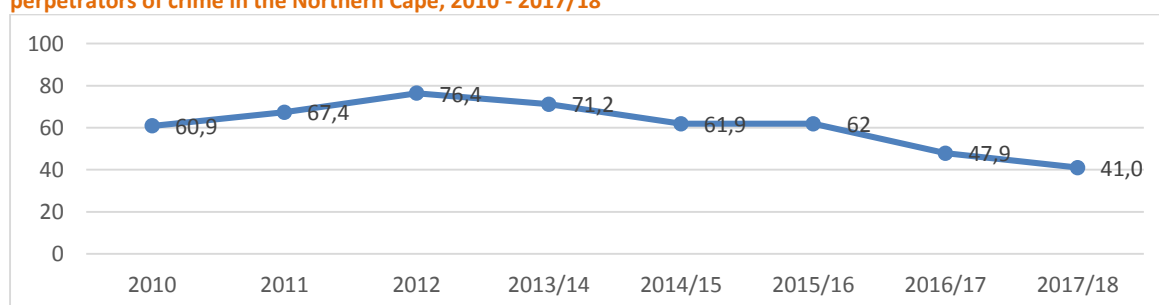
Part of this performance concerned the reduction of case backlogs and improvement of the performance of the courts. The Millennium 10-point plan sought, among other things to establish specialised courts. The table below provides an overview on the sexual offences courts established from August 2013 to March 2018 within the Northern Cape Province. (DPME: 20-year Review, SA Background Paper, Safety and Security 1994 - 2014, 2014)

Table 9: Sexual Offences courts established from August 2013 - March 2018 in the Northern Cape Province

Region	2013/14		2014/15		2015/16		2016/17		2017/18	
NC	Kimberley (Linked to Galeshewe TCC)	1	0	0	Galeshewe (Linked to Galeshewe TCC)	1	Upington	1	De Aar (linked to De Aar TCC)	1
					Colesburg	1	Barkley West	1	Kathu	1

Source: (Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, 2017/18)

The figure below was compiled, using information from the VOCS 2013/14 to 2017/18, and indicates that households' satisfaction with the way in which courts generally deal with perpetrators of crime, has decreased from 2012 with 76,4% to 41% in 2017/18. Sixty-three percent (63%) of households feel that courts are too lenient and 17% feel that matters drag for too long and there is an increase of postponements of cases according to the Victims of Crime Survey Report 2017/18. A total of 59,4% of households feel that courts pass sentences appropriate to the crime and only 29,6% of households feel that courts have a high rate of conviction (StatsSA: Victims of Crime Survey 2017/18, 2017/18).

Figure 36: Percentage distribution of households' satisfaction with the way in which courts generally deal with perpetrators of crime in the Northern Cape, 2010 - 2017/18

Source: (Statistics South Africa, 2013/14 - 2017/18)

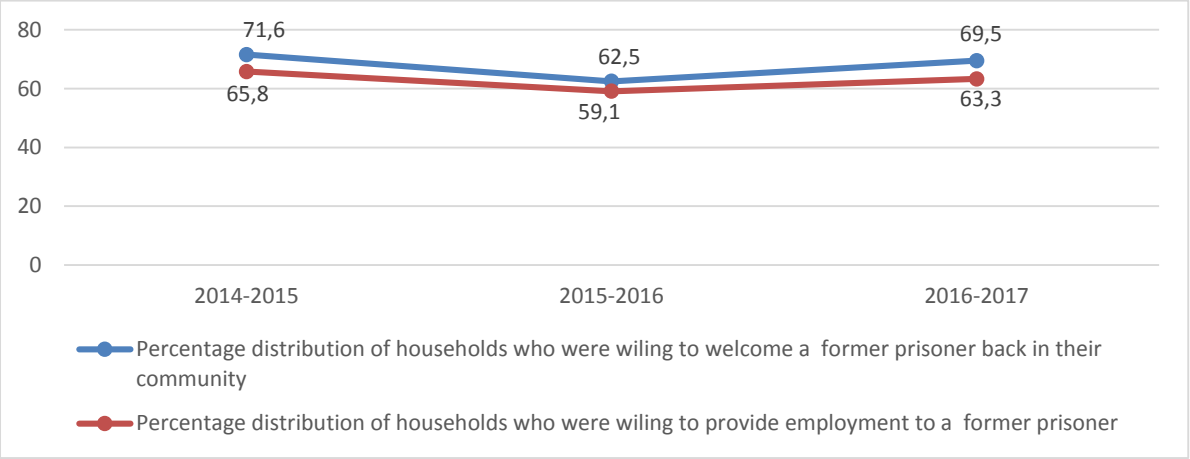
3.3.3 Increasing rehabilitation of prisoners

The effectiveness of the criminal justice system in dealing with crime is also dependent on a correctional system that, among other things, ensures that those who have been prosecuted, convicted and sentenced are securely kept in correctional facilities - thereby making certain that they serve out the sentence meted out to them. Over and above ensuring their secure incarceration, the criminal justice system endeavours to enrol these sentenced individuals into diverse rehabilitation programmes aimed at ensuring that upon their release, the possibility of returning to a life of crime is substantially diminished. The

Northern Cape/Free State region were able to maintain between 97 – 98% on parolees and probationers without violations between 2015/16 and 2018/19.

According to 2016/17 VOCS reports, 58% of households in South Africa were willing to welcome a former prisoner back in their community. The Northern Cape (69,5%) was the province who had the highest percentage of households, willing to welcome back former prisoners. More than half of households in SA indicated that they were willing to provide employment to a former prisoner with the NC, (63,3%) being the province with the highest percentage of households who were willing to provide employment to a former prisoner.

Figure 37: Percentage distribution of households in the NC, willing to welcome a former prisoner back in the community and offer them employment, 2014/15 - 2017/18



Source: Compiled from VOCS reports 2014/15 – 2017/18

3.3.4 Community partnerships

To overcome the challenge of serious and violent crime, it is vital that cooperative relationships with communities are nurtured. After all, criminals live with and among communities and quite often, the spoils of their misdeeds are peddled to some members of the community. To ensure higher rates of detection and convictions, the assistance and support of citizens is critical. To strengthen partnerships between government and communities, the Community Policing Policy and the Community Safety Forum Policy Framework (2011) have been put in place. CPFs were introduced on the premise that success in fighting crime depends on the cooperation of the community and the police and the CSFs to facilitate the delivery of a multi-sectoral governmental approach to safety in

local communities. According to the (SAPS: Annual Crime Report 2011/12, 2012), the Northern Cape Province has 91 police stations with 91 functioning CPFs.

To complement the CPFs, there are neighbourhood watch and resident's associations, which are a wide variety of locally based groupings designed to respond to neighbourhood-level crimes in most suburbs and townships. They are a unique source of information and often serve as systems of disbursing and gathering information. CSFs need to align to the municipal or district municipal jurisdictions and or boundaries to enhance cooperation and integrated planning and coordinate the implementation of safety programmes and projects in the local sphere (DPME: 20-year Review, SA Background Paper, Safety and Security 1994 - 2014, 2014). There remain challenges with the establishment of CSFs. It is legislated that CSFs be established by municipalities and their functionality assessed by the Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison. However, the municipalities do not have the financial capacity to establish CSFs and therefore these cannot be adequately assessed as opposed to the CPFs.

3.3.5 Fighting Corruption

According to the NDP, South Africa is generally perceived to be plagued with high levels of corruption that undermine the rule of law and hinder development and socio-economic transformation. It is defined as the misuse of an official position for personal gain, corruption occurs in both the public and private sectors. The costs of corrupt practices fall most heavily on the poor, as they degrade the quality and accessibility of public services. For the criminal justice system, the appropriate response was the investigation and prosecution of cases involving corruption. In 2010, Cabinet mandated the creation of the Anti-Corruption Task Team, comprising entities such as the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigations (HAWKS), (DPME: 20-year Review, SA Background Paper, Safety and Security 1994 - 2014, 2014).

3.3.6 Cyber security

The negative impact of cyber-crime on the economy and the general well-being of citizens cannot be underestimated. It has potential to negatively impact on National security. The expected growth in international bandwidth will increase the uptake and usage of the internet. Cabinet approved a draft Cyber Security Policy Framework in 2012.

3.4 Persistent challenges

Crime has occupied centre stage on the public agenda. Unacceptably high levels of crime, especially serious and violent crimes, result in people, especially vulnerable groups living in fear and feeling unsafe. The following challenges persists:

- Contact crimes and crimes against women and children are still posing a challenge in the Northern Cape Province. Poverty and unemployment amongst youth play a big role in the commission of crimes such as property related crime, drug related crime (dealing in drugs or use thereof) and contact crimes.
- Substance abuse are contributory factors to the violent nature of crime, and other social ills.
- The insufficient capacity in areas of forensic, detective, investigation and prosecution services hamper the Clusters efforts to reduce the overall levels of crime.
- The lack of victim friendly facilities at police stations has a negative impact on people who are victims of crime.
- Lengthy court processes, case backlogs, inadequate use of diversion programmes, overcrowding in correctional centres, effective functioning of Thuthuzela Care centres and limited rehabilitation and welfare programmes and remain some of the challenges in order to restore confidence in the justice system.

3.5 Looking ahead

Looking ahead, the Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison, Social Development, Justice and Constitutional Development, National Prosecuting Authority, South African Police Services, Home Affairs and Correctional Services endeavour to tackle the following challenges:

- Ensure effectiveness and efficiency of criminal justice system by implementing outstanding elements of the Seven Point Plan and improving capacity of law enforcement agencies.
- Reduction of crime especially violence against vulnerable groups through enhanced crime prevention and combating.
- Revitalisation and strengthening of CPFs and rollout of CSFs as critical, to help with the fight against crime in communities.
- Reduce levels of corruption, where there is zero tolerance for corruption and citizens not offering bribes.
- To ensure effective responses to incidents of violence against women and children eliminate secondary victimisation, and improve conviction rates. An audit or assessment on the effective functioning of the Thutuzela centres to be concluded.
- The challenges on poverty and unemployment amongst youth need to be tackled head-on, to succeed in reducing crime levels and fight the abuse of substances by young people.



Chapter 4

DECENT EMPLOYMENT THROUGH INCLUSIVE ECONOMIC GROWTH



CHAPTER 4

4.1 Problem statement

The National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report (2011, p. 7) and the 25-Year-Review presentation of DPME (2019, p. 67), highlighted that the triple challenge of poverty, inequality and unemployment continue to negatively affect the lives of many people in South Africa. Too few people have work, investment is too slow and education lags behind our requirements. The weak state of the South African economy impeded efforts to reach development goals. It is especially the black majority which were hard hit by poor apartheid spatial planning, lack of financial and productive assets, concentrated economic sectors and extreme inequalities in education and skills development (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 67).

The Northern Cape is a vast province, involving a lot of travelling. From an economic point of view, it is an expensive province, wherein lot of funding must be invested to access people and resources. The condition of road infrastructure poses a huge challenge for development in rural areas. Furthermore, the following issues needed urgent intervention in order to stimulate inclusive economic growth and decent employment;

- Lack of enterprises and suppliers that are ready to leverage of opportunities presented by SIPS and make them EXPO ready.
- Insufficient resource allocation to deliver on mandate of job creation and economic growth.
- Lack of implementation and monitoring of existing sector strategies.
- Participation and Intensified interventions in other NGP Job drivers i.e. Infrastructure, Green Economy, Knowledge Economy, Social Economy, Fisheries (Mariculture), Mining.
- The poverty levels in the Northern Cape Province and the disposable income that drives growth.
- Accessibility in terms of road, rail and air. The expanse of the province, with Kimberley being the western polar, and the distances to market are impacting on transport costs.
- The manufacturing base of the provincial economy is weak. The low and dispersed nature of the population makes manufacturing for the local market inefficient and

distance from main markets means that the manufacturing sector is relatively uncompetitive. Regional industrial development will therefore need to be focused on working from existing assets such as mining and agriculture.

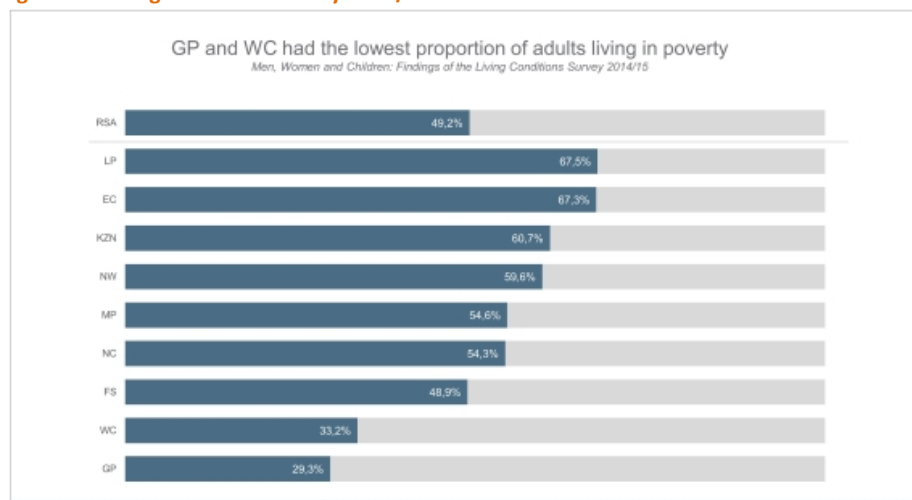
- Lack of down- & side stream mining and mineral value chain activities (low beneficiation).
- Limited value-adding agro-processing activities and exploitation of agricultural produce.
- The critical mass (population) that results in a bigger market that in turn justifies local manufacturing and production remains a challenge.
- Limited skills base compounded by migration of skilled workers to other provinces.
- Unresponsive labour market and compounded skills mismatch.
- Macroeconomic constraints.
- Untapped Tourism potential.

4.2 The journey since 1994

4.2.1 Overview

The Department of Economic Affairs and Tourism (DEDAT), on which the mandate of economic development and specifically, job creation, fall, verified the information that informs this chapter and chapter 6 on infrastructure development. The challenge to eradicate poverty, inequality and unemployment was always going to require optimal utilisation of available resources in order to position the province as an emerging economic hub in South Africa. The following graph depicts the Northern Cape position in terms of adults living in poverty, compared with the rest of the South Africa by 2015:

Figure 38: Living conditions survey 2014/15



Source: StatsSa

Although not the worst in the country, the Northern Cape falls well above the national average of 49,2% for adults living in poverty. The national picture is very bleak, if one considers that only three of the 9 provinces falls below the national average. Further elucidation on poverty levels in South Africa, is provided in Chapter 13.

4.2.2 Legislation and Policies

Since 1994, various transformative policies were introduced to strengthen the national economy and to address social imbalances. From an economic point of view, these policies were specifically aimed at alleviating poverty, creating sustainable jobs, addressing economic imbalances, empowering the historically oppressed and eliminate discrimination (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 67). Economic stimulation was contained in the following macro plans (South Africa's Key economic policies changes (1994 - 2013), 2014):

- The Reconstruction and Development Programme (**RDP**) in 1994, which addressed broad apartheid inequalities, but had a specific focus on creating a strong, dynamic and balanced economy. RDP yielded more success on the social and health front, than economically.
- The Growth, Employment and Redistribution (**GEAR**) strategy in 1996. This policy eventually fell short on poverty reduction and employment creation.
- The Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (**ASGISA**) in 2005, which had the vision to reduce poverty by 2010 and to halve unemployment by 2014.

- The New Growth Path (**NGP**) in 2010. NGP envisioned to accelerate growth in the South African economy, by rapidly reducing poverty, unemployment and inequality.
- The National Infrastructure Plan (**NIP**) in 2012, that intends to transform the economic landscape, while simultaneously creating significant numbers of new jobs.
- The National Development Plan (**NDP**)-2030 in 2013 - South Africa's long-term socio-economic development roadmap. The plan has a target of increasing employment by 11 million by 2030. This, it intends doing by realising an environment for sustainable employment and inclusive economic growth, promoting employment in labour-absorbing industries and raising exports and competitiveness (DEDAT: Annual Report for the year ended 31 March 2018, 2018, pp. 21-22).

Other interventions to support employment and economic growth includes (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 67):

- The Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP) was introduced in 2007 to drive industrialisation.
- The black industrialist programme was introduced to ensure participation of black people in the economy at an industrial scale.
- The revitalisation of the industrial parks in the townships and rural areas to bolster economic activity.
- The implementation of the Mineral Beneficiation Action Plan (MBAP) to advance local value addition in the domestic mineral value-chain.
- The competition policy was amended to ensure sufficient accountability by the directors of firms.

To respond to the goals of the NDP, the Northern Cape Department of Economic Development and Tourism (DEDAT) focused its planning and programmes to create an enabling environment for economic growth and development by implementing amongst others, the draft SMME strategy, a Manufacturing Strategy, a draft Provincial Renewable Energy Strategy, a Diamond Strategy, a Local Economic Development Strategy, the White Paper on Tourism Development and Promotion, the Tourism Master Plan and the Coastal and Marine Tourism Strategy.

The Northern Cape province responses to economic growth interventions, is also addressed through the 9-Point plan, with specific reference to;

- Encouraging private sector investment,
- Unlocking the potential of SMMEs, cooperatives, township and rural enterprises,

- Growing the Ocean Economy and Tourism.

The effects of the global economic downturn have contributed to the increasing numbers of unemployed people in South Africa. Many have continued to live in abject poverty, increasing the risk of crime in our communities. The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) was introduced in 2004 as one of the measures to reduce the negative impacts of such high and persistent levels of unemployment. It aims to provide the unemployed with an opportunity to work and an avenue to contribute to developing their communities and country.

In both the New Growth Path (NGP) and the National Development Plan (NDP), EPWP is positioned as a key programme to contribute to achieving government's goals of halving unemployment, building communities and active citizenship and reducing gaps in the social protection system of the country. Both also recognize the structural nature of unemployment and the need for the EPWP to continue in the medium to long-term.

4.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

The implementation of various initiatives to stimulate the economy and create jobs came with many challenges, but also yielded some notable successes. To stimulate the provincial economy, the following deliverables were implemented provincially:

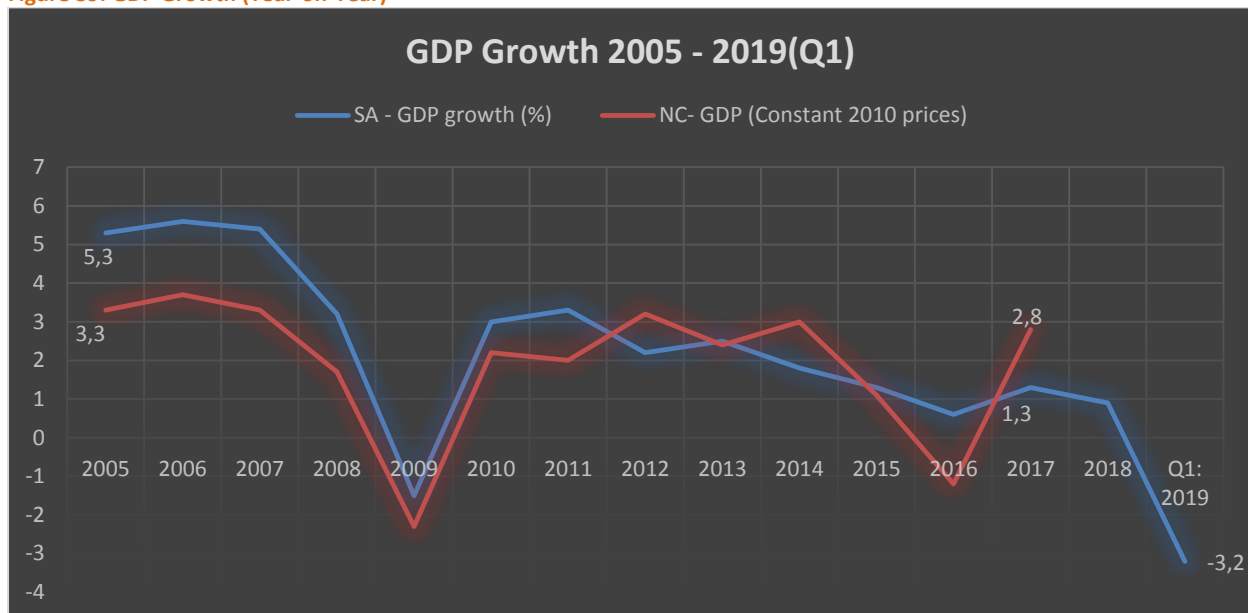
- Support to tourism and tourism infrastructure.
- Exposing companies to export markets and creating export opportunities.
- Support provided to economic sectors, specifically to smallholder producers, SMMEs and Cooperatives.
- Elimination of regulatory burdens that stymie economic growth.
- Reducing workplace conflict.
- Capacity building targeting specific industries.
- Job creation initiatives.
- Encouraging private sector investment.
- Agro-processing initiatives.

The impact of these deliverables are projected under the following indicators (headings):

4.3.1 Gross Domestic Product (GDP)

In its Strategic Plan for 2015-2020, the Department of Economic Development and Tourism (DEDAT Strategic Plan for the fiscal years 2015-2020, 2015, p. 42) set a provincial GDP growth rate target of 3-5% by 2020. This target was reduced to 2,5% by 2019/20 in the department's 2019/20 APP (DEDAT: Annual Performance Plan 2019/2020, 2019, p. 67). The GDP growth figures for the province below, compared with the national figures, provides justification for lowering the provincial GDP target. GDP growth figures reflected for the Northern Cape uses constant prices to measure actual growth (There is no disaggregated data for provinces prior to 2005, only national).

Figure 39: GDP Growth (Year-on-Year)



Source: StatsSA (NC Data for 2018-2019: Provincial GDP data is available for the years 2005 -2017 (annualised and seasonally adjusted)

GDP growth, as a development goal, was set at 5% for the country. Between 2004 and 2007, South Africa experienced an average growth rate of approximately 5% in real terms. However, the period 2008 to 2012 recorded average growth of just above 2 per cent for South Africa; largely a result of the global economic recession (Statistics South Africa, 2019). The Northern Cape GDP averaged at 1,36% for the same period, and just under 2% for the period 2005 – 2017. The GDP growth for the years preceding 2005, was calculated at different time intervals and influenced by different variables, and hence, not easily comparable with the 2005 – 2017 figures included in the table above. A global economic crisis characterised the decade leading into the 21st century. This has affected economic

growth in South Africa negatively over the last four years, prompting a deceleration in rate of economic growth.

4.3.2 Sector contribution to the Northern Cape economy

The 2015-2020 Strategic Plan of DEDAT identifies mining in the primary sector, as the biggest individual contributor to the Northern Cape economy (DEDAT Strategic Plan for the fiscal years 2015-2020, 2015, pp. 10-11). The tertiary sector, however, is constantly the biggest overall contributor. The poor performance of the secondary sector is worrying, and in part attributed to the province producing minerals which are exported, and then imported back again. The following table reflects the Northern Cape GDP rate contribution by industry, and confirms that the tertiary industry as being consistently the main contributor to the Northern Cape GDP. No disaggregated data was measured for Northern Cape prior to 2005 - only at national level.

Table 10: Northern Cape % GDP contribution by activity at current prices

Industry	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
Primary Industries	29,2	28,7	29,6	31,9	32,1	32,2	30,6	30,3	30,6	27,7	25,0	25,5	27,3
Agriculture, forestry and fishing	7,0	6,4	7,4	7,9	8,0	7,1	6,9	6,8	6,5	6,8	6,9	6,6	7,1
Mining and quarrying	22,2	22,3	22,2	24,0	24,1	25,0	23,7	23,4	24,1	20,9	18,2	18,8	20,2
Secondary Industries	6,8	5,7	6,7	7,9	9,4	8,6	7,8	8,6	9,4	9,1	9,3	9,9	9,2
Manufacturing	3,7	2,2	3,0	3,7	3,5	3,2	2,4	2,8	3,2	3,0	3,0	3,2	3,1
Electricity, gas and water	1,7	1,7	1,4	1,7	2,7	3,0	3,4	3,6	3,6	3,8	3,7	3,6	3,5
Construction	1,4	1,7	2,2	2,5	3,2	2,4	2,0	2,1	2,7	2,3	2,5	3,0	2,7
Tertiary industries	53,6	54,9	53,2	50,5	49,4	50,0	51,5	52,0	49,6	53,0	55,4	54,0	53,7
Trade, catering and accommodation	10,8	12,5	12,1	10,9	10,0	11,1	10,7	9,9	10,5	10,7	11,1	10,8	10,7
Transport, storage and communication	10,8	11,1	10,2	9,5	9,5	8,9	9,6	10,3	10,9	10,9	11,6	11,0	10,8
Finance, real estate and business services	11,9	12,5	13,8	11,8	11,0	12,0	11,8	12,4	8,5	11,3	12,6	12,1	11,9
Personal services	8,3	8,1	6,7	5,9	5,7	4,4	5,1	4,8	4,6	4,9	4,8	4,7	4,8
General government services	11,8	10,7	10,4	12,4	13,1	13,5	14,2	14,5	15,0	15,2	15,2	15,3	15,5
All industries at basic prices	89,6	89,3	89,4	90,3	90,9	90,7	89,9	90,9	89,6	89,8	89,7	89,4	90,2
Taxes less subsidies on products	10,4	10,7	10,6	9,7	9,1	9,3	10,1	9,1	10,4	10,2	10,3	10,6	9,8
GDP at market prices	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0	100,0

Source: StatsSA (NC Data for 2018-2019: Provincial GDP data is available for the years 2005 -2017 (annualised and seasonally adjusted)

Despite its relative importance in the South African economy, the manufacturing sector declined from 19% in 1993, to about 17% in 2012 in real terms. In contrast, the finance, real estate and business services sector has increased its relative importance of 17% in 1993, to

approximately 24% in 2012. These two sectors and a few more are an important part of the South African growth story since the dawn of democracy (Statistics South Africa, 2019).

Since the adoption of the NGP in 2010, the NC Province has created jobs within the Infrastructure, Mining, Manufacturing, Utilities, Community and Social Services; and Trade industries. The total number of jobs that the province committed itself to create by 2020 as a contribution to national targets, is 71 840 for all the five job drivers. The NC Province currently employs 321 000 people, having created 43 000 between 2010 and 2018.

Table 11: Job created against 2020 PGDS target per job driver

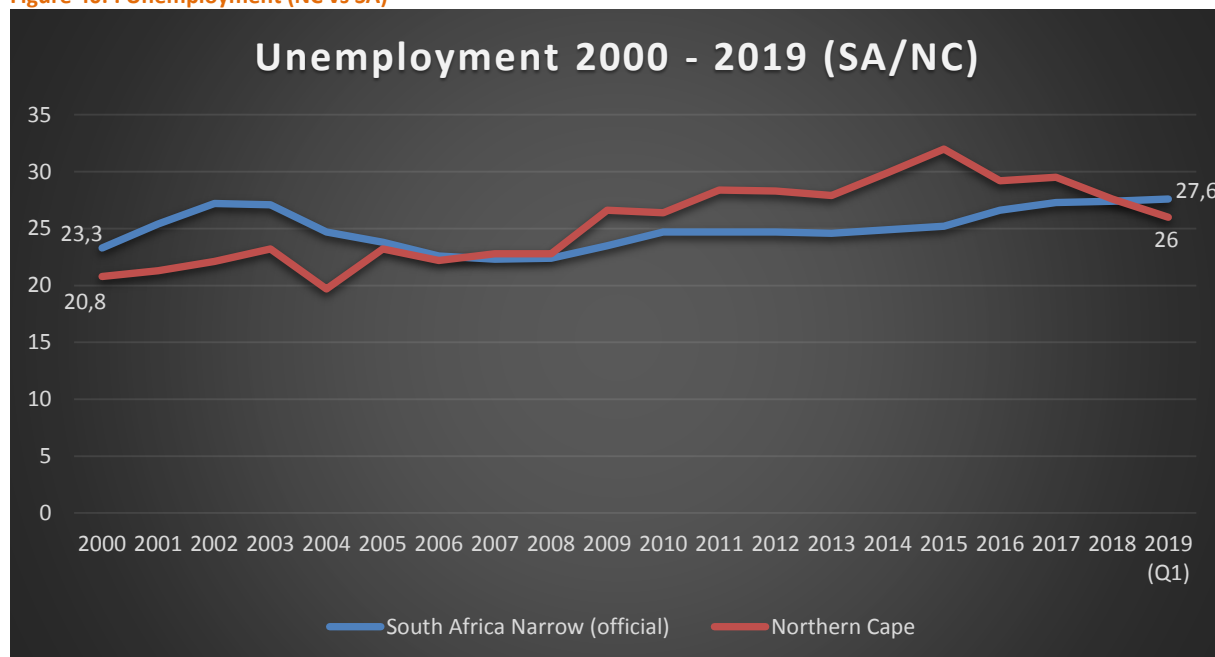
Job driver	Sector	Status in PGDS Target Q4:2010 for 2020	Current Status (Q4:2018)	Jobs created/lost between Q4:2010 & Q4:2018	
Infrastructure	Construction	18 000	8 000	24 000	6 000
Main economic sectors	Agriculture	54 000	38 720	39 000	-15 000
	Mining	9 000		27 000	8 000
	Manufacturing	12 000		17 000	5 000
	Finance	22 000		19 000	-3 000
New economies	Utilities	1 000	12 000	4 000	3 000
Investing in Social capital and public services	Community and social services	79 000	8 320	104 000	25 000
	Private households	32 000		29 000	-3 000
Spatial development	Trade	39 000	4 800	48 000	9 000
	Transport	12 000		10 000	-2 000
Total		267 000	71 840	321 000	43 000

Source: DEDaT

4.3.3 Unemployment

The following table depicts the Northern Cape unemployment rate, compared with the national unemployment rate. No data on the labour market at provincial level is available from 1994 to 1999. The October Household Survey dataset (1994 - 1999) cannot be disaggregated to provincial level, and hence only measured activity at national level due to the small sample size. Figures are seasonally adjusted.

Figure 40: : Unemployment (NC vs SA)



Source: StatsSA

From the above figure, the development goal of reducing unemployment by at least half to a maximum of 14 % by 2020, does not seem likely. The unemployment rate in the Northern Cape was lower than the national rate for the period 2001 – 2006. From 2007 onwards, the Northern Cape unemployment rate exceeded the national rate, with the biggest variance being in 2015 (6,8%). The year 2015, also represents the highest unemployment rate (32%) for the province for the period depicted. The official unemployment rate for South Africa stood at 27,6% for the first quarter of 2019. The unemployment rate for the Northern Cape stood at 26% for the first quarter of 2019. The Economically Active Population of the Northern Cape has increased by 100 000 people between 2008 – 2018. The ability of the labour market to absorb those that are looking for work, which results in an increase in the number of discouraged work seekers, remains a challenge.

4.3.4 Job Creation

4.3.4.1 EPWP

The approach and broad framework of the EPWP was agreed upon by Government, Business, Community and Labour at the Growth and Development Summit (GDS) of 2003. The Department of Roads and Public Works, as the coordinating Department for the Expanded Public Works Programme in the Northern Cape, has played a significant role in

ensuring that all Departments and Municipalities contribute towards poverty alleviation through the creation of work opportunities.

(a) EPWP Phase 1 (2004 – 2009)

The main target of this phase was to create 1 million work opportunities over the five-year period. The vehicle through which to achieve this, was through re-orientating line function budgets & conditional grants across government, so that it would result in the creation of work opportunities. All public bodies and State-Owned Enterprises were expected to contribute. Each of the four sectors of the programme had a specific strategy and focus area. Despite the fact that the 1 million work opportunities target was achieved one year ahead of time, a number of weaknesses were identified and a number of amendments were introduced, heading into phase 2.

(b) EPWP Phase 2 (2009 – 2014)

While the programme is still facing important challenges, it is also important to recognize the significant progress made. Since the start of the second phase, more than 3,5 million work opportunities and 924 000 FTEs were created. In the 2012/13 financial year alone, the EPWP created 941 593 work opportunities and through this reached at least 795 082 people. The average annual income for each work opportunity was R4 672. Furthermore, beneficiary surveys indicate that the majority participants in the EPWP were poor. Sixty per cent (60%) had income levels below the poverty line used in the National Development Plan (NDP) and 32% had income levels that fall below half this poverty line. For the poorest group, the EPWP doubled their annual household income. Attracting persons living with disabilities to the programme, remains challenging.

(c) EPWP Phase 3 (2014 – 2019)

While the proposals for Phase 3 built on these innovations, there is also recognition for important policy developments to which Phase 3 should respond, as well as a number of challenges within the EPWP that should be tackled during Phase 3. The most important policy development for the EPWP has been the adoption of the main thrusts of the NGP and the NDP. Both of these policies envision an important role for the EPWP in the future. The following work opportunities were reported on the EPWP Reporting System for the Northern Cape over the last 15 years of the three phases of EPWP:

Table 12: EPWP work opportunities per phase

ITEM	Phase 1: 2004 - 2009	Phase 2: 2009 -2014	Phase 3: 2014 - 2019	Total
Work Opportunities Created	10 632	77 628	111 945	200 205
FTEs' Created	2 239	28 277	24 402	54 918
Youth Employed	4 678	29 275	54 965	88 918
Women Employed	6 014	35 093	54 109	95 216
Disabled	49	411	92	552

Source: DRPW

4.3.4.2 Community Works Programme (CWP)

The Community Works Programme (CWP) is a part of the Expanded Public Works Programme that is located in COGHSTA. The Development goal target is to nationally create 1 million work opportunities through CWP by 2019. By 2016/17 the total number of CWP work opportunities created exceeded the target of 1 million nationally. For the period 2012/13 to 2018/19, 127 056 work opportunities were created in the Northern Cape. Of this total, 57 212 represented youth, 93 753 women and 4 234 persons with disabilities. A work opportunity is paid work created for an individual for any period of time. The same individual can be employed on different projects and each period of employment will be counted as a work opportunity. Further elucidation on CWP can be found in chapter 9.

4.3.4.3 Phakamile Mabija Apprenticeship Programme

The Phakamile Mabija Apprenticeship Programme, as a sub-program within the National Youth Service Program (NYS), was conceptualised in 2007. It was brought about in an attempt to address the scarce skills shortage in the Province, and the country as a whole. This program is borne from the Expanded Public Works Programmes (EPWP) need to alleviate poverty by way of job creation through training and development. The primary objective of the Department of Roads and Public Works Learner Artisan Project, is to foster, develop and realize economic and social development within the previously disadvantaged communities in the Northern Cape, by increasing the contribution of disadvantaged groups (specifically youth) to the formal economy. This programme falls within the National and Provincial Department of Public Works throughout the country and is aimed at youth between the ages of 18 and 35 years.

Since the Northern Cape Department of Roads and Public Works commenced with the Phakamile Mabija Artisanship Programme, several long term partnerships have been formed with De Beers Technical Training Campus (Training provider), Afrisam, Sishen Mine, Kimberley Engineering Works, Kimberley Ekapa Mining, Blackrock Mine and De Beers Sightholders Sales South Africa. The Phakamile Mabija Artisanship Programme includes trades such as Electrician, Diesel Mechanics, Boilermaker, Fitting & Turning and Millwright. The programme duration is over a period of 3 years and constitutes of Phases 1 and 2 (Institutional and Theoretical Training), Phase 3 (Workplace Training) and Phase 4 (3rd year modules, revision, preparation and trade test). Upon completion of the programme, the apprentices obtain a red seal qualification that is recognized Nationally and Internationally.

Out of 67 apprentices, 59 successfully completed the programme and obtained work opportunities in the private and mining sector. In January 2018, the Department empowered women of which a total of 25 Youth Female commenced on the programme and to date successfully completed their Phase 1 (Institutional and Theoretical Training) of the programme. In general, the artisan trades are a male dominated field. Through this programme, and in alignment with government's mandate, action is taken against the triple burden of poverty, inequality and unemployment.

4.3.4.4 Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP) and Illema/ Letsema

The Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP) was initiated in 2004 with the objective of providing effective agricultural support services and promoting and facilitating agricultural development. It targets the beneficiaries of land restitution and redistribution, as well as other disadvantaged producers who acquired land through private means, and are engaged in value adding enterprises domestically or are involved in export. The support services are provided within the framework of the following six pillars (NC: 20-year review, 2014, p. 160):

- Information and knowledge management.
- Technical, advisory and regulatory services.
- Training and capacity building.
- Marketing and business development.

- On and off farm infrastructure; and
- Financial Services (branded as MAFISA).

The following table reflects the number of beneficiaries of CASP from 2004/05 to 2013/14 (NC: 20-year review, 2014, p. 161):

Table 13: CASP performance 2004/05 - 2013/14

Financial year	Number of beneficiaries
2004/2005	202
2005/2006	719
2006/2007	1 524
2007/2008	897
2008/2009	13 134
2009/2010	2 173
2010/2011	2 385
2011/2012	778
2012/2013	1 375
2013/2014	929
Total	24 116

Source: Twenty year review , 2014

Illima/Letsema grant funding was established in 2008/09 financial year as a complementary programme to the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP). The key objective of this programme is to fight poverty by increasing food production in South Africa through farming. The programme also focuses on unlocking agricultural production potential by investing in other strategic programmes, in particular, investment in infrastructure that includes the rehabilitation of the irrigation schemes, and other value adding projects. The table below indicates the total number of beneficiaries for each year since the inception of the Illima/Letsema programme (NC: 20-year review, 2014, p. 162).

Table 14: Illema/ Letsema performance 2008/09 - 2013/14

Financial year	Number of beneficiaries
2008/2009	84
2009/2010	133
2010/2011	201
2011/2012	664
2012/2013	3 130
2013/2014	6 149
Total	10 361

Source: Twenty year review , 2014

For the financial years 2014/15 – 2018/19, the combined number of beneficiaries of CASP and Illema/ Letsema is recorded at 5 183, as per the Annual Reports of the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development for that period.

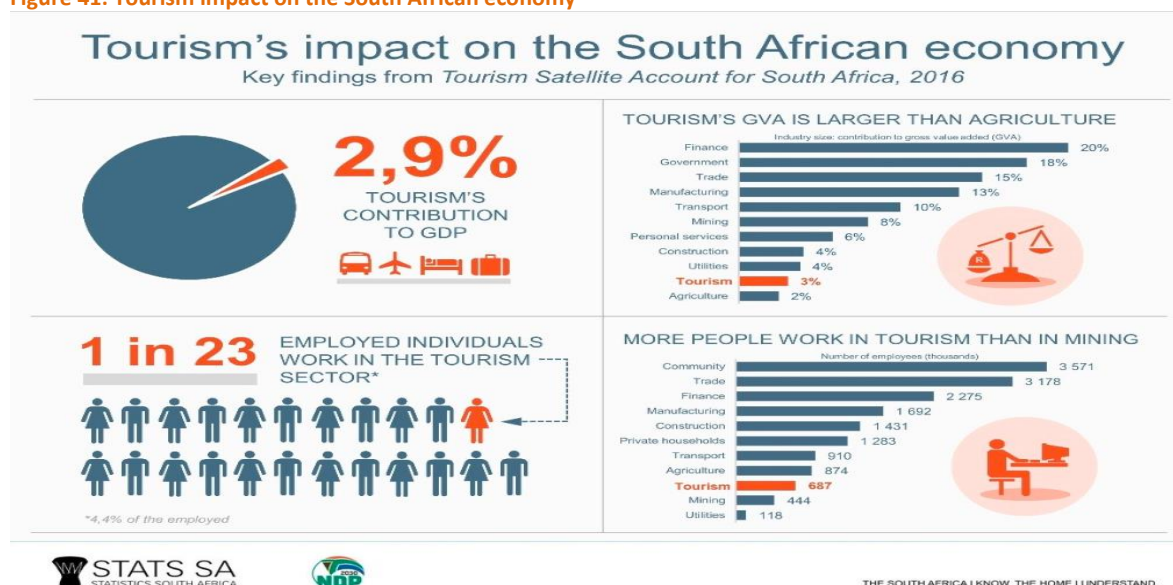
4.3.4.5 Other job creation initiatives

Monitoring of jobs in the following areas are ongoing; Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant (RBIG), Water Services Infrastructure Grant (WSIG), Jobs created in the environment sector, the War-on-Leaks programme and Green jobs at DALRRD. Not all jobs created in the province are reported on regularly or reported at all. The provincial systems for monitoring jobs created in all sectors, including central coordination thereof, needs to be strengthened.

4.3.5 Tourism

The Development goal is to increase foreign tourism to South Africa and create conditions for sustainable tourism growth. The following figure depicts the impact of tourism on the South African economy:

Figure 41: Tourism impact on the South African economy



Source: StatsSa

Tourism contributes are mere 2,9% to the national GDP. Despite this, tourism employs more people than mining and its gross value add (GVA) is larger than that of agriculture – the two big contributors to the Northern Cape economy. The following table depicts provincial tourist arrivals (domestic and international) for the period 2009 to 2017, and the income generated provincially for that period because of tourism:

Table 15: Domestic and international arrivals in the NC

	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	Total
Domestic arrivals in NC	574 000	219 000	381 000	368 000	480 000	557 000	275 000	521 000	393 000	3 768 000
Domestic expenditure	481 006 000	140 060 000	393 535 000	298 760 000	572 396 000	476 514 000	331 028 000	465 491 000	515 067 000	3 673 857 000
International arrivals in NC	No data	No data	No data	125 456	156 588	166 657	108 699	98 214	113 137	768 751
International expenditure	No data	700 000 000	600 000 000	547 000 000	654 314 716	681 168 428	594 119 595	634 691 095	873 946 450	5 285 240 285

Source: NCTA

From the table above, it is evident that, although international arrivals are much less than domestic arrivals, their expenditure exceeds that of domestic arrivals. Total income into the province is close to R9 million for the period 2009 - 2017. Arts and Culture festivals (Gariep Arts Festival, Diamond and Dorings) and promoting the province as an extreme sport attraction (Skateboarding Championships, Bloodhound Project), contributes to attracting visitors and create jobs. For the period, 2011/12 to 2017/18, the Northern Cape Tourism Authority (NCTA) supported 271 events, which attracted 1 244 361 attendees. Of these events, the biggest crowd-pullers were: the Gariep Festival (498 571); the Richtersveld Liggiesfees (57 300); the Diamonds and Dorings Festival (45 934); Africa Burn (40 644); the Kimberley Diamond Cup Skateboarding (34 826); the Aggeneys Festival (29 400); the Williston Winter Festival (28 791) and the Wildeklaar Schools Rugby tournament (27 745). It is evident that cultural festivals seem to attract the bigger crowds, compared with sport events. Not all provincial events are included in the above-mentioned, e.g. events organised by the Department of Sport, Arts and Culture, such as the Northern Cape Writers Festival.

4.3.6 Multi-year Projects (9-Point Plan)

4.3.6.1 Upington Special Economic Zone (SEZ)

The Upington SEZ has not been designated as a SEZ yet. The technical committee of the SEZ advisory board from DTI noted a number of concerns (e.g. control over land, governance and institutional model, bulk services) with the application and resolved that the application should meet the minimum requirements for designation. The applicant was advised to work closely with the DTI project management team and the provincial steering committee to revise the application for re-submission for a technical re-evaluation.

4.3.6.2 Agro-processing

The following major projects are also implemented, resulting in jobs created: Agri-Parks, Vineyard development projects (viz: wine grapes, table grapes and raisins), Rooibos Tea,

Vaalharts revitalisation, Namakwa irrigation, Vanderkloof fisheries and Cage Trout farming. Further elucidation on these projects can be found in chapter 7.

4.3.6.3 SMME Strategy

Provincial priorities that were funded from provincial fiscus include the Economic Growth and Development Fund (EGDF), which has increased from R10 million in 2004/05 to R28 million in 2017/18. Support to SMMEs and Cooperatives through the Economic Growth and Development Fund (EGDF), is vital for the stimulation of the provincial economy. The following self-designed table, depicts the number of SMMEs and Cooperatives supported, as well as the number of SMMEs linked to public procurement opportunities, as reported in the DEDAT Annual reports for the given period:

Table 16: SMMEs and Cooperatives supported

	Total	2016/17	2015/16	2014/15	2013/14	2011/2012
SMMEs supported	750	314	313	123	91	95
Cooperatives supported	269	116	91	62	20	21
SMMEs linked to public procurement opportunities	105	32	36	37	43	No Data

Source: DEDAT Annual Reports

During the 2016/17 financial year, R 26 908 million was allocated to the Economic Growth and Development Fund (EGDF) to assist start-up and existing businesses and has been disbursed across the province. A total of 32 businesses were funded, this relates to 12 in the Frances Baard District, 3 in the Z F Mcgawu District, 6 in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District; 6 in the Namakwa District and 5 in the Pixley ka Seme District.

In 2017/18 financial year, a total of 440 applications were received and 105 enterprises received funding. The funding resulted in 32% women, 26% youth and 4% disabled entrepreneurs receiving financial support, with 521 jobs expected to be created. The regional split is 55 enterprises in Frances Baard; 19 in JTG; 10 in Namakwa; 11 in ZF Mgcawu; and 10 in Pixley Ka Seme districts received support.

4.3.6.4 Manufacturing Strategy

The Clothing Cluster has 6 member firms that are largely based in Kimberley and one firm based in Augrabies. The Metals Industrial Cluster has 6 member's firms, will be developed on a 47 hectares of land in Kuruman. All the studies such as the Geo-tech, Traffic Impact, EIA have been completed. The Re-Zoning process has also been completed and the application is with the Ga-Segonyana Municipality. A feasibility study on establishing a Logistics Hub in the envisaged Metals Industrial Cluster that is based in Kuruman, has been completed. This Hub will provide a warehouse facility that will cater for the mines in the area. It will relieve the burden on the mines for stock that they do not necessarily require to keep and administer on a daily basis. A Governance model was developed for the Agro-processing Cluster, which is still in conceptual stage.

4.3.6.5 Diamond Strategy

The purpose of the strategy is to advance beneficiation and adding value to our mineral wealth.

(a) Kimberly International Diamond Jewellery Academy (KIDJA)

KIDJA was launched in 2011 primary objective of providing training in rare skills of diamond beneficiation. The objective is to:

- To respond to and to anticipate skill demands in the diamond industry in South Africa,
- To provide a mechanism for employers within the industry to formulate skill development strategies that lead to higher levels of competitiveness within the industry and the international diamond cutting and Jewellery markets,
- To provide courses that are internationally accredited, recognised by the Government of the Republic of South Africa and sought after by industry,
- To promote the empowerment of historically disadvantaged South Africans in the diamond industry,
- To promote the entry of historically disadvantaged South Africans into the industry through skills development programmes, and
- To become an integral role player in the Diamond Centre of Excellence in Kimberley, through the promotion and development of skills regarded as critical components to increase competitiveness within the industry.

Since inception, 413 learners graduated from the Academy in diamond cutting and polishing, as well as diamond valuation courses. Of the aforementioned total, 236 are male learners and 177 are female.

(b) Kimberley Diamond and Jewellery Incubator (KDJI)

The Kimberley Diamond and Jewellery Incubator was launched in the year 2015, to provide a platform for SMME development in the diamond and Jewellery manufacturing sector. Core services provided at the incubator include business skills, as well as technical skills development for the incubates. To date, 76 SMMEs were incubated at the facility of which 59 SMMEs are male and 17 females.

4.3.7 Key flagship projects

4.3.7.1 Bloodhound Land Speed Record (LSR)

Announced as far back as 2008, the Bloodhound LSR is a UK-based project aiming to break the world land speed record using the most advanced straight-line racing car ever built – the Bloodhound Supersonic Car (<http://www.bloodhoundlsr.com/>). Since the launch of the Bloodhound Project, its education campaign has reached over 2 million school children, promoting science and technology. Seven schools in the Northern Cape participated in building Berkin model cars competition. The project is bound to have a sustainable legacy, contributing to tourism and local economic development in Mier. The arrival of the Bloodhound Team is planned for October 2019 at Hakskeen Pan. Preparations for the project at Hakskeen Pan is continuous – to also accommodate future events.

4.3.7.2 Big Hole Precinct

The Big Hole Precinct in Kimberley, is home to the world-famous Big Hole Museum, Mittah Seperepere International Convention Centre, Kumba Skate Plaza and Diamond Fields Flagship Visitor Centre. It is the most visited destination in the Northern Cape and has tremendous potential for expansion and rejuvenation. The rejuvenation of the Big Hole Precinct project entails converting the Kumba Skate Park to a full action sports centre, further development of the Mittah Seperepere Convention Centre (MSICC), creating an office park and landscaping of the area between the skate park and conference centre.

4.3.7.3 Skateboarding (Extreme sport)

The purpose of the skateboarding projects include a world skateboarding championship designed to create jobs, benefit local SMMEs, drive tourism through sports infrastructure development and create awareness of the Northern Cape as international mega event destination. Apart from presenting an annual skateboarding world championship, the project also consisted of presenting four Grand Slam Championships and 15 or more Skateboarding for Hope competitions. The project further included the management of the Kumba Skate Plaza, which provided for weekly skate competitions, skate coaching and life skills development programmes.

The Maloof Money Cup (MMC) was presented from 2011-2012. It was then replaced by the Kimberley Diamond Cup (KDC) and took place from 2013-2015. The project will be initiated again in 2019.

(a) MMC project return on investment (2013-2016)

- 5 skate parks built, one in each district,
- 740 temporary job opportunities created- 111 temporary jobs created in the construction process,
- 130 youth benefitted from volunteer programme,
- More than 25 000 fans attended MMC events,
- Youth extreme sport outreach took place in 47 towns across South Africa reached approximately 100 000 youths,
- Live broadcast of MMC world championships reached more than 50 million viewers, creating significant global awareness of the Northern Cape as extreme sport and adventure destination,
- The MMC, according to the Northern Cape Tourism Authority (NCTA), attracted R282.7 million to the province.

(b) KDC project return on investment (2013-2016)

- 9 permanent jobs created and 3 176 temporary jobs created,
- 185 youth benefitted from volunteer programme,
- 8% of Kimberley businesses had to appoint additional staff during KDC Week,
- 175 SMMEs contracted as service providers,
- 171 vendors accommodated in village area,
- 63 entrepreneurs benefitted from skills development programme,
- 14 SMMEs mentored,

- 12 internships completed,
- 41% of attendees are from outside of the Northern Cape and stayed an average of 4.9 days,
- According to the South African Tourism Annual Report for 2014/15, the USA became the Northern Cape's 3rd biggest market for hotel bed nights sold after Namibia (254 172), UK (71 037) and USA (36 673). In 2015, the USA exceeded South Africa's traditional core markets Germany (36 317) and Netherlands (23 558).
- Total direct economic injection for Northern Cape / Kimberley of KDC Week (main event) is R19 561 552 (Attendee spending during KDC Week – R3 996 891 + Direct impact on production in the Northern Cape – R5 299 774 + Direct impact on production in Kimberley during KDC Week – R10 264 887). (The direct economic injection in 2013 was measured at R5 004 535),
- 61 619 fans attended KDC events,
- 224 international skaters, from 50 countries, skated in KDC championships,
- The KDC skateboarding world championship attracted skaters from 50 countries in 2015, up from 37 countries in 2014. Some 93 international skaters competed in the KDC 2015 skateboarding world championship which included 23 from African countries. This makes the KDC the most representative and biggest skateboarding championship in the world today.
- According to the NCTA, the KDC attracted R243 million in publicity value compared to R94 million in 2014,
- The KDC 2015 generated 864 articles reaching a potential audience of 2.2 billion people.

4.4 Persistent challenges

The national economy has not grown at the pace needed to create enough jobs, or lift people out of poverty (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 70). The equitable share provincial allocation formula from the national fiscus continue to disadvantage the Northern Cape. Vast distances and inadequate infrastructure remain constraints to development. The unemployment rate of the Northern Cape remains unacceptably high.

The designation of the Upington SEZ is stalling, because of concerns with the application (e.g. control over land, governance and institutional model, bulk services).

The following are some of the main contributors to under performance of the EPWP programme:

- Lack of capacity in municipalities to carry out their mandate of implementing community empowerment programmes.
- Lack of accountability towards the EPWP programme.
- The Institutionalisation of EPWP within municipalities not implemented.

Proper coordination and systems to record work opportunities created, and specifically for targeted groups such as youth, women and the disabled persons, is still lacking in the province. This should be accompanied by committed (regular) and comprehensive reporting. Inconsistent reporting by, especially national departments, compound the problem of collating comprehensive information.

4.5 Looking ahead

EPWP Phase 4 will be implemented between 2019 to 2024. New targets are being set for departments and municipalities. The overall target for the Northern Cape province for the Phase 4 period is to create 104 031 work opportunities for both departments municipalities, as per table below:

Table 17: EPWP Phase 4 targets for the NC

NC Overall	Provincial (WO)	Municipal (WO)	Total (WO)
2019/20	14 737	4 823	19 560
2020/21	15 761	4 776	20 537
2021/22	16 136	4 774	20 910
2022/23	16 490	4 772	21 262
2023/24	16 983	4 779	21 762
Total	80 107	23 924	104 031

Source: DRPW

The NC DEDaT has set the MTSF key priorities, which needs to be implemented to address the identified challenges. DEDaT strives to achieve the economic growth and diversification on the Northern Cape Province through implementation of strategic economic initiatives in the following key areas:

- Job Creation (Decent jobs);

- Manufacturing and Industrialisation;
- Localisation and Investment;
- Rural Economic Development,
- Broadening ownership of the economy, including sustainable land reform. Furthermore, addressing Monopolies, Excessive Economic Concentration, Abuse of Dominance by Large Corporations and the Growth-Inhibiting Structure of the Economy,
- Embracing the opportunities of the Digital Revolution
- Support the development of renewable energy in the province,
- Promote the ocean's economy initiatives.

The above key areas will be aided by specific focus on the following:

- Alternative Energy and the Green Economy;
- Trade and investment;
- Development of SMMEs and Co-operatives;
- Internship and Training opportunities;
- Development of Economic Sectors;
- Mineral Beneficiation;
- Tourism.

The attainment of NDP goals will contribute to the reducing of unemployment, poverty and inequality by;

- Unlocking the potential of SMMEs, cooperatives, townships and rural enterprises;
- Accelerating and supporting the broadband roll-out and strategic and economic infrastructure and also Increase uptake of ICT's;
- Enabling an effective implementation of higher impact industrial policy action plan;
- Encouraging private sector investment;
- Grow and Intensify interventions in other NGP Job drivers i.e.
 - Infrastructure
 - Green Economy
 - Knowledge Economy
 - Social Economy
 - Fisheries (Mariculture)
 - Mining

Central coordination of job creation can be formalised through a job summit. This will ensure more comprehensive reporting, especially in terms of targeted groups.



Chapter 5

SKILLED AND CAPABLE WORKFORCE TO SUPPORT AN INCLUSIVE
GROWTH PLAN



CHAPTER 5

5.1 Problem statement

At the beginning of 1994, South Africa's higher education system was fragmented and not properly coordinated. This was primarily the result of the white apartheid government's conception of race and the politics of race, which had shaped the higher education policy framework that it laid down during the 1980s. The 1994, the democratic government inherited a country characterised by a population with low educational and skill levels, fragmented education and training system designed to perpetuate apartheid policies, hence it was unequal and parts of it dysfunctional (RDP,1994).

In response to eradicating the fragmented inheritance of the apartheid system, the RDP advocated for a single national ministry responsible for education and training, to set national policies, norms and standards throughout the system. It further proposed the establishment of a National Qualification Framework (NQF) to integrate different qualifications and allow for portability and articulation allowing for the upward accumulation of educational qualifications. In 1996, the adoption of the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) 1996, ushered in a new approach to developing human capital moving away from the previous ways of developing human capital.

5.2 The journey since 1994

5.2.1 Overview

Chapter 9 of the NDP states that "South Africa has set itself the goal of eradicating poverty, reducing inequality, growing the economy by an average of 5,4% and cutting the unemployment rate to 6% by 2030. Education, training and innovation are critical to the attainment of these goals".

The following are the challenges as outlined in the medium term statement.

- Access to education and training of the highest quality;
- Graduates of the post school systems should have adequate skills and knowledge to meet the current and future needs of the economy and society;
- Articulation between higher education and further education institutions;
- The efficiency and effectiveness of post school intuitions and quality of the outputs;

- Funding;
- Research and innovation;
- Global competitiveness.

The Northern Cape has been struggling to decrease the provincial unemployment rate. As per the Quarterly Labour Force Survey of Statistics SA, the unemployment rate in 2001 was at 21,3%. This increased to 32% in 2015 and by 2018 stood at 27,6%. This is attributed to poor economic growth and the inability of the economy to create enough job opportunities to stay on par with rising working aged population.

Human capital development is a very important aspect in the building of an inclusive society. This is particularly important in a province like Northern Cape where the majority of people do not have the necessary skills to operate and therefore realize their full potential in the envisaged information and modern society. It is widely acknowledged that a more differentiated and complex set of skills is required for a range of possible uses, such as acquisition of various kinds of knowledge, access to relevant services, communication, interaction and participation in diverse settings. To reverse the situation, there is a critical need to invest in human capital development through formal schooling, higher education, on-the-job training, work experience, investments in health, outreach and extension programmes and life experience, amongst others.

One of the key challenges faced by the Province in building an inclusive society is the shortage of skilled people in the province. The shortage is then attributed to the mismatch between the supply of skills and the labour market skills demand. The shortage of skills is further aggravated by a loss of skills to the other provinces that offer higher salaries and better conditions of employment. This phenomenon is referred to as the “brain drain”. The demand for skills continues to outstrip the supply of skills. Moreover, the Northern Cape does not have enough skills development opportunities, teachers and higher education centres. Which leads to a very high unskilled working population and a drainage of skilled workers to other provinces (PGDP).

5.2.2 Legislation and Policies

- National Qualifications Framework (NQF) 1996.

- Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act No. 101 of 1997).
- Human Resource Development Strategy South Africa Vision 2030.
- Skills Development Act of 1998.
- Skills Development Levies Act of 1999.
- National Development Plan.
- White paper on Post School Education and Training.

5.3 Progress for the period 1994 – 2019

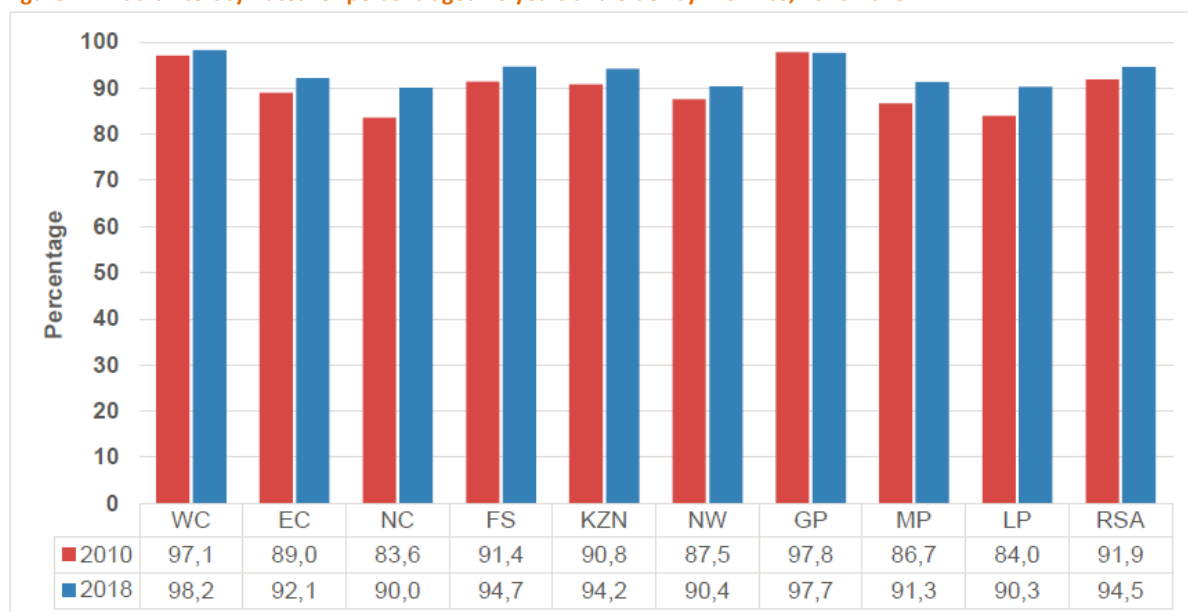
5.3.1.1 Adult Literacy

In 2006, ABET centres recorded enrolment figures of 6 312 in the province, with a pass rate of 59%. This however, changed in 2007 when an upsurge in registration for level 4 of 10 087 was recorded, but a declining pass rate of 50%, compared to the previous academic year.

Addressing illiteracy in the Province through ABET programmes not only provides for lifelong learning, but also has the potential of reducing the social, multigenerational and economic impact thereof.

The figure below gives us an indication of the improved growth of 6,4% in the adult literacy levels from 2010 – 2018 in the Province. Despite the decline, the adult literacy rates for persons aged 20 years and older is the lowest in the country.

Figure 42: Adult Literacy Rates for persons aged 20 years and older by Province, 2010-2018



Source Statistics SA: General Household Survey, 2018, Page 23

5.3.1.2 Level of Education for 20 years and older

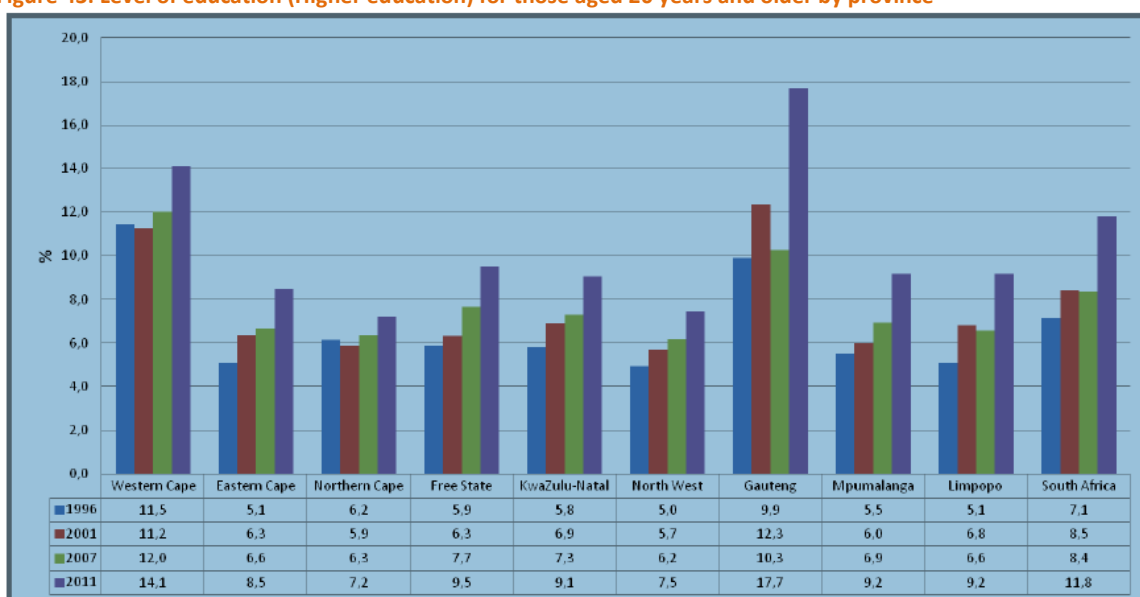
The Statistics SA, GHS of 2018, indicates that the percentage of persons aged 20 years and older with no formal education, declined across the country. The NC declined by 10,8 % from 17,5% in 2002 to 6,7% in 2018. The Northern Cape and Mpumalanga had the highest percentage drop (GHS 2017, pg 19). The Statistics SA, report on Higher Education and Skills issued in 2017 highlights the keys reasons that individuals aged between 18-24 do not attend educational institutions. As per the breakdown below, in the province the principle reason for not attending educational institutions, is the lack of money.

- Poor Academic Performance: 19,6%
- Family Commitments, 9,1%
- No money for fees: 38,1%
- Completed / Satisfied with the level of educations: 33,3%

The report further concludes that transition within the FET phase and from school to post-school education increased over the years, but remains low with almost half of the learners enrolled in Grade 10, not progressing to Grade 12. The Eastern Cape and Northern Cape were the provinces with the lowest levels of progression.

According to the Statistics SA Census of 1996, 2001, 2011 and Community Survey of 2007 on the proportion of people age 20 years and older with a higher education increased in the Province, recording 7,2 % by 2011. This however is the lowest percentage in relation to other provinces.

Figure 43: Level of education (Higher education) for those aged 20 years and older by province



Source: Statistics SA – Census 1996,2001,2011 and Community Survey 2007

5.3.2 Post-school Education and Training

The White Paper for Post School Education 2013, sets out strategies to improve the capacity of the post-school education and training system to meet South Africa's needs. It outlines policy directions to guide the DHET and the institutions for which it is responsible, in order to contribute to building a developmental state with a vibrant democracy and a flourishing economy. There are three main categories of post school education and training institutions, namely higher education institutions (HEIs) and Technical Vocational Education Training (TVET) colleges and Community Education Training Centres (CETC) centres.

5.3.2.1 TVET Colleges

Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) colleges are administered in terms of the Continuing Education and Training Act, No 16 of 2006, as amended. In 2016, there were 50 public TVET colleges with 250 registered campuses for delivery of qualifications and part-qualifications. The province has two TVET Colleges (Urban and Rural) with a total of 7 campuses across the province. During 2015, the Northern Cape Province has seen seven (7) TVET Colleges declared as open learning and distant education institutions.

The White Paper on Post School Education and Training System states that "The main purpose of these colleges is to train young school leavers, providing them with the skills, knowledge and attitudes necessary for employment in the labour market. They primarily provide training for the mid-level skills required to develop the South African economy, and tend to concentrate on occupations in the engineering and construction industries, tourism and hospitality, and general business and management studies. These colleges provide technical and vocational education and training programmes to learners who completed at least Grade 9 at school level. However, there are also opportunities for learners with a Grade 12 certificate. In 2016 the student enrolment at the 2 TVET colleges in NC stood at 15 148 and contributed to 2,1% of the total national enrolment. Majority of students enrolled for Report 191 followed by NC(V) programmes. The data reported by the DHET in the report released in 2018 is as extracted from the TVETMIS. As per the tables below:

- NC achieved the lowest completion rate of 34,5% for NC (V) level 2, with NC (V) level 3 at 39,9% and NC (V) Level 4 at 39,7%.
- The NC average national completion rate for Report 190/1 N1 to N3 Engineering Studies was at 63,83%. The completion rate decreased across different N levels in

TVET colleges starting at 70,7% for N1, declining to 62,6% for N2 and subsequently reaching 58,2% for N3 qualifications.

- NC recorded the lowest completion rate for part-qualification for Engineering Studies across levels N4 (73,3%), N5 (67,1%) and N6 (59,6%).
- For Business Studies the Northern Cape province recorded the lowest number of students who registered, wrote and completed across all levels.

Table 18: Number of TVET colleges and student headcount enrolment by Province, 2016

Province	TVET colleges	Students
Eastern Cape	8	77 483
Free State	4	49 977
Gauteng	8	169 044
KwaZulu-Natal	9	120 832
Limpopo	7	108 157
Mpumalanga	3	46 929
North West	3	37 118
Northern Cape	2	15 148
Western Cape	6	80 709
National	50	705 397

Source: DHET, Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa: 2016, Pretoria, 2018, Pg 53

Table 19: Number of student headcount enrolment in TVET colleges by qualification category and province, 2016

Province	NC(V)	Report 191 N1-N6	Occupational Qualifications	Other	Total
Eastern Cape	26 268	49 716	39	1 460	77 483
Free State	7 848	41 616	12	501	49 977
Gauteng	35 941	125 465	10	7 628	169 044
KwaZulu-Natal	34 139	85 056	727	910	120 832
Limpopo	30 146	75 623	1 704	684	108 157
Mpumalanga	15 078	31 847	0	4	46 929
North West	9 780	26 817	365	156	37 118
Northern Cape	2 728	9 555	2 589	276	15 148
Western Cape	15 333	46 331	8 196	10 849	80 709
National	177 261	492 026	13 642	22 468	705 397

Source: TVETMIS 2016, data extracted in January 2018.

Note 1: NC(V) refers to the National Certificate (Vocational).

Note 2: Report 191 refers to the NATED programmes, N1 to N6.

Note 3: "Occupational Qualifications" refer to qualifications associated with a trade, occupation or profession resulting from work-based learning and consisting of knowledge unit standards, practical unit standards, and work experience unit standards.

Note 4: Other refers to all other programmes offered in TVET colleges, for example skills development and short courses. It also includes programme enrolment numbers that were misreported.

Source: DHET, Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa: 2016, Pretoria, 2018, Pg 54

Table 20: Number of students in TVET colleges who registers, wrote and completed NC (V) qualifications by province and level, 2016

Province	NC(V) Level 2				NC(V) Level 3				NC(V) Level 4			
	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)
Eastern Cape	12 145	8 994	4 487	49.9	7 605	6 740	3 552	52.7	4 524	4 144	1 886	45.5
Free State	4 489	2 959	1 330	44.9	1 994	1 709	888	52.0	861	774	355	45.9
Gauteng	18 476	13 414	5 761	42.9	9 724	8 489	3 894	45.9	5 724	5 207	2 184	41.9
KwaZulu-Natal	19 059	13 984	6 211	44.4	10 123	8 840	4 050	45.8	5 851	5 376	1 873	34.8
Limpopo	14 161	11 716	5 234	44.7	8 505	7 935	3 347	42.2	5 038	4 756	1 737	36.5
Mpumalanga	6 557	4 915	2 707	55.1	4 266	3 809	1 857	48.8	2 518	2 302	1 082	47.0
North West	3 236	2 248	782	34.8	1 678	1 450	524	36.1	689	611	183	30.0
Northern Cape	4 784	3 570	1 231	34.5	3 254	2 781	1 111	39.9	2 085	1 842	731	39.7
Western Cape	8 674	5 432	2 845	52.4	4 750	3 968	2 087	52.6	3 451	3 092	1 685	54.5
National	91 581	67 232	30 588	45.5	51 899	45 721	21 310	46.6	30 741	28 104	11 716	41.7

Source: **National Examinations Database, November 2016.**

Note 1: The number of students who REGISTERED, WROTE and COMPLETED included only those who were eligible to complete an NC(V) qualification during the 2016 academic year.

Note 2: "Number Registered" refers to the number of students who registered for the 2016 NC(V) Levels 2-4 examinations and were eligible to complete an NC(V) qualification during the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who registered to write individual subjects but who were not eligible to complete the NC(V) Level 2-4 qualifications in 2016.

Note 3: "Number Wrote" refers to the number of students who wrote the 2016 NC(V) Levels 2-4 examinations and were eligible to complete an NC(V) qualification during the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who wrote individual subjects but who were not eligible to complete the NC(V) Level 2-4 qualifications in 2016.

Note 4: "Number Completed" refers to the number of students who were eligible to complete and successfully completed the NC(V) Levels 2-4 qualifications in the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who may have passed individual subjects but were not eligible to complete the NC(V) Level 2-4 qualifications in 2016.

Note 5: "Completion rate" refers to the number of students who successfully completed an NC(V) qualification in the 2016 academic year, expressed as a percentage of the number of candidates who were eligible to complete the NC(V) Level 2-4 qualifications and wrote the examinations (the latter is defined above) in 2016.

Note 6: NC(V) Level 2, NC(V) Level 3 and NC(V) Level 4 are each full qualifications.

Source: DHET, Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa: 2016, Pretoria, 2018, Pg 60

Table 21: Number of students in TVET colleges who registered, wrote and completed report 190/1 N1 to N3 qualifications for Engineering Studies by province, 2016.

Province	Report 191 N4				Report 191 N5				Report 191 N6			
	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)
Eastern Cape	3 495	3 234	2 661	82.3	3 136	2 941	2 227	75.7	2 259	2 128	1 222	57.4
Free State	2 836	2 654	1 855	69.9	2 131	2 022	1 184	58.6	1 218	1 145	716	62.5
Gauteng	12 348	11 825	8 864	75.0	10 029	9 657	6 661	69.0	7 403	7 044	4 298	61.0
KwaZulu-Natal	7 142	6 756	5 458	80.8	5 896	5 576	4 181	75.0	4 164	3 831	2 399	62.6
Limpopo	5 989	5 721	4 627	80.9	5 021	4 854	3 565	73.4	3 899	3 716	2 252	60.6
Mpumalanga	3 201	2 952	2 363	80.0	2 127	1 947	1 243	63.8	981	889	499	56.1
North West	2 109	1 958	1 429	73.0	1 411	1 286	955	74.3	928	821	520	63.3
Northern Cape	207	191	140	73.3	148	140	94	67.1	118	114	68	59.6
Western Cape	2 644	2 410	1 919	79.6	2 103	1 961	1 470	75.0	1 501	1 381	874	63.3
National	39 971	37 701	29 316	77.8	32 002	30 384	21 580	71.0	22 471	21 069	12 848	61.0

Source: **National Examinations Database, November 2016**

Note 1: The number of students who REGISTERED, WROTE and COMPLETED included only those who were eligible to complete a Report 190/1 part-qualification during the 2016 academic year.

Note 2: "Number Registered" refers to the number of students who registered for the 2016 Report 190/1 N4-N6 examinations for Engineering Studies and were eligible to complete a Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualification during the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who registered to write individual subjects but who were not eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications in 2016.

Note 3: "Number Wrote" refers to the number of students who wrote the 2016 Report 190/1 N4-N6 examinations for Engineering Studies and were eligible to complete a Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualification during the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who wrote individual subjects but who were not eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications in 2016.

Note 4: "Number Completed" refers to the number of students who were eligible to complete and successfully completed the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications in the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who may have passed individual subjects but were not eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications in 2016.

Note 5: "Completion rate" refers to the number of students who successfully completed a Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualification in the 2016 academic year, expressed as a percentage of the number of students who were eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications and wrote the examinations (the latter is defined above) in 2016.

Note 6: The number of students who registered for, wrote and completed N4-N6 Engineering Studies part-qualifications includes the consolidated numbers across all three trimesters of the 2016 academic year.

Source: DHET, Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa: 2016, Pretoria, 2018, Pg 61

Table 22: Number of students in TVET colleges who registered, wrote and completed Report 190/1 N4 to N6 part-qualification for Engineering Studies by province, 2016

Province	Report 191 N4				Report 191 N5				Report 191 N6			
	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)
Eastern Cape	14 135	12 808	10 122	79.0	11 860	11 412	7 762	68.0	8 455	8 222	5 682	69.1
Free State	11 222	10 288	7 738	75.2	8 830	8 477	6 058	71.5	6 401	6 205	4 647	74.9
Gauteng	27 586	25 479	19 648	77.1	19 448	18 710	13 357	71.4	15 046	14 692	10 187	69.3
KwaZulu-Natal	24 327	22 249	14 594	65.6	18 659	18 127	11 653	64.3	16 759	16 375	10 281	62.8
Limpopo	15 052	14 509	11 275	77.7	13 795	13 596	8 654	63.7	10 138	10 024	6 524	65.1
Mpumalanga	4 986	4 541	3 648	80.3	3 787	3 632	2 537	69.9	2 961	2 874	1 853	64.5
Northern Cape	2 822	2 430	1 715	70.6	2 234	2 077	1 192	57.4	1 655	1 584	913	57.6
North West	5 325	4 951	3 968	80.1	5 725	5 438	3 526	64.8	3 923	3 779	2 564	67.8
Western Cape	13 477	11 908	9 154	76.9	9 499	8 909	6 618	74.3	7 247	6 948	5 143	74.0
National	118 932	109 163	81 862	75.0	93 837	90 378	61 357	67.9	72 585	70 703	47 794	67.6

Source: **National Examinations Database, November 2016.**

Note 1: The number of students who REGISTERED, WROTE and COMPLETED included only those who were eligible to complete a Report 190/1 part-qualification during the 2016 academic year.

Note 2: "Number Registered" refers to the number of students who registered for the 2016 Report 190/1 N4-N6 examinations for Business Studies and were eligible to complete a Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualification during the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who registered to write individual subjects but who were not eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications in 2016.

Note 3: "Number Wrote" refers to the number of students who wrote the 2016 Report 190/1 N4-N6 examinations for Business Studies and were eligible to complete a Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualification during the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who wrote individual subjects but who were not eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications in 2016.

Note 4: "Number Completed" refers to the number of students who were eligible to complete and successfully completed the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications in the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who may have passed individual subjects but were not eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications in 2016.

Note 5: "Completion rate" refers to the number of students who successfully completed a Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualification in the 2016 academic year, expressed as a percentage of the number of students who were eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N4-N6 part-qualifications and wrote the examinations (the latter is defined above) in 2016.

Note 6: The number of students who registered for, wrote and completed N4-N6 Business Studies part-qualifications includes the consolidated numbers across both semesters of the 2016 academic year.

Source: DHET, Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa: 2016, Pretoria, 2018, Pg 62

Table 23: Number of students in TVET colleges who registered, wrote and completed Report 191 N4 to N6 qualifications for Business Studies by province, 2016

Province	Report 191 N1				Report 191 N2				Report 191 N3			
	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)
Eastern Cape	5 221	4 639	3 750	80.8	6 208	5 947	3 967	66.7	5 007	4 692	2 907	62.0
Free State	3 967	3 646	2 743	75.2	5 284	5 044	2 980	59.1	3 880	3 715	2 215	59.6
Gauteng	15 298	14 295	11 142	77.9	20 326	19 712	13 219	67.1	17 550	16 903	11 266	66.7
KwaZulu-Natal	7 114	6 526	5 393	82.6	12 792	12 273	8 615	70.2	10 456	9 985	6 673	66.8
Limpopo	8 866	8 454	7 324	86.6	14 791	14 422	11 213	77.7	11 277	10 863	7 440	68.5
Mpumalanga	4 078	3 822	3 123	81.7	6 965	6 691	4 832	72.2	5 512	5 255	3 772	71.8
North West	3 165	2 911	2 396	82.3	5 765	5 554	3 744	67.4	4 285	4 064	2 590	63.7
Northern Cape	1 697	1 575	1 114	70.7	2 588	2 482	1 554	62.6	730	670	390	58.2
Western Cape	6 274	5 057	4 086	80.8	6 204	5 664	3 579	63.2	3 694	3 262	1 849	56.7
National	55 680	50 925	41 071	80.6	80 923	77 789	53 703	69.0	62 391	59 409	39 102	65.8

Source: **National Examinations Database, November 2016.**

Note 1: The number of students who REGISTERED, WROTE and COMPLETED included only those who were eligible to complete a Report 190/1 part-qualification during the 2016 academic year.

Note 2: "Number Registered" refers to the number of students who registered for the 2016 Report 190/1 N1-N3 examinations for Engineering Studies and were eligible to complete a Report 190/1 N1-N3 part-qualification during the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who registered to write individual subjects but who were not eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N1-N3 part-qualifications in 2016.

Note 3: "Number Wrote" refers to the number of students who wrote the 2016 Report 190/1 N1-N3 examinations for Engineering Studies and were eligible to complete a Report 190/1 N1-N3 part-qualification during the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who wrote individual subjects but who were not eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N1-N3 part-qualifications in 2016.

Note 4: "Number Completed" refers to the number of students who were eligible to complete and successfully completed the Report 190/1 N1-N3 part-qualifications in the 2016 academic year. This number excludes students who may have passed individual subjects but were not eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N1-N3 part-qualifications in 2016.

Note 5: "Completion rate" refers to the number of students who successfully completed a Report 190/1 N1-N3 part-qualification in the 2016 academic year, expressed as a percentage of the number of students who were eligible to complete the Report 190/1 N1-N3 part-qualifications and wrote the examinations (the latter is defined above) in 2016.

Note 6: The number of students who registered for, wrote and completed N1-N3 Engineering Studies part-qualifications includes the consolidated numbers across all three trimesters of the 2016 academic year.

Source: DHET, Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa: 2016, Pretoria, 2018, Pg 63

5.3.2.2 CET Colleges

The Minister of Higher Education and Training established Community Education and Training (CET) colleges in April 2015 in terms of the Continuing Education and Training Act, of 2006 (Act No.16 of 2006). The Act provides for the establishment, management, governance and funding of the newly established Community Education and Training colleges. The province has one Community College with 256 centers across the 5 districts, which were established during 2016. These colleges seek to facilitate a cycle of lifelong learning in communities and thus is critical that the training provided is of good quality that will ensure people make significant progress in learning, training and development.

For 2016, the enrolment at the CET in the province was 3 986. The highest enrolment was for AET level 4 (NQF level 1) and the lowest for Grade 12 (NQF level 4). Of the registered students 28% completed at ABET level 4. This is the lowest across all provinces.

Table 24: Number of students in CET colleges, by college and programme, 2016

College	AET Level 1	AET Level 2	AET Level 3	AET Level 4 (NQF Level 1)	Grade 10 (NQF Level 2)	Grade 11 (NQF Level 3)	Grade 12 (NQF Level 4)	Other/ Occupational programmes	Total
Eastern Cape CET College	2 701	4 500	4 948	20 787	0	0	1 380	432	34 748
Free State CET College	382	795	1 748	6 992	0	0	9 178	142	19 237
Gauteng CET College	1 527	1 673	2 738	18 220	0	1 310	59 509	1 237	86 214
KwaZulu-Natal CET College	3 391	5 285	7 697	28 502	265	19	8 871	310	54 340
Limpopo CET College	874	1 933	1 574	19 708	0	0	0	60	24 149
Mpumalanga CET College	1 186	3 740	3 305	9 029	0	0	362	31	17 653
Northern Cape CET College	425	444	484	2 543	0	0	75	15	3 986
North West CET College	906	1 763	2 004	9 419	1	4	450	446	14 993
Western Cape CET College	1 503	1 382	1 540	7 419	18	16	5 800	433	18 111
National	12 895	21 515	26 038	122 619	284	1 349	85 625	3 106	273 431
Percentage	4.7%	7.9%	9.5%	44.8%	0.1%	0.5%	31.3%	1.1%	100%

Source: DHET, Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa: 2016, Pretoria, 2018, Pg 72

Table 25: Number of students, lecturers and Community Learning Centres, by college, 2016

College	Community Learning Centres	Lecturers	Students
Eastern Cape CET College	279	2 863	34 748
Free State CET College	206	868	19 237
Gauteng CET College	47	2 245	86 214
KwaZulu-Natal CET College	785	4 030	54 340
Limpopo CET College	746	1 122	24 149
Mpumalanga CET College	261	1 308	17 653
Northern Cape CET College	256	163	3 986
North West CET College	109	1 040	14 993
Western Cape CET College	89	620	18 111
National	2 778	14 259	273 431

Source: DHET, Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa: 2016, Pretoria, 2018, Pg 73

Table 26: Number of students in CET colleges who registered, wrote and completed the GETC: ABET Level 4

College	Number registered	Number wrote	Number completed	Completion rate (%)
Eastern Cape	11 155	6 937	2 720	39.2
Free State	4 216	3 682	1 205	32.7
Gauteng	14 392	10 792	3 381	31.3
KwaZulu-Natal	24 057	16 934	6 845	40.4
Limpopo	22 103	19 485	7 213	37.0
Mpumalanga	10 101	7 882	2 696	34.2
Northern Cape	2 165	1 856	519	28.0
North-West	9 226	8 116	2 502	30.8
Western Cape	3 075	2 421	943	39.0
National	100 490	78 105	28 024	35.9

Source: DHET, Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa: 2016, Pretoria, 2018, Pg 76

5.3.2.3 Sol Plaatje University

In his 2011 State of the Nation address, the President of the Republic of South Africa announced the establishment of two new universities, one in the Northern Cape and the other in Mpumalanga. A ministerial task team was set up to oversee the establishment of the university in the province. Significant progress has been made to date and the Sol Plaatje University (SPU) was formally established on the 22 August 2013, in terms of Section 20 of the Higher Education Act of 1997, by Government Notice 630, signed by the then Minister of Higher Education and Training, Dr Blade Nzimande.

SPU draws on the distinctive strengths and heritage of the Northern Cape, stimulating provincial and national development and has the potential to inject new life and purpose into Kimberley and the Northern Cape. SPU is an important institutional mechanism established to be responsive to the needs of the people, economy and labour market of the province. SPU in collaboration with partners must undertake research to meet the economic and social needs of our society. The University contributes in increasing the realization of the national development objectives through research and innovation and to improve access to higher education. SPU has established Academic Schools for the School of Economic Management Sciences, School of Education, School of Humanities and School of Natural and Applied Sciences. The table below provides a breakdown of the number students enrolled since 2014.

Table 27: Number of first-time undergraduate students enrolled at SPU, 2014 – 2018

Sol Plaatje University	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
	124	220	408	444	1050

Source: Statistics on Post – School Education and Training in South Africa 2017 (Pg 87).

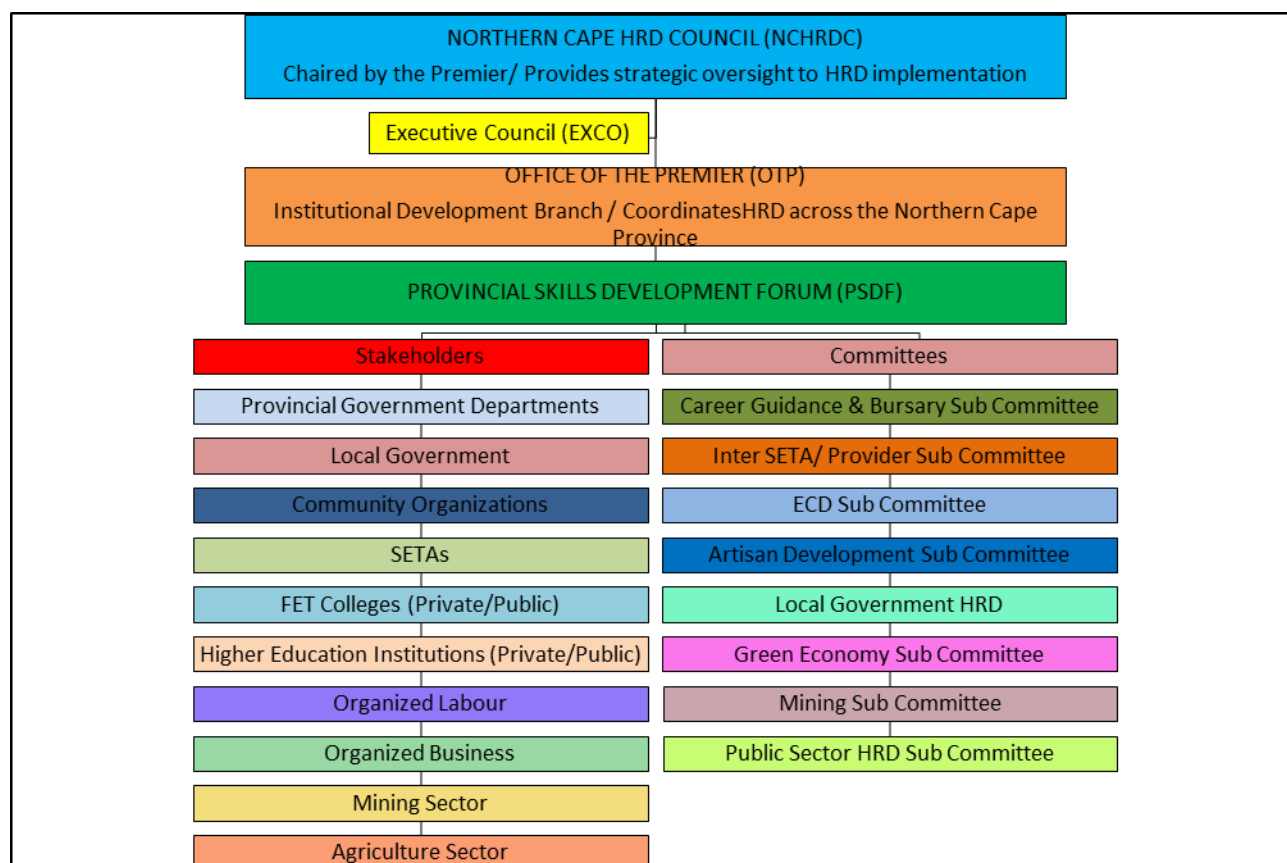
5.3.3 Central co-ordination of Skills Development

Human Resource Development was coordinated by the Northern Cape Department of Education. In February 2012, the Executive Council resolved that the HRD function be relocated to the Office of the Premier to ensure greater efficiency and coordination for the skills development domain in the Province. The DOE drafted the Northern Cape HRD Strategy (2006-2014), which reached its 5-year period and was due for review in 2015. The HRD Strategy had limitation in its implementation, since it was preceded by many policies that impact on HRD. Additionally, the funding model and the Monitoring and Evaluation (M&E) framework supporting the model were not well defined.

Since the relocation, various structures and systems were put in place to oversee implementation, ensure accountability and monitoring of skills development in the Province. The Northern Cape Provincial Skills Development Forum was established in April 2012 and used as a platform in the province to monitor, evaluate and report on the implementation of Northern Cape Human Resource Development initiatives in the province. The Northern Cape Human Resource Development Council (HRDC) was launched on 6 March 2014. The Council is the primary institution for Human Resource Development (HRD) coordination amongst Government Organized Business, Organised Labour and Community Representatives, Professional Bodies, Sector Education and Training Authorities (SETA's), Research and Academic representatives and other relevant stakeholders. The Council is led by the Premier.

The NC Province HRD Governance Structure below represents the structure that has been put in place in the province to safeguard the interests of all stakeholders whilst ensuring proper representation and regular engagements at various levels. The hierarchy is indicative of the levels at which various tasks of the strategy are performed culminating in a strategic overview at the NC HRD Council level:

Figure 44: NC Province HRD Governance Strategy



Source: Draft NC HRD Strategy

In an effort to advance skills development in the province, ensuring the presence of the SETA's in the Province became a key priority thus securing workplace-based education and training through Learnerships, Internships and Skills Programmes. The Provincial Inter-SETA was established as a subcommittee of the Provincial Skills Development Forum (PSDF) to coordinate SETA activities within the province.

To date, the following SETA's have established provincial offices:

- Health and Welfare SETA
- Local Government SETA
- Construction SETA
- Mer SETA
- W&R SETA

5.3.4 Learnerships and Internships and Skills Programmes offered in the province

For the period, a total of 2 348 Artisans qualified and 3 360 WIL placements were made by the SETA's supporting the province. A total of 2 220 Internships, 10 063 learnership and 3

255 bursary opportunities were created by stakeholders. These figures exclude the loans and bursaries awarded by the Northern Cape Premiers Trust Fund (reported in 5.3.5).

Table 28: Skills output (MSF 2014-2019)

YEAR	ARTISANS(qualified)	WIL	INTERNSHIPS	LEARNERSHIPS	BURSARIES
2014/15	100	509	144	2153	769
2015/16	578	1153	636	3343	463
2016/17	1200	873	784	1559	1239
2017/18	237	380	292	1015	435
2018/19	233	445	364	1993	348
TOTAL	2348	3360	2220	10 063	3255

Source: MTSF 2014-2019 POA Quarterly Reports, Source: HRD Council Report 2014-2019, OTP

5.3.4.1 Opportunities created by the Provincial Administration

The Office of the Premier has also established the HRD subcommittee to help coordinate the training and development initiatives of provincial departments. Below is an indication of training conducted for its officials within the provincial departments.

Table 29: Provincial Training and Development initiatives

	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19	Totals
Skills Programmes	1520	1086	3275	1512	2469	9862
Bursaries	1079	342	479	547	312	2759
Learnership (employed officials)			60	37	11	108
International programs	18		1		1	20
Mandatory						
CIP	199	301	897	578	324	2299
Gender Mainstreaming	72	81				153
Management Development	34				28	62
E-Disclosure	4					4
EMDP	20				60	80
Wamekekile	6					6
Leadership Development		41				41
SMS Development		10				10
PILLAR		16				16
Executive Development			2			2
AMDP					66	66
EPMDS					54	54
Totals	2934	1877	4713	2674	3324	15522

Source: Departmental Consolidate Quarterly Monitoring Report 2014-2019, OTP

5.3.5 Northern Cape Premier's Bursary Trust Fund

Access to higher education has since 2001 been supported and encouraged through the awarding of the Northern Cape Premier's Bursary Trust Fund (NCPTF). The number of matriculants provided with financial assistance in order to further their studies through institutions such as NIHE declined between 2004-2006 from 489 to 322 and the allocated budget by R7m to R5.6m. However, in 2007, the number of students and budget was more than doubled to 736 and R16.9 m respectively. In the 2018 academic year, NCPTF study loans/bursaries were awarded to 332 students at a cost of R 4,500,570. In this financial year the NCPTF partnered with HWSETA, TETA and CETA to offer study opportunities to students at various study fields.

5.4 Persistent challenges

The Northern Cape Provincial Government, within the context of the Outcome 5 imperatives, has identified key challenges, since the start of the journey in 1994. These are amongst others the following:

- Persons of 20 years and older have limited access to higher institutions due to lack of funding.
- Higher Education in the Province is a national competency resulting in the institutions not reporting in the province.
- Low throughput rates as the output and pass rate in institutions within the province are low.
- Lack of capacity both human and infrastructure in the CETC.
- Lack of research capacity and innovation.
- There is a general lack of research and innovation which impacts on the NDP targets, because the lack thereof makes it difficult to have accurate data on what is available and where the gaps are. Due to the lack of innovation there is a difficulty in coming up with creative and long lasting solutions to address unemployment, poverty and inequality.
- The lack of required skills for the NC economy limits its ability to grow the economy and key skills that drive the economy are not in place.
- Since the majority of the people do not have the requisite skills they will continue to do lower level jobs that are not paying adequately to improve their livelihoods and poverty levels will not be reduced.

- The province has faced numerous challenges some of which still prevail. This is evident particularly in the lack of employment opportunities and too many young people out- migrating to find work elsewhere.

5.5 Looking ahead

- The SPU is a degree-awarding institution that should align programs with the HRD Councils to address the skill shortages. The Skills Audit to be finalised to address the skills shortage and ensure alignment in terms of supply and demand.
- Skills development and education in the Province should be centralised in the Province.
- The infrastructure at TVET colleges should be expanded to accommodate the current demand of students.
- TVET and Community colleges to accelerate capacitation of lectures and staff.
- The Provincial HRD strategy to focus on youth development in the Province with a bias towards the skills required for the 4th IR and new market trends.



Chapter 6

AN EFFICIENT, COMPETITIVE AND RESPONSIVE ECONOMIC
INFRASTRUCTURE NETWORK



CHAPTER 6

6.1 Problem statement

6.1.1 What government inherited

The post 1994 elections government inherited a severe shortage of socio-economic infrastructure in the previously disadvantaged areas and many households did not have access to clean running water, electricity and proper roads (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 72). Economic infrastructure supported a resource-based growth trajectory, but a systematically enforced racial division excluded the majority of the South African population from access to economic opportunities.

6.1.2 Provincial infrastructure perspective

6.1.2.1 Overview

The Northern Cape has the smallest population recorded at 1.2 million in the 2016 Community Survey. As budget is allocated according to population size, the province receives the smallest portion of the National fiscus, irrespective of the vastness of the Province and the linkage between other provinces with high volumes of road users travelling through the Province. Due to the limited budget, the province is struggling to effectively maintain existing infrastructure, especially road infrastructure, not allowing major infrastructure development funded by government.

The Province has a high semi-skilled to low skilled workforce, lacking the technical and specialist skills to take advantage of the opportunities presented by the Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs) with a footprint in the Province. The Northern Cape and especially the capital city, Kimberley, has significantly high costs of doing business, making the Province unattractive for potential investors. The vastness of the province contributes to the high cost of doing business.

The National Development Plan (NDP) recognises the importance of maintaining and expanding the country's electricity, water, transport and telecommunications infrastructure in support of economic growth and development goals. Although the country has a

relatively good core network of national economic infrastructure, as stated in the NDP and MTSE, the challenge remains the maintenance and expansion of infrastructure to meet the requirement for fostering inclusive economic growth (OC6 Mid-Term review 2014 - 2016, 2017, p. 2). However, basic infrastructure services must be of such a standard that it supports industrial, commercial and household needs.

The Province is facing the challenges of limited government resources, inadequate investment, ineffective operation and maintenance of existing infrastructure and high levels of unemployment. The lack of a centralised infrastructure planning, implementation and monitoring platform had a huge economic impact on the Province. The Provincial Outcome 6 Implementation Forum was established, and serves as the platform to foster integrated planning and coordination of infrastructure development in the Province.

6.1.2.2 Access to electricity, water and sanitation

Inadequate investment in infrastructure development is hampering expansion, regardless of statistics indicating that the districts' basic infrastructure services in terms of access to water, electricity and sanitation, are better than the average for the country - except for the John Taolo Gaetsewe district, that is still very rural (Source: IHS Global Insight Regional eXplorer version 1046). The Northern Cape is also adversely affected by drought. The 2016 General Household Survey (StatsSA: Statistical release P318 - General Household Survey 2016, 2017, pp. 34-36) results indicated that 85,6% of households in the Province have access to electricity for cooking. The same 2016 survey also indicate that 96,1% of households in the Province had access to piped or tap water.

One natural resource that the province has an abundance of, is solar energy. This resource makes the province ideal for the implementation of renewable energy. Although the province has acquired 59 of 112 IPPPP in the country, the cost of electricity in the Province is still high, adding to the high costs of doing business and making the Province unattractive for investors. There is still potential for more renewable energy projects. However, the challenge remains the limited power stations to take up this power and feed it to the National Grid.

6.1.2.3 Public Works and Property Management

The Department of Roads and Public Works' mandate is to provide and maintain all provincial land, buildings and road infrastructure in an integrated, sustainable manner. EXCO resolution no: 039/2012(04) resolved that the Department of Roads and Public Works (DRPW) be endorsed as the only implementing agent for the province. The Provincial Immovable Asset Register has been inconsistent since the inception of the New Dispensation (1994) to date. Most of the Properties were registered as either: RSA, Model C Schools, Educational and Hospital Trustees or even in the name of the Municipality and other facilities constructed on Tribal land. The current portfolio of Northern Cape immovable assets is at different levels of functionality, condition and utilisation as identified through its recent (2018) Condition Assessment Programme.

6.1.2.4 Transport Infrastructure

The Department of Roads and Public Works of the Northern Cape Province (DRPW) is responsible for the establishment and maintenance of the provincial road network as set out in the Road Ordinance No. 19 of 1976. The DRPW is responsible for the maintenance of the provincial road network of approximately 27 190km of Paved and Unpaved roads. However, budget allocations address a very small percentage of maintenance, upgrade and rehabilitation need of the Northern Cape Province road network. The purpose of road infrastructure is to provide a balanced, equitable provincial road network that is accessible to all. With its limited funds, the Northern Cape has a huge backlog in terms of maintenance and development of road infrastructure. Road and transport infrastructure have a number of benefits with economic impact, including job creation and poverty alleviation, tourism opportunities, safety of road users, access to markets and attracting investment. Current road infrastructure, especially in the rural areas, disadvantages farmers who transport their products to markets and export channels. This also restrict access to other areas where there is potential for economic activities, e.g. tourism attractions. Transport by air is limited and rail transport needs upgrading in the Northern Cape. These two modes of transport are discussed under the Upington Cargo Hub project and SIPs relevant to rail transport.

6.1.2.5 Knowledge economy

The Northern Cape is largely neglected in terms of broadband technology, largely because of its rural, sparsely populated nature not being conducive for economic spin-offs and the

costs involved to connect and install connectivity lines. The current state of broadband is not meeting the needs of the province. In terms penetration, broadband is essential to bring about improved, effective and efficient service delivery. The Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA) was lobbied for the implementation of rural connectivity for citizens in Joe Morolong in JTG, providing 50MB free Wi-Fi daily, and the Thusong Service Centre in Van Zylsrus also benefitted from the project. The Province has also been identified as part of SIP 15 (Broadband) implementation in the Pixley ka Seme District. However, bid adjudication for appointment of the broadband roll-out service provider by the Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services (DTPS) was cancelled in terms of clause 32.4.1 (4) of the SITA Supply Chain, because none of the bidding companies met the technical requirements for phase one of the project.

6.2 The journey since 1994

6.2.1 Overview

The transformative legislation from RDP to the NDP incorporated infrastructure development and delivery programmes to provide access to modern and effective services such as electricity, water, telecommunications, transport, as well as water and sanitation (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 72). The National Electrification Program (NEP) was initially implemented between 1994 and 1999. In line with the Energy White Paper (1998), the NEP was redefined in 2001 as the Integrated National Electrification Program (INEP) to address the backlog of un-electrified households. The 2002 Road Infrastructure Strategic Framework for South Africa (RISFSA) improved the classification of roads and allocated more defined maintenance responsibilities. The Maritime Transport Policy (MTP), approved by Cabinet, aims to enhance certainty in the transport sector & logistics market (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 72). The National Infrastructure Plan (NIP) was adopted in 2012 by the South African Government, with the intention to transform the economy and create the much needed jobs and to improve basic service delivery. The New Growth Path, which aims to create 5 million new jobs by 2020, identifies infrastructure as a key job driver.

In response to the challenges related to the coordination of infrastructure development, Cabinet established the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC). The Infrastructure Development Act of 2014 provides for the existence of the PICC and its

structures. The PICC is responsible for the co-ordination and monitoring of the Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs).

6.2.2 Transformative Legislation and Policies

The various transformative policies (from RDP to NDP), introduced to strengthen the economy and create jobs, have specific bearing on provincial infrastructure as the catalyst for economic growth. Of these, the IPAP (2007) and NIP (2012) are of specific importance. The NIP identifies 18 Strategic Infrastructure Projects (SIPs), of which the following have specific relevance to the Northern Cape (DEDAT: Annual Report for the year ended 31 March 2018, 2018, p. 23). They are:

- SIP 3 - South-Eastern node and corridor development.
- SIP 5 - Saldanha – Northern Cape Development Corridor.
- SIP 8 - Renewable Energy.
- SIP10 - Electricity Transmission and Distribution for all.
- SIP 15 - Expanding access to communication technology.
- SIP 16 – The Square Kilometre Array (SKA).

Operation Phakisa (Hurry Up), launched on 19 July 2014, have two elements relevant to the Northern Cape. They are; the Mining Phakisa, meant to fast-track the mining industry to the benefit of industrialisation; and the Ocean's Economy, which include areas such as marine transport and manufacturing, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture and marine governance and protection services (DEDAT: Annual Report for the year ended 31 March 2018, 2018, p. 24).

The provincialised 9-point plan includes the following elements to boost the provincial economy:

- Revitalising agriculture and agro-processing,
- Advancing beneficiation and adding value to our mineral wealth,
- More effective implementation of a higher impact Industrial Policy Action Plan,
- Unlocking the potential of SMMEs, cooperatives, township and rural enterprises,
- Growing the Ocean Economy and Tourism,
- Stabilising the labour market,
- Encouraging private sector investment,

- Resolving the energy challenge,
- Reform, boost and diversify the economy:
 - Science and technology
 - Water and sanitation infrastructure
 - Transport infrastructure
 - Broadband rollout
 - State-owned entity reforms

Key policies that affects the local mining sector include (NC: Provincial Growth and Development Plan, 2018, p. 38):

- Broad-Based Black Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter for the South African Mining and Minerals Industry, 2017. The black industrialist programme was also introduced to ensure participation of black people in the economy at an industrial scale;
- Mineral and Petroleum Resource Development Amendment Bill;
- The revitalisation of the industrial parks in the townships and rural areas to bolster economic activity;
- The implementation of the Mineral Beneficiation Action Plan (MBAP) to advance local value addition in the domestic mineral value-chain.

In terms of provincial infrastructure, the PROMAN Public Works project management module was developed to manage project data in the Infrastructure Delivery Management System (IDMS) framework. PROMAN structures the role of officials within the User Departments and Implementing Agents. It also aligns infrastructure delivery key performance areas with Annual Performance targets and the SIPDM / IDMS. PROMAN is based on the Department's Immovable Assets Portfolio and allows for detailed project information to be directly linked to any asset on the register.

The Infrastructure Delivery Improvement Programme (IDIP) was initiated in 2004 to address challenges, risks and opportunities for the government in delivering on a large quantum of quality infrastructure. Through IDIP and in collaboration with National Treasury, the Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB) and the National Department of Public Works (NDPW), the Infrastructure Delivery Management System (IDMS) was created. All

government departments dealing with infrastructure are compelled to plan, implement and deliver infrastructure projects in accordance with the IDMS Toolkit. Other legislation and guiding frameworks include:

- Standard for Infrastructure Procurement and Delivery Management (SIPDM) – establishes a supply chain management system for infrastructure procurement and delivery management by organs of state which are subject to the Public Finance Management Act, the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, or those who implement infrastructure projects on behalf of another organ of state in terms of section 238 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.
- Independent Development Trust (IDT) - The IDT is a Schedule 2 Major Public Entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act (Act 1 of 1999) responsible for providing programme management support in the delivery of social infrastructure to Government and reports to the Minister of Public Works.
- Government Immovable Asset Management Act (Giama) - Outlines the sound management of immovable properties under Custodial control. GIAMA clarifies the responsibility of the user and custodian which is the department as delegated by the Premier of the Province.

6.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

6.3.1 National progress

Nationally, access to electricity was enhanced from 36% in 1994 to 86,15% to date. In terms of Renewable energy, 6 422 MW of electricity has been procured from 112 Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Programme (REIPPPs). By end of 2018, 3 772 MW of electricity from 62 Independent Power Producers have been connected to the grid. Access to basic water services was increased from 46 percent in 1994 to 78.7% in 2015. An estimated 5,15 million households have been served with safe and acceptable sanitation (VIP standard) by 2017. South Africa is one of two hosts countries of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA), and also designed and is building MeerKAT (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 73).

6.3.2 Access to water and sanitation (SIP15)

The Province is experiencing severe drought conditions and collaboration between with the Department of Water and Sanitation, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and the Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conversation (DENC) will be crucial in ensuring efficient water usage. Water and sanitation provision to households will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 9.

There is a number of bulk water supply projects in SIP 5, such as the Vaal Gamagara bulk water supply scheme that benefits six municipalities, 22 villages and will ensure the continued sustainability of iron ore and manganese mining operations between Kathu and Hotazel. Other bulk water projects in the Province include, the Namakwa Bulk Water Supply Scheme, Heuningvlei Bulk Water Supply Scheme and Kuruman Bulk Water Supply Scheme. Progress reports by 2019 indicated that all three bulk water projects are all completed. The grant projects from Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) include the following: Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant (17 RBIG projects), Municipal Water Infrastructure Grant (10 projects), Accelerated Community Infrastructure Grant (11 projects), Water Services Operating Subsidy Grant (3 projects), Bulk Eradication Programme (7 projects) and Rural infrastructure Grant (1 project). To enable distribution of purified bulk water for the use of mining, industrial and domestic sectors, the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) has partnered with Sedibeng water in the involvement of the Vaal Gamagara pipeline.

A summary of backlogs up to end of 2018, provided by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) is as follows; formal water supply backlog is 14 371 households while for informal it is at 12 938. Sanitation backlog for formal households is 35 661, while for informal households is 22 145.

6.3.3 Provision of electricity

6.3.3.1 Electricity supply (SIP 10)

Eskom plays an important role in ensuring the reliable generation, transmission and distribution of energy through SIPs 8, 9 and 10. In November 2015, Eskom reported the installation of two (2) Hydro Electric Power Stations, one at Vanderkloof dam with 240MW capacity and the other at Gariep dam with a 360MW capacity. Eskom also installed 132kV lines in Garona, and at Paulputs to generate an additional 200MW. Under SIP 5: Saldanha-

Northern Cape Development Corridor, Eskom is responsible for developments at Juno – Gromis, Upington and Nieuwehoop. The Juno- Gromis project aims to create an additional 1795MW capacity and has two phases:

- Phase 1 is the installation of the Gromis-Oranjemund;
- Phase 2: 220kV 110 km lines and Phase 2 the installation of 400/220kV 315 MVA Trfr at Gromis construct 270km 400KV.

The estimated completion date for this project is November 2020. Progress on other Eskom electrification projects in the province, are as follows:

Table 30: Eskom electrification projects in the NC

Project	Progress	Estimated completion
Upgrade existing 132/22KV substation (ELDORET).	Due to lack of funding, budget is not yet allocated.	Estimated completion is June 2020.
Upgrade existing 132/22KV substation (RIRIES).	Due to lack of funding, budget is not yet allocated.	Estimated completion set for 2019.
Build new 132/22KV substation (GAMOHAAN).	The appointed contractor has started with excavations, but further development is stymied by a land dispute.	The land dispute put the anticipated completion date of March 2020 at risk.
Build new 132/22KV substation (MOTHIBISTAD).	The project for building a new 132/22KV substation at Mothibistad is 60% complete.	The project will be completed in August 2019.
Build new 132KV line (MOFFAT).	Due to lack of funding, budget is not yet allocated.	Estimated completion is 2021.
Upgrade an existing 132/22KV substation (VALLEY).	Due to lack of funding, budget is not yet allocated.	Estimated completion is 2021.
Build a new 132KV switching station at (SEKGAME).	Due to lack of funding, budget is not yet allocated.	To be determined.

Source: DEDaT

6.3.3.2 Renewable energy (SIP 8)

The NC Province appointed Urban Econ to develop the Northern Cape Renewable Energy Strategy (NCRES) for the Province in 2012. The strategy had to take into consideration the natural energy endowments of the province (wind, solar, wave, hydro, biofuels and other clean sources). A thorough analysis of the relative strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats (SWOT) of each respective source and identification of viable ventures to be implemented to harvest such resources efficiently, had to be conducted. The NCRES was developed, but never adopted. The development of a new strategy was initiated in 2019.

The IPPPP Office reported by 30 September 2015, that the Province had procured 100% of the CSP and 65% of the Solar PV capacity in Bid window 1 – 4, contributing 2 097 MW to the National Grid. The Provincial contribution increased to 2 956 GWh by December 2015, of which 344 GWh produced by Wind and 2 392 by Solar PV projects. The Province secured 51 of the 102 REIPPPP projects in South Africa. The 51 procured REIPPPP projects were spread throughout the five districts:

Table 31: REIPPPP in the NC by 2018

District	Local Municipality	RE Technology	No. of Projects	Capacity
Frances Baard	Sol Plaatje	Solar PV	2	121 MW
John Taolo Gaetsewe	Gamagara	Solar PV	2	249 MW
		Solar CSP	1	
	Joe Morolong	Solar PV	2	80 MW
Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Solar PV Wind	6 2	483 MW
	Renosterberg	Solar PV	1	73 MW
	Siyancuma	Solar PV	3	85 MW
	Siyathemba	Solar PV Wind	3 2	408 MW
	Ubuntu	Solar PV Wind	1 1	80 MW
	Umsobomvu	Wind	1	79 MW
ZF Mgcawu	!kheis	Solar CSP	1	50 MW
	Dawid Kruiper	Solar PV	1	109 MW
		Solar CSP	1	

District	Local Municipality	RE Technology	No. of Projects	Capacity
	Kai !Garib	Solar PV	4	295 MW
		Solar CSP	1	
		Hydro	1	
	Kgatelopele	Solar PV	1	64 MW
	Tsantsabane	Solar PV	1	175 MW
		Solar CSP	1	
Namakwa	Hantam	Solar PV	1	351 MW
		Wind	2	
	Khâi-Ma	Solar PV	3	325 MW
		Solar CSP	2	
	Karoo-Hoogland	Wind	3	419 MW
	Nama Khoi	Wind	1	137 MW

Source: DEDAT

The number of projects procured by the province has since increased to 59 out of 112 IPP projects in the country, with a capacity of 3 623 MW with more than 19 projects already connected to the grid. According to the IPP office, the jobs created in Northern Cape up to September 2018 was as follows: BW3: 10 316 in construction, 665 in operations, BW3.5 and BW4, 2 704 and 44 in construction respectively. Around 100 unemployed youth were identified for skills development on roof top solar installation and house wiring in Pixley Ka Seme District. The Northern Cape Provincial Government hosted the Renewable Energy Conference from 23 to 24 August 2018.

6.3.4 Transport Infrastructure

The road network within the Northern Cape Province falls under the jurisdiction of three (3) authorities who are each responsible for a specific class of roads, namely:

- The South African National Roads Agency Limited (SANRAL), who are responsible for National roads that traverse the province;
- The Department of Roads and Public Works of the Northern Cape Province, who are responsible for the Provincial, or Trunk, Main, District and Minor roads within the province; and
- Twenty-six (26) Local Municipalities, who are responsible for all Municipal roads.

A total of 27 190.11km of the Northern Cape road network, of which only thirteen percent (13.3% or 3 617km) of the road network is paved, falls under the jurisdiction of the DRPW. The following table provides a breakdown of provincial roads per district (2019):

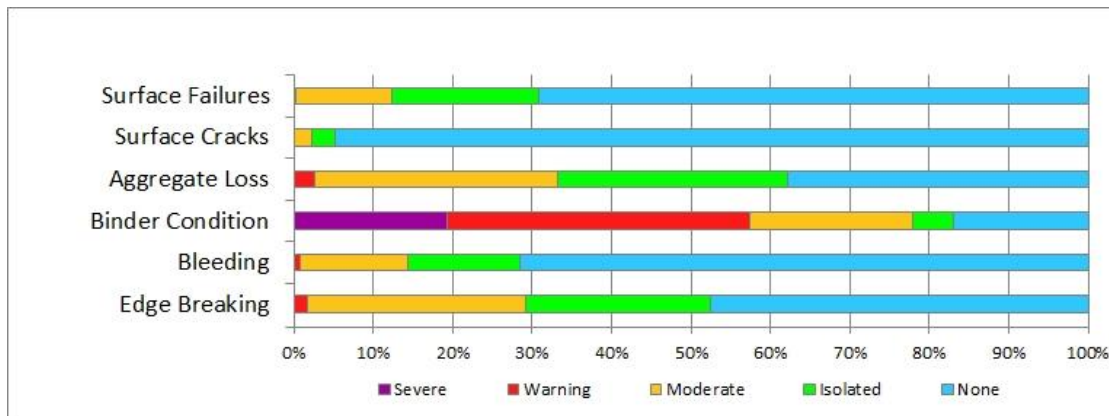
Table 32: Road Network per Road Type

District Municipality	Paved Roads		Unpaved Roads	Total	%
	Flexible	Segmented Block			
Frances Baard	399.30	2.46	1 760.95	2 162.71	8.0%
John Taolo Gaetsewe	613.12	1.24	2 118.45	2 732.81	10.1%
Namakwa	821.74	0.00	7 077.88	7 899.62	29.1%
Pixley ka Seme	1 313.56	2.15	8 029.20	9 344.91	34.4%
ZF Mgcawu	443.39	19.94	4 586.73	5 050.06	18.6%
Total	3 591.11	25.79	23 573.21	27 190.11	
%	13.2%	0.1%	86.7%		

Source: DRPW

The DRPW has developed and implemented a comprehensive set of management procedures that are used to monitor, maintain and improve the condition of the road infrastructure. The systems are updated on an annual basis and visual condition assessments on the Paved and Unpaved road networks were undertaken during 2017 and 2018. The visual condition assessments were processed and revealed that different road segments require different types of maintenance, varying from routine to heavy rehabilitation for current and future needs. The relative condition of the various types of distress on the Flexible road network that were detected during the visual assessments, were determined and the condition ratings per distress type are indicated in the figure below:

Figure 45: Distress Condition Ratings for Surfacing Defects for the period 2017-18



Source: DRPW

Monitoring of the rehabilitation/ maintenance of provincial roads were done using a consistent indicator approach since the 2014/19 MTSF. The following self-designed table, sourced from the DRPW Annual Reports, captures the total of provincial roads rehabilitated/ maintained since 2014.

Table 33: NC Roads rehabilitated since 2014

	Roads infrastructure total	2017/18	2016/17	2015/16	2014/15
Kilometres of gravel roads upgraded to surfaced roads	153,5	77	33	26,2	17,3
Square metres of surfaced roads rehabilitated	379 571,32	250 000,00	88 800,00	40 700,00	71,32
Square meters of surfaced roads resealed	8 622 217,12	2 253 478,00	3 098 620,00	1 778 005,00	1 492 114,12
Kilometres of gravel roads re-gravelled	1 503,01	388,67	420,91	352,13	341,3
Square meters of blacktop patching	220 306,12	42 246,11	57 056,92	48 026,68	72 976,41
Kilometres of gravel roads bladed	277 026,39	73 485,23	68 406,65	66 124,56	69 009,95

Source: DRPW Annual Reports

6.3.5 Knowledge Economy (SIP15)

A comprehensive overview of ICT in the province is presented in chapter 15 on the 4th Industrial Revolution. Activities reported on under Outcome 6, includes hackathons, coding and Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) training sessions. From 2014/15 to 2017/18, e-skills development initiatives implemented, totalled 29. A Memorandum of Understanding between DEDaT and Sol Plaatje Municipality (SPM) for the Wi-Fi New Venture Creation (NVC) programme is being reviewed.

With regard to Education Phakisa, a provincial team was established to determine the status of ICT in education and the estimated costs for the Province. The initiatives by the Department of Basic Education include Vodacom Roll – out of 6 Teacher Development centres, Vodacom and MTN Lab and Tablet roll out for Grade 12 learners. The Wi-Fi and tablets project is implemented in 138 schools across the districts as follows; 42 Francis Baard, 21 ZFM Mgcawu, 38 John Taolo Gaetsewe, 17 Namakwa and 20 Pixley Ka Seme. The number of schools with a computer and software for administration is 573 and number of schools with access to ICT facility for teaching and learning is 202 in terms of the Sector Implementation Plan of E-Education. The five key stones of ICT integration into learning and teaching include; Telematics, Internet Broadcast Province (IBP), Computers 4 Kids, Edukite, HeyScience and HeyMaths.

The Carnarvon High School has been reserved to serve as a centre for Science Excellence. The school hostel has been renovated by NCDOE (R3.7 million) to accommodate learners from the surrounding area. Mathematics and Science teachers were recruited through TEACHSA and these subjects are already producing better results.

6.3.6 Square Kilometre Array (SIP 15)

The history of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) began in September 1993, when the International Union of Radio Science (URSI) established the Large Telescope Working Group to begin a worldwide effort to develop the scientific goals and technical specifications for a next generation radio observatory. In May 2012, the Members of the SKA Organisation announced that the SKA telescope would be split over Africa and Australia, with a major share of the telescope destined to be built in South Africa. This generated huge tourism interest in the project. However, as a result of a requirement of radio silence, visitors cannot be accommodated where the telescopes are, hence the need evolved to establish an exploratorium in Carnarvon for the project. The project will link the public and specialist interest in science to the SKA, which is a Strategic Infrastructure Project 16 (SIP16). It is envisaged that Carnarvon Science Visitor Centre would have the following components:

- Links with indigenous peoples within the immediate region.
- Digital links with other similar centres around the world. Lecture rooms with computers and digital link-up. Auditorium for small meetings and seminars.

Astronomy links to other scientific interests. Exhibition space for temporary exhibitions.

- Visitor information office / reception desk. SKA Tier 3 Big Data Storage facility.
- Working space for SKA scientists.
- Outdoor space for small events.
- Walking trail to Schietfontein, including establishment of community square.

In terms of the Carnarvon Science Visitors Centre, the designs refinements and implementation plan, which include the Project schedules, Project risks and Projects costing approximately R61m, are ongoing. The NC Province will be responsible for the provision of the land as well all the legal requirements for the registration thereof and transfer to the legal entity, namely the National Research Foundation.

The road construction (80km to Carnarvon) is 100% complete and the SKA benefits to the local and surrounding communities amounted to R136m on local Service Providers and Contractors, R162m on salaries and R1m in Training. Furthermore, the SKA SA Project Office has completed the erection of all the 64 MeerKAT Telescope dishes, which was launched on the 13th July 2018, by the Deputy President of the Republic, The Honourable David Mabuza.

As of 2019, the South African Radio Astronomy Observatory (SARAO) issued Block Grant to universities for studies towards a BSc in Astronomy and Electrical and Computer engineering. The universities receive applications, adjudicate and award bursaries. Of particular interest to the Northern Cape Province (Carnarvon), is that ten students have been awarded bursaries for 2019 for various Bachelor's Degree studies - four are at University of Free State (UFS), two are at Sol Plaatje University (SPU), two are at University of Western Cape (UWC), one is at University of Pretoria (UP) and another one at North West University (NWU). Artisan Training, at the Klerefontein training facility, is still taking place.

6.3.7 South-Eastern node and corridor development (SIP 3)

This project entails the Manganese rail line upgrade from Hotazel to Ngqura. Progress up to the end of 2018, was as follows:

- Rail Phase 1: Partial doubling of Kimberley-De Aar section was completed.
- Level crossing upgrades are complete, with final punching taking place.

- The pedestrian bridge is still under construction, with completion anticipated in 2019.
- Rail Phase 2: Two new traction stations were planned (Witloop and Vlermuistlaagte Traction stations to be completed in 2019).
- The FEL2 pre-feasibility study is complete while FEL3 bankable feasibility study and the design phase is temporarily on hold.

6.3.8 Key Infrastructure Projects

The Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison (DTSL) is responsible with overseeing and monitoring the development of transport terminals and to report on progress on the coordination of four key transport infrastructure projects in the Province, namely the De Aar Freight/Logistics Hub (warehouse), the Boegoe Bay Deep Sea Port, the Douglas Belmont Branch line upgrade and the Upington Cargo Hub. The Provincial Land Transport Infrastructure Framework for the NC DTSL had been finalised (April 2016). A project strategy and action plan for reliable feasibility studies was developed by the Transactional Advisor. The De Aar Freight/ Logistic Hub and Boegoe Bay Deep Sea Port were registered as PPP for Treasury Approval and gazetted.

6.3.8.1 Boegoe Bay Deep Sea Port

This project development project aims to rehabilitate and redevelop the harbour, turning it into a serviceable port. Boegoe Bay Deep Sea Port will cost R4.2 billion (seaside construction) and R800 million (landside construction) for phase 1 - estimated to create 10 000 jobs. The rail from Upington to Boegoe Bay will cost R12,6 billion and will create 15 000 jobs. The Development Bank of South Africa (DBSA) offered to fund 50% of total value, with expectation that the Provincial Government will raise the remaining 50%. This requires that the Province reprioritise the provincial budget or look for investors to allow the development to proceed, enabling the creation of 100 000 jobs. Twenty-five million (R25m) has been approved by Transnet National Ports Authority and funds will be transferred to National Treasury. The following projects are to be prioritised; harbour cleaning, fish factory upgrade, revetment and jetty rehab and a Mariculture industrial park. The expectation is that a potential income of R2 149 billion for the Port could be earned per annum, with a net profit of R713 million per annum. By December 2018, the Transactional Advisors has

submitted the Phase 2A report. Phase 2B has started, to be completed by the end of March 2019.

6.3.8.2 De Aar Freight/Logistics Hub (Warehouse)

The purpose of this project is to create a logistics hub that requires the resuscitation of parts of the transport and logistics infrastructure within the region. The rationale for the choice of De Aar is that the town is located on the rail junction intersecting the Cape Corridor (Johannesburg to Cape Town), the Namibian Corridor (Gauteng to Namibia) and also rail access to the ports of Ngqura and Port Elizabeth (NC: 20-year review, 2014, p. 190). The De Aar Freight Logistics Hub will comprise of a container terminal, agricultural warehouse and stage facility, as well as a vehicle storage yard. Agriculture, general cargo and vehicles from main commodity types will be accommodated at the hub. DTSL has submitted a feasibility study to Government Technical Advisory Centre (GTAC) for treasury approval. National Treasury, however, requires responses to aspects of value for money, affordability and risk transfer, as well as clarification on the acquisition/ lease of land. The Request for Quotation (RFQ) was completed and will be presented to possible investors. Initially, Transnet was willing to donate land for this project, but that process has been stalling. The Emthanjeni local municipality has indicated their willingness to assist with provision of land.

6.3.8.3 Douglas Belmont Branch line

The revitalisation of the Belmont/Douglas branch line will result not only in the expansion of infrastructure, but will bring about economic growth, particularly for the agricultural sector. This branch line is anticipated to contribute positively to increasing rail freight volumes, improve efficiencies and safety in the region, contribute to food security and the resuscitation of small and rural towns (NC: 20-year review, 2014, p. 190). Submission of final bid documents closed on the 27th of May 2015, but Transnet could not agree on a suitable operator. Hence, the process has been on hold. The Griekwaland-Wes Kooperasie (GWK), expressed interest in the Branch Line Project and would also like to have input in the Commodity Mix document.

6.3.8.4 Upington Cargo Hub

This project aims to promote the airport and air services development in the Northern Cape. A feasibility study, which was concluded in 2006, determined that Upington is ideally suited to serve as a cargo hub and it has the following attractive benefits for users (NC: 20-year review, 2014, p. 190):

- Less congestion.
- Quicker airport turn-around times.
- Potential for payload factors.
- Lower handling and airport charges.

The Upington Cargo Hub business plan needs to be reconsidered as it is outdated. The project requires 70ha of earmarked land, a designated area for aircraft maintenance and storage services must be established. The project also still needs funding and in this regard, engagement between Province and the Chinese province of Hunan is underway. The project has the support from Cargo plane operators like SAA Cargo and SA Airlink. It is critical to get Airports Company South Africa (ACCSA) on board. There is significant opportunity to transport salt and agricultural commodities, dependent on amendment of railway policies. A Technical Committee has been established and during the fourth quarter of 2018, a meeting was held with the Upington SEZ Committee to plot a way forward including the land issue and approval of the (Request for Quotation) RFQ.

6.3.9 Kathu Industrial Park (KIP)

The KIP development will comprise of:

- A Central hub with various facilities and an infrastructure network supporting management structures, e.g. Conference facilities, an Auditorium, a Security office, visitors parking, a Restaurant and other social facilities.
- A central logistics facility.
- A business incubation and training centre.
- Customised warehouses and industrial buildings.

IDC (SIP 5 coordinator) for the Kathu Industrial Supplier Park (KIP) reported that debt and equity funding have been secured, while the appointment of the project manager has been approved and the main responsibilities are to operationalise Kathu Industrial Park and set

up development phase (design, procurement and construction). Shareholder agreement and final structure are being finalised in order to set up the operating company.

6.4 Persistent challenges

Nationally, development in South Africa is hampered by attitude and culture problems such as not valuing infrastructure, poor accountability, non-payment for services, new-infrastructure syndrome, vandalism, theft, pollution, wastage and abuse, as well as a general culture of inadequate operation and maintenance (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 74). The Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP) is faced with critical challenges in meeting its targets, including (1) Moving targets; (2) Increasing costs, and; (3) Delivery capacity. The road network challenge is the huge backlog in maintenance and rehabilitation. Lack of access and transformation; high cost of communication including very high data prices, unaffordability of devices and continued low levels of internet penetration, remain major factors limiting access to ICT. Reporting on progress with regards to national projects in the province remains problematic, due infrequent and inconsistent reporting by national departments and other entities.

There has been slow progress in terms of the two of the four key infrastructure projects, that is, the De Aar logistics hub and Boegoe Bay port development of which the Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison is responsible for. Even though there has not been any movement regarding the Upington Cargo Hub and Douglas Belmont Branch Line, there are ongoing talks to get the two critical projects off the ground.

The slow progress with regards to the location of the Manganese smelter, either in Eastern Cape or Northern Cape, stalls any possible planning for the province. Several recommendations for political intervention has already been put forward to the clusters. It is estimated that through the implementation of SIPs 3 and 5, the projected increased Manganese production indicated, will result in a 144% increase in volume required to be transported by 2019, which will have a detrimental effect on the Northern Cape roads, as well the SIP 8: Renewable Energy projects.

The Northern Cape have the potential to host more renewable energy projects and feed this electricity to the national grid, but the limited power stations to take up the power, must be

addressed. The water and sanitation and electrification projects are faced with challenges of funding, misuse of funds as well as slow progress due to vacant posts. SIP17: The upgrade of Main Road (MR) 887 to McCarthy's Rest Border post with Botswana, and the upgrade of the Road between Pofadder and Onseepkans, Border Post with Namibia – remained unfunded since inception of the SIP. SIP15 rollout of broadband in the Pixley Ka Seme district is hampered because none of the bidding companies met the technical requirements for phase one of the project.

6.5 Looking ahead

Nationally, there is a drive to ensure reliable generation, funding and distribution of energy and to increase access to electricity; expand and maintain existing transport infrastructure; increase investment in infrastructure projects; maintain and supply the availability of bulk water resources; modernize, and increase access and affordability of information and communications infrastructure including fast tracking in rollout of broadband; eliminate all legislative and policy barriers to investment and inclusive economic growth (DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation, 2019, p. 75).

The Skills for SIPs initiatives, which addresses the challenge of shortages for certain critical skills for the implementation of the National Infrastructure Plan's Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs), should be supported continuously. Skills transfer from outsourced projects, also need attention. The protocol between the Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) and OTP for the Province is still to be signed. Thereafter, the Province must establish the SIPS Skills committee. The NC DEDaT has a number of skills development initiatives to address the level of skills in the Province. It is important that these skills are developed in areas where they are needed. The Knowledge Economy and Innovation sub-programme must continue to host e-skills development initiatives, such as Hackathon, to develop strong skills base for the Northern Cape to be proficient and globally competitive in knowledge economy.

The establishment of the Agri-Parks in each of the five districts will only address the challenge of access to markets experienced by rural farmers. It will consist of three components, namely; (i) The Farmer Production Support Unit (FPSU) responsible for rural small-holder farmers outreach and capacity building unit that links with farmers and

markets; (ii) the Agri-hub that serve as a production, equipment hire, processing, packaging, logistics, innovation and training unit; and (iii) the Rural Urban Market Centre (RUMC) linking and contracting rural, urban and international markets through contracts, serves as a holding-facility, and provides market intelligence and information feedback, to the Agri-hub and the Farmer Production Support Unit (FPSU), by means of trending Information and communication technologies.

The general infrastructure development must be accelerated so that the communities will realise the benefits of basic services. The viability of the four key infrastructure projects, especially the Upington Cargo Hub and Douglas Belmont Branch Line, should be evaluated. Furthermore, the political intervention is needed to ensure that the Manganese smelter project is located in the Northern Cape Province. Specific areas of focus will be on further industrialisation and investment, the 4th Industrial Revolution, Renewable energy and the Ocean's Economy.



Chapter 7

A VIBRANT, EQUITABLE, SUSTAINABLE RURAL COMMUNITIES
CONTRIBUTING TOWARDS FOOD SECURITY FOR ALL



CHAPTER 7

7.1 Problem statement

Apartheid policies forced millions of black South Africans into overcrowded and impoverished reserves, homelands and townships. In addition, capital-intensive agricultural policies led to the large-scale eviction of farm dwellers from their land and homes. This has resulted in the marginalisation of the poor with many rural areas and households trapped in a vicious cycle of poverty. The attainment of democracy presented government with twin challenges: significant institutional transformation and at the same time introducing new policies in line with the democratic constitution. Furthermore, the government had to deal with the legacy of apartheid within South Africa, whilst at the same time facing new challenges of integrating the country in a rapidly changing global environment (Northern Cape Provincial Administration, 2017).

Since 1994, the state had deliberately set out to systematically dismantle apartheid's social relations and create a democratic society based on the principles of equity, non-racialism and non-sexism. Following the new democratic dispensation, the then apartheid Cape Province was split up to form the new Northern Cape, Eastern Cape and Western Cape Provinces. The province was allocated the Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute (GADI) situated in Middelburg (Eastern Cape Province, as the province was the only one which did not have an institute of this kind. Since the institute was situated in the Eastern Cape, challenges arose as to who should really have control over it. The result was that on the 1 April 2000 Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute was transferred back to the then National Department of Agriculture (NDA), currently known as the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries. This meant that the province and the department in particular, lost approximately R15 million from its budget, together with the associated expertise in terms of research, infrastructure and the development agricultural offices.

On this date (1 April 2000), the two portfolios, that is the former Department of Agriculture and Land reform and the former Department of Nature Conservation were amalgamated into one department as the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform, Environment and Conservation until 2002/03. Towards the 3rd administration, the department was reconfigured back to Department Agriculture and Land Reform as per the Strategic Plan

2005 – 2010 of the department. National government has become much more focused on the needs of rural areas since 2009, and a National champion for rural development has been created- the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DPME: 20-Year Review 1994 - 2014 - Background Paper : Rural Transformation, 2014, p. 16). Moving from the 3rd administration to the 4th government administration, the department was again reconfigured to Department Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development to address these new priorities (SOPA, June 2009).

A key priority for the democratic government was therefore to end the marginalisation of impoverished rural people in the former homelands, improve the lives of farmworkers and restore people's dignity through land reform, and do so in a situation of very weak rural institutions. Land and agrarian reform thus became a single issue of note, capable of driving transformation in a democratic developmental state (Another Countryside? Policy Options for Land and Agrarian Reform in South Africa., 2009). Government prioritised land restitution, tenure reform and land redistribution as major policy instruments used for alleviating asset poverty and transforming the rural spaces (The Presidency: Towards a 10 year review, 2003). Government then committed itself to ensuring that the country develops sustainable rural communities through a major focus on agrarian reform and improving household access to food, rural services and rural jobs. In terms of agrarian reform, the smallholder farmers would be strengthened and their numbers increased, and rural households would produce their own food (DPME: 20-Year Review 1994 - 2014 - Background Paper : Rural Transformation, 2014).

7.2 The journey since 1994

7.2.1 Overview

There has been significant transformative legislation, policies and plans, such as the White Paper on Reconstruction and Development of 1994, emerging in response to the bitter history characterised by colonialism, racism, apartheid, sexism and repressive labour policies and advocated for eliminating hunger, providing land, access to safe water and sanitation for all, implementation of a fundamental land reform programme that is demand driven, and which aim to supply residential and productive land to the poorest section of the rural population and aspirant farmers. Additionally, it would serve the purpose to raise income and productivity and encourage the use of land for agricultural purposes. Land

ownership patterns in South Africa remain disproportionate to the population distribution and the lack of significant transformation in land ownership threatened social cohesion, stability and economic development.

Post 1994, the new dispensation inherited an agricultural sector with dualistic system represented by commercial farmers, who were actively engaged in the formal market, and challenging small and emerging farmers, who are at the fringes of the formal marketing channel. Production and marketing of agricultural produce by commercial farmers was mostly done through a well-organized system with capital resources, infrastructure, institutions, legal frameworks and markets. Emerging small farmers, who have historically never been commercialized, are faced by a wide variety of problems including, inadequate infrastructure; low production rates and high mortalities of livestock; unavailability to research findings; lack in skills and information among rural farmers; quality breeding material not available for emerging producers and no access to markets placing them at a competitive disadvantage.

7.2.2 Legislation and Policies

- The Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994 aimed at addressing the emotive land question. This Act gave effects to land claims by dispossessed communities as a result of the past racially discriminatory laws and practices after 19 June 1913.
- The Livestock Disease Control Act, 1994 – aimed at monitoring and control of livestock diseases and to provide compensation for losses caused by certain livestock diseases.
- The Act is aimed at monitoring and control of livestock diseases and to provide compensation for losses caused by certain livestock diseases.
- Marketing Agricultural Products Act, 1996 to set up the National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC).
- Communal Property Associations (CPA) Act, 1996, provided a means through which groups of people can own land collectively (DLA, 1997).
- Land Reform Act, 1997 (Act 3 of 1997).
- The Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 aimed to promote sustainable agrarian reform and development of agricultural resources, strengthen

existing agricultural financial services, promoting a competitive and profitable agricultural sector.

- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act No 57 of 2002) provided for an integrated and coordinated disaster risk management policy, focusing on preventing or reducing the risk of disasters, mitigating the severity of disasters, preparedness, rapid and effective response to disasters, and post disaster recovery.
- Northern Cape Land Administration Act, 2003.
- Communal Land Rights Act, 2004.
- In 2004, the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP) was introduced for smallholder development and in 2009 the Department of Rural development and Land reform was introduced as a champion for rural transformation.
- Legislation to protect farmworkers from unfair evictions and accelerating land reform, such as the Rural Development Policy Framework (2013).
- Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 seeking to bridge the racial divide in spatial terms and enabling transformation of the settlement patterns in a manner that gives effect to the key constitutional provisions through the National Spatial Development Framework as a basis to guide land use planning.
- The Property Valuation Act of 2014 will help government expropriate farms under claims as working entities for less than market value, and
- the draft Expropriation Bill, 2019 aims to provide for the expropriation of property for public purpose or in the public interest.

7.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

The National Development Plan (NDP) 2030 vision is rural areas which are spatially, socially and economically well integrated – across municipal, district, provincial and regional boundaries – where residents have economic growth, food security and jobs as a result of agrarian transformation and infrastructure development programmes, and have improved access to basic services, healthcare and quality education.

7.3.1 Land and Agrarian reform

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) provides for cooperative government and intergovernmental relations amongst the national, provincial and local spheres of government and redresses the imbalances of the past and to ensure that there is

equity in the application of spatial development planning and land use management systems. This transformation objective must meet the need for inclusivity, mobility and access, economic development that drives local and national growth prospects and transforms space, in a manner that is socially and environmentally sustainable. To this end, the following progress has been made in terms of implementation of SPLUMA at Local Government – The province is at 100% SPLUMA ready with 8 tribunals and all the Municipal Planning Tribunals are already operational dealing with new development applications in terms of the SPLUMA.

7.3.1.1 Land Redistribution

Land Reform remains central towards the resolution of the race, gender and class inequalities in South Africa, as resolved at the 52nd National Conference of the African National Congress (December 2007). One of the programmes driving the transformation of the agricultural sector is the Land Reform Programme. According to the Northern Cape Province Fifteen-year Review (Northern Cape Provincial Administration, 2009), it was recorded that from 1994 to December 2008, the Northern Cape Provincial Land Reform Office (NCPLRO) has delivered more than 1 061 638Ha of land to a total of 9 250 beneficiaries through the Land Redistribution programmes, with hectares increasing each term and the following table indicates land delivery per district per five year terms as per the NC 15 Year Review (Northern Cape Provincial Administration, 2009, p. 48).

Table 34: Land delivery through redistribution per district per five year term (NC Province 15 year review, March 2009, page 48)

1994/1999		
YEAR	HECTARES	BENEFICIARIES
1994/1999	86 585	2 019
1999-2004	240 063	1 820
2004- 2008	734 990	5 411
TOTAL	1 061 638	9 250

Source: (Northern Cape Province 15-Year Review, 2009)

The Department Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) published an Annual statistical report, March 2018, indicating the following progress on land reform. Northern Cape recorded the lowest number of beneficiaries with 329 for the period under review and the females and youth consistently decreasing from 2009/10 to 2012/13.

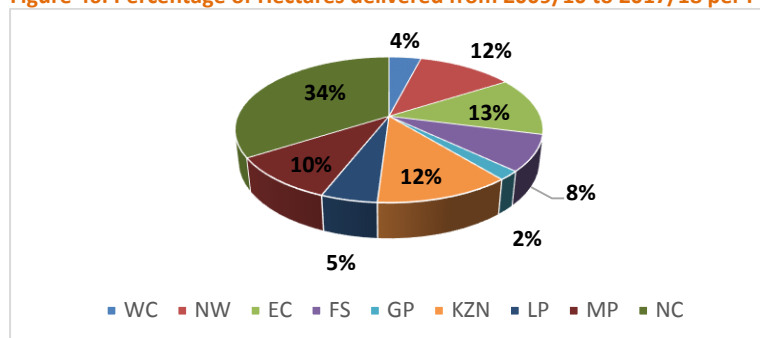
Table 35: Number of projects, beneficiaries and hectares distributed from 2009/10 to 2017/18 in the Northern Cape (DRDLR, 31 March 2018)

Year	Hectares	Beneficiaries	Projects	Disability	Females	Youth
2009-2010	56827,3	98	14	2	39	41
2010-2011	165249,5	91	28	1	30	30
2011-2012	148392,2	26	19	0	2	4
2012-2013	36690,8	6	10	0	2	2
2013-2014	39397	10	8	0	4	2
SUB TOTAL	446 556,8	231	79	3	77	79
2014-2015	59031,3	28	14	1	3	5
2015-2016	46916,3	47	13	0	0	2
2016-2017	36652	11	11	0	0	6
2017-2018	34037,2	12	7	0	2	0
SUB TOTAL	176 636,8	98	45	1	5	13
TOTAL	623 193,6	329	124	4	82	92

Source: (DRDLR: Annual Statistical Report for Selected Service Delivery Programmes, 2018)

The Northern Cape transferred the highest number of hectares (623 193, 6 Ha) followed by Eastern Cape with 235 590Ha, and the lowest land transferred is Gauteng with 27 754Ha.

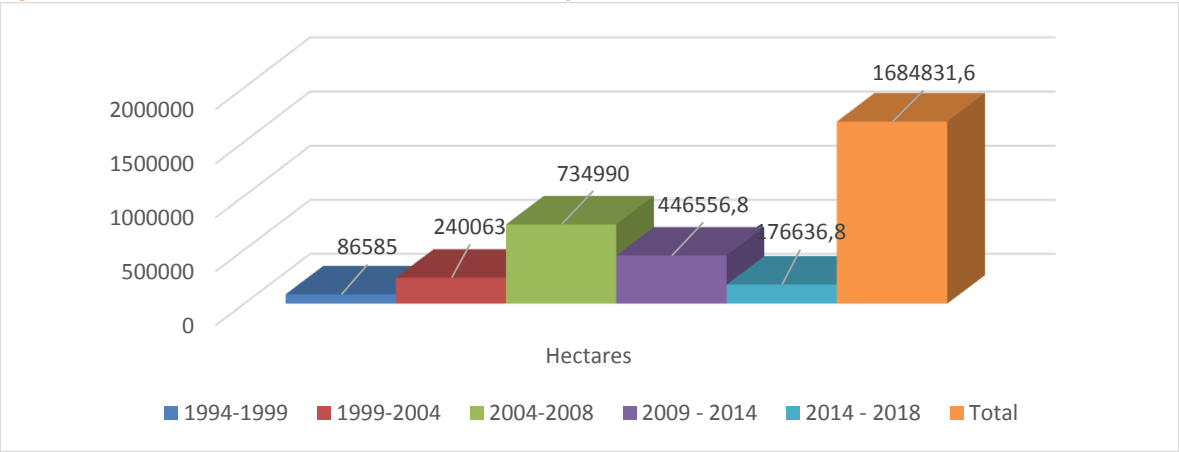
Figure 46: Percentage of Hectares delivered from 2009/10 to 2017/18 per Province (DRDLR, 31 March 2018)



Source: (DRDLR: Annual Statistical Report for Selected Service Delivery Programmes, 2018)

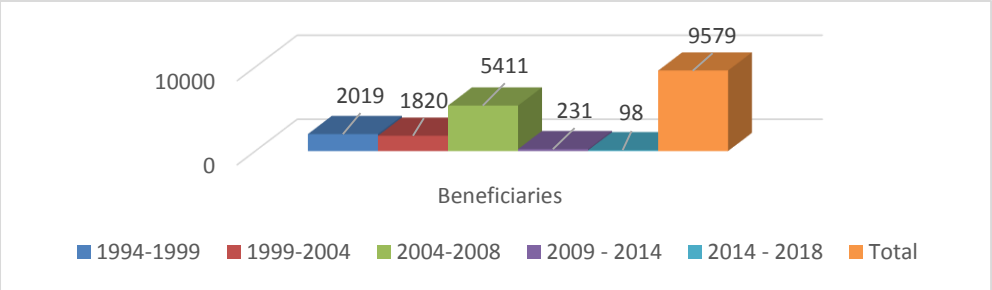
As per the figures below, it is clear that the number of hectares increased each term from 1994 to 2008, but then decreased in each term thereafter from 2009 to 2017/18. A Total of 1 684 831,6 Hectares of land has been transferred to a total of 9 579 beneficiaries.

Figure 47: Land distributed from 1994 in the Northern Cape Province



Source: Information compiled from two sources (DRDLR: Annual Statistical Report for Selected Service Delivery Programmes, 2018), (Northern Cape Province 15-Year Review, 2009)

Figure 48: Beneficiaries of Land distribution per five year term from 1994 - 2017/18

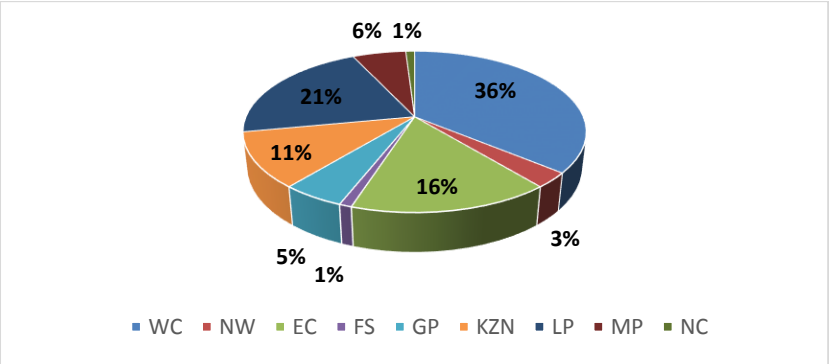


Source: This was compiled by using the information in two sources namely, (DRDLR: Annual Statistical Report for Selected Service Delivery Programmes, 2018), (Northern Cape Province 15-Year Review, 2009)

7.3.1.2 Land Restitution

In terms of Land Restitution, the following progress have been reported as per the DRDLR Annual statistic report, 2018. The Western Cape and Limpopo had the highest percentage of claims settled from 2009/10 to 2017/18, accounting for 36% and 21% respectively, and the lowest is the Free State and Northern Cape with each accounting for 1%.

Figure 49: Percentage claims settled per province from 2009/10 to 2017/18



Source: (DRDLR: Annual Statistical Report for Selected Service Delivery Programmes, 2018)

Land Restitution programme, although it has had a small measure of success, has made a significant contribution in addressing skewed land ownership through the restoration of land to the dispossessed. In the Northern Cape, from 1994 – 2008, around 2 883 land claims were lodged with the Land Claims commission, of which the majority was urban (2 040 claims) with the rural claims numbering 843. Whilst in the rural claims most have opted for land restoration, the majority of urban claimants had opted for financial compensation. During the same time period, that is 1994 – 2008, a total of 552 084 hectares have been transferred to 27 739 beneficiaries in the province at a total cost of R195,5 million (Northern Cape Province 15-Year Review, 2009, p. 49). From 2009/10 to 2017/18, March 2018, 56 claims were approved for 37 963 beneficiaries amounting to 202 283 hectares (DRDLR: Annual Statistical Report for Selected Service Delivery Programmes, 2018, pp. 2-18). For the period 1994 to 31 March 2018, 2 939 land claims were approved to a total of 65 702 beneficiaries amounting to 754 367 hectares of land as depicted in the table below.

Table 36: Land Restitution progress in the Northern Cape from 1994 - 2018 as compiled from the NC 15 year review report and the DRDLR Annual statistical report 2018

Year	Claims settled	Beneficiaries	Households	Female headed households	Hectares acquired
1994 – 2008 as per the NC Province 15-year review, page 49)	2883	27 739			552 084
2009-2010	3	3075	89	46	67 724
2010-2011	13	2658	1136	719	238
2011-2012	0	3626	672	411	0
2012-2013	3	8691	1576	712	8 089
2013-2014	4	3726	767	276	6 391
2014-2015	9	5482	1155	330	38 006
2015-2016	8	3483	609	174	37 295
2016-2017	14	6563	1067	440	43 170
2017-2018	2	659	31	10	1 370
Sub-Total (2009 – 2018)	56	37963	7102	3118	202 283
TOTAL	2939	65 702			754 367

Source: (DRDLR: Annual Statistical Report for Selected Service Delivery Programmes, 2018), (Northern Cape Province 15-Year Review, 2009)

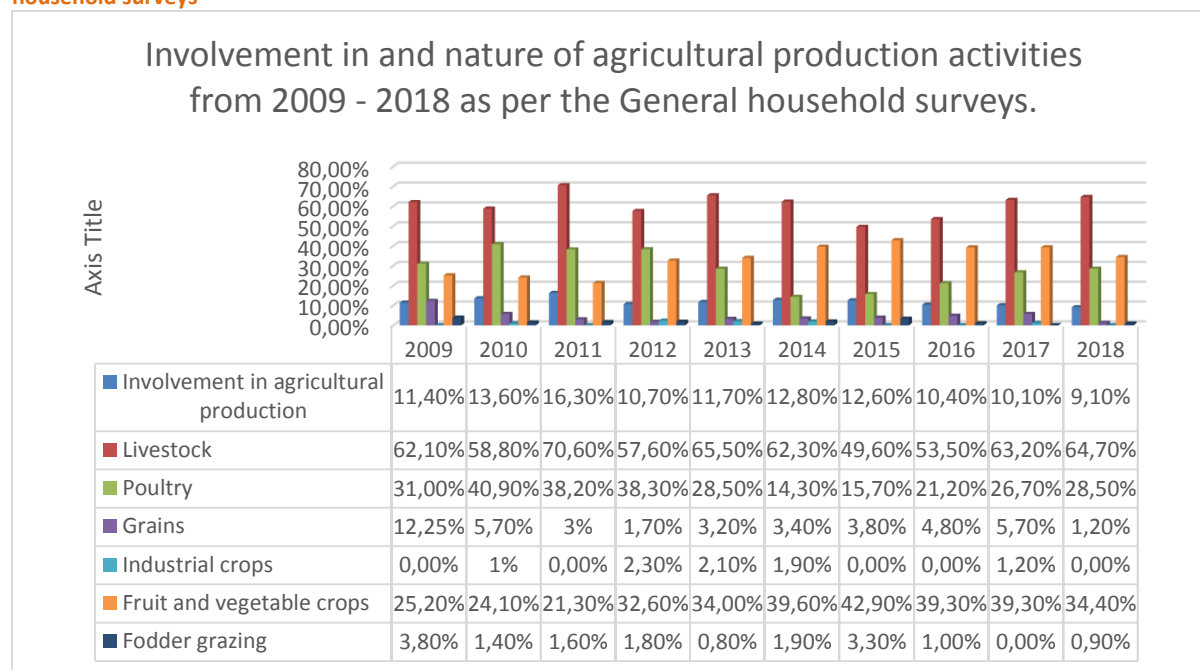
7.3.2 Food security and the nutrition situation

Food insecurity has emerged as a global crisis following the global economic meltdown. According to the 2004 report of the Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) on the state of food insecurity in the world, more than 204 million people living in countries of sub-Saharan

Africa, including South Africa, are undernourished. Poverty and food insecurity are some of the legacies of race-based socio-economic development practices that have been enforced throughout history. However, the right to food is a basic human right that is entrenched in the Constitution. According to the Millennium Development Goal 1 report (2013), it is indicated that individuals experiencing hunger in the Northern Cape remained consistent around 19% from 2003 to 2006, then decreasing to 13% in 2008, but increased to 30% in 2010/11 (Millennium Development Goal 1 report, 2013, p. 43), as noted in chapter 13 of this review. Supporting the increasing trend on experiencing hunger, the General Household Surveys from 2009 to 2018, indicates that the adequate access of food decreased from 80% in 2009 to 67,7% in 2018.

An average of 12% of the Northern Cape households are involved in agricultural production. The figure below indicates the household involvement and nature of agricultural production activities from 2009 to 2018. Of those households involved in agriculture in the NC, most engage in livestock farming, followed by fruit and vegetable crop farming, (increasing from 2011 to 2015), poultry decreasing from 2010 to 2014 and increasing again towards 2018), grains, (stabilizing between 2013 to 2015 with slight increase to 2017) and fodder grazing (decreasing from 2015 to 2017, severely affected by the drought).

Figure 50: Households involved in and nature of agricultural production activities from 2009 - 2018 as per the General household surveys



Source: This figure was compiled utilizing the General household surveys (2009 -2018)

Northern Cape was one of the provinces that received significant agricultural-related support by Government, with 37,3% of agricultural households receiving support in 2009 and 2010, decreasing to 21,7% in 2012 and 12,9% in 2015. Percentage of agricultural-related support increased again to 21,1% in 2016 and to 22,5% in 2017 (StatsSA: General Household Survey, 2009 - 2017).

During 2004 to 2009, the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural development supported 61 food security projects with production inputs including 49 school gardens, 9 poultry projects and 25 community gardens. In addition, 1 439 Starter packs were also distributed. Between 2009 and 2018, the coordination and implementation of this initiative has resulted in 4 717 household gardens established, 127 institutional gardens established, 82 community gardens established, 394 School gardens established and 21 War on poverty change agents supported.

Fetsa Tlala is an integrated government framework that seeks to promote food security and address structural causes of food insecurity, which continue to perpetuate inequality and social exclusion. It aims to create more than a food secure country for all South Africans, but also eradicate hunger by putting all available arable land that is lying fallow under production. The State President, His excellency Mr Jacob Zuma, officially launched the National Fetsa Tlala Programme in the JTG District on 24 October 2013. During the launch, 6 hectares of maize was planted at Manyding Irrigation project. From the 2014/15 to 2017/18 financial year, a total of 3 696,5 hectares were planted with various crops across the province and are disaggregated per district in the table below.

Table 37: Number of Hectares per district planted with various crops through 18 projects between 2014/15 and 2017/18

District	Number of hectares	Crops
Frances Baard	2489	Maize, Wheat, Barley, Dry beans
Pixely Ka Seme	435	Maize, Wheat
Namakwa	718	Maize, Wheat, Oats, Vegetables, Dry Beans
ZF Mgcawu	34,5	Wine grapes, Raisin Grapes, Maize
John Taolo Gaetsewe	20	Maize, Vegetables

Source: Table compiled utilizing the Departmental Annual Reports from 2014/15 to 2017/18

7.3.3 Smallholder producer's development and support for agrarian transformation

Post 1994, the Department of Agriculture Land Reform and Rural Development tried to provide support to the various land reform beneficiaries (SLAG, LRAD, Restitution cases). However, due to the huge demand for land and particularly on –farm infrastructure for land acquired, the demand could not be met. The backlog also related to the required support in the communal land areas, which were neglected in the past. Support packages, such as Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP), Illema/Letsema, LandCare and Micro Agricultural Finance Institutions of South Africa (MAFISA) are used to provide requisite support to small holder farmers and commercial black farmers for production and marketing of the produce. The former three provide grant funding while MAFISA provides loan funding.

Table 38: Support packages implemented in the Northern Cape between 2004 and 2018

Programme	Time period and projects	Funding R'000	Objective
CASP – Introduced 2004	From 2004/5 to 2017/18, 280 projects were funded.	1 956 557	To enhance support services, targeting beneficiaries of land and agrarian reform programmes, ensuring that there is an increased creation of wealth in agriculture and in the rural areas, improved farming efficiency, improved national and household food security, improved investor confidence leading to increased domestic and foreign investment in agricultural activities and rural areas.
Illema Letsema – launched Oct 2008	From 2008/9 to 2017/18, 116 projects were funded.	R478 027	To assist vulnerable South African farming communities to achieve an increase in agricultural production and invest in infrastructure that unlocks agricultural production
LandCare - 1997	From 2004 – 2018, 157 projects funded	R96 189	To optimize productivity, food security, job creation and a better quality of life for all.
MAFISA – 2007 launched	Between 2007 – 2018, 532 loans	R15 982 112 loaned	To provide low interest loans to fund agricultural business enterprises in the second economy. DAFF contracted NERPO and KaapAgri to administer

Programme	Time period and projects	Funding R'000	Objective
in the NC.	approved		scheme.

Source: Information compiled from Annual reports of the Department (DALRRD – 2004/05 to 2017/18)

Support to farmers were also provided in the form of livestock support, mechanisation, capacity and training, and infrastructure to enable them to produce staple crops that can be marketed.

Table 39: Support initiatives implemented in the Northern Cape to Smallholder farmers

Project	Purpose	Progress
Livestock Production and Development Programme (LPDP) – Department developed the livestock improvement programme which aims to improve efficiencies, growth and development, nutrition, genetic improvement and maintenance of genetic diversity.		
Nguni Development (DALRRD, IDC and Free State University) – piloted in 2007 in FB and JTG.	To upgrade cattle in communal and rural areas of the province to Nguni status, to establish a niche and recognised organic Nguni beef market and to promote systematic grazing systems, develop skills to establish a genre of future black commercial livestock farmers and to introduce affirmative steps to eradicate bovine venereal diseases.	IDC provided loan – R500 000 for procurement of Nguni breeding material. Project extended to province with 58 beneficiaries received: ZFM – 27 (54 bulls and 270 heifers) PKS – 9 (18 bulls, 90 heifers) FB – 7 (14 bulls and 70 heifers) JTG – 8 (16 bulls and 80 heifers) Namakwa – 7 (14 bulls and 70 heifers)
Mechanisation - 2012 Scheme is part of a National drive to increase agricultural production which should contribute towards addressing the challenges of food insecurity especially in rural areas.		
58 projects	Providing equipment was to enable provinces to increase their areas under production.	Tractors and implements were allocated to projects for crop production on approximately 4580Ha of irrigated land in the FB,

Project	Purpose	Progress
		PKS, ZFM, Namakwa and JTG districts.
Capacity building (2004/5 to 2017/18) The ANC Election Manifesto articulates the areas of focus for the Government to achieve agrarian transformation and building the potential for rural sustainable livelihoods. To denote a rapid and fundamental change in the relations, (systems and patterns of ownership, access and control) of means of production and participation in the value-chain.		
Farmers were capacitated and trained through 1 785 training sessions, 1 854 courses, complimented by 809 demonstration days and 630 Farmers and information days, reaching a total of 19 988 of the farming community (Source: DALRRD, 2004/5 to 2017/18 APR)	The department put several programmes in place to improve the capacity and skills of farmers, with a particular emphasis on emerging farmers and beneficiaries of land reform.	The focus also shifted from the farmer to the farmworker and 1049 farm workers were trained through 333 advocacy sessions and 3 428 farmworkers and dwellers were assisted to access government services. (Source: DALRRD 2008/9 to 2017/18 APR)
Marketing support (2004/5 APR (page 39) to 2017/18 APR)		
112 marketing sessions held, with 107 Agribusinesses were supported with agricultural economic services 1 479 smallholder farmers supported to access markets of which 1415 accessed markets.		
Agricultural economic support and Job opportunities created		
151 new agricultural cooperatives established and 42 existing cooperatives supported. (2007/8 to 2017/18) Total 1 701ha water licenses issued to enable the HDIs largely farmworkers to participate in the agricultural development along the Orange River. 62 new enterprise budgets developed and 339 feasibility studies conducted. 2 467 green jobs created from 2004 to 2018. (2004 – 2009 =239, 2009 – 2014 = 1478 and 2014 – 2018 = 750) (Annual reports DALRRD – 2004/05 – 2017/18)		

7.3.4 Rural development and economy (CRDP)

In 2009, the SA Government adopted a renewed and focused attempt to facilitate and promote rural development in order to create vibrant, sustainable and equitable rural communities. The key objectives of this programme, was the implementation of a comprehensive rural development strategy linked to land and agrarian reform, food security and the management and use of natural resources in a sustainable manner.

The Comprehensive Rural Development Strategy (CRDP) was first piloted in Riemvasmaak in the same year as the adoption of this programme, providing many valuable lessons, particularly, the successes achieved as a result of an integrated service delivery approach. The lessons learnt from the Riemvasmaak project formed the basis of the expansion of the CRD Programme to other areas in the province, namely, Heuningsvlei, Schmidtsdrift, Renosterberg and Magareng. The following provides progress on the implementation of the programme.

Table 40: Implementation of the CRDP Programme

Project	Progress
Riemvasmaak - piloted in 2009	Community gardens were established, with the construction of the nursery and irrigation system (R500 000). Also constructed a livestock handling facility and the provided equipment for maintenance of boreholes on communal land. Surveying of grazing camps and stock water system of 46 000 hectares and distributed seedlings to 45 households for backyard gardening. 20 ha Lucerne development in Vaaldrift, upgrading 233km of border fencing on new farms in Riemvasmaak and irrigation development in Vredesvallei. Non-agricultural: Installation of bulk water pipeline, 100 solar panels, computers for the public, water tanks at 2 schools, construction of 100 houses, a clinic, oxidation pond and 48 VIP toilets, upgrading of school infrastructure, sports field, 2 community halls and internal roads and equipment. (DALRRD 2009 to 2017/18 APR)
Heuningsvlei (Source: DALRRD 2013/14 to 2017/18 APR)	Agricultural projects: expansion of a stock water scheme at Morale Ranch, stock water and handling facilities in 3 villages and stock water and fencing at Madibeng. Other projects included construction of 66 houses, a community hall, upgrading of primary school and access road to Makhubung Village, paving of roads and development of an additional cemetery. Social profiling in

Project	Progress
	wards 1,2, in Joe Morolong and Ward 13 in Gasegonyana were completed. 1 st phase of the bulk water infrastructure project and 2 nd phase completed. Construction of 5 stock water systems including drilling and equipping of boreholes, drinking troughs and reservoirs completed in 2017/18 as well as installation of line shaft and 8,3km pipeline, received by 8 livestock farmers for Ashfield, to address challenges of stock water. Implementation of National fencing Scheme has commenced with the construction of 143km fencing.
Schmidtsdrift community was supported during 2009/10 by means of technical assistance across a wide range of activities.	119 km of border fencing was completed. A stock watering system was installed at a cost of R2,68 million, for the reticulation that includes 11 solar panels, 78 water tanks, 96 drinking troughs and 21km of pipeline. Mobile livestock handling facilities was constructed and soil investigation for irrigation development was completed. Provision of 10 households with poultry starter packs and the establishment of a community garden in Schmidtsdrift, Number 3 for 10 beneficiaries with an irrigation system, tanks, borehole with solar pump, fencing and shade netting. Other projects included the construction of 100 houses and 100 flush toilets, upgrading of the water system, the completion of sewage network and the installation of solar panels. <i>(Source: DALRRD, 2009/10 to 2017/18 APR)</i>
Renosterberg – since the expansion of this CRDP site in 2009/10 financial year.	2 job creation projects were initiated, (1) Expanded public works programme that employed 125 people and (2) community Workers Programme project that employed 1050 people. 2 community food gardens and 80 household gardens were established. Livestock census conducted and vaccinations were done. Six youths were trained on windmill repairing and two piggeries were established. The construction of additional classrooms at a primary school, the construction of 100 houses are underway. Construction of a new primary school in Phillipsvale has begun.
Magareng -	1 st Phase of Magareng Revitalization project has been completed with 56km of fencing erected and 8 handling facilities constructed. Revitalization of Warrenton Superchicken - upgrading the abattoir and completed 9 chicken houses. Slaughtering of chickens commenced in May 2012. Upgrading of the market stall and a storage shed have been completed

Project	Progress
	and an electrified border fence was constructed.

Source: Table compiled utilizing the Departmental Annual Reports from 2009/10 to 2017/18

7.3.5 Mega Projects

The Department developed an agro-processing strategy for the Northern Cape in 2005, which formed the basis of several agro-processing initiatives. Both the Vineyard Development Scheme and the Revitalisation of the Vaalharts-Taung Irrigation Scheme have subsequently become anchor programmes in the Strategic Integrated Project Number 11 (SIP 11: Agro-logistics and Rural Infrastructure to improve investment in infrastructure that supports the expansion of agricultural production, small-scale farming and rural development while at the same time creating employment (NC: 20-year review, 2014).

Table 41: Progress on Five Mega projects prioritised in the Northern Cape Province, as per Annual Performance Reports

Project/Initiative	Objective	Progress
Vineyard development Scheme - initiated as a Wine Development Project in 2007/08 in collaboration between the department of Agriculture and Land Reform, the NC Wine Development Trust and the National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC).	Response to the need to increase the production of wine in South Africa, through producing grapes locally which in turn provided an opportunity for smallholder farmers to participate in the wine industry and become meaningful players in the industry through acquisition of shares in the wine cellars. This initiative also extends to other grape industries such as raisins and grape juice production.	187Ha has been developed along the Orange River and over next 10 years a further 370Ha will be developed. There is a need to further develop an identified area of 3200Ha of vineyards for high value crops, that is raisins, wine and table grapes, dates and pecans. Emerging farmers and projects participating are: Blocuso, Realeboga, Sanddraai, Arbeidsgenot, Riemvasmaak, Esksteenskuil, Eiland Women project.
Rooibos tea processing – initiative of Rooibos Tea producers in Nieuwoudtville and Suid-Bokkeveld areas of Namakwa District. In 2008 the NC DALRRD adopted a business case structuring its involvement in establishing an economic hub for Rooibos tea industry. The factory was built to process	The primary aim of the Rooibos development project at Nieuwoudtville centres on economic growth, the development of the community and economic empowerment, through the development of a Rooibos industry for the Northern Cape. The intention is to create SMME's in the surrounding industrialized rural	Since the inception the project the following progress can be reported: - The construction of the drying and fermentation yard laboratory, weighbridge storage facility for processed tea and building for pasteurizing plant have been completed in 2008/9 and all infrastructure was ready for

Project/Initiative	Objective	Progress
3000 ton of tea annually.	spaces.	<p>intake and processing of tea on 26 January 2009.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Thousand (1000) ton of tea was Delivered by 31 March 2009 and sold to Venteco, based in Limpopo - The department took over full managerial management of the project on 30 November 2009 by appointing a departmental official as acting managing Director. - The construction of the infrastructure for the establishment of the Rooibos drying, processing and packaging facility as well as all civil infrastructure was completed by March 2010. - The construction of the building for packaging of tea in small tea bags was completed in 2010/11 - A HACCP system was completed and the system was audited and the factory was certificated to export tea in 2011/12. - For the period under review, smallholder farmers were also assisted with purchase of diesel, seedlings of rooibos for planting and mechanization to increase their production yields - A solar plant capable of generating 10 megawatts of energy has been constructed and is supplying electricity to the factory. - The factory has come of age

Project/Initiative	Objective	Progress
		<p>and its now fully functional, profits have been ploughed back into the factory to finalise the tea bagging facility and renewable energy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - A total of 319 job opportunities have been created during the various phases of construction - On average 23 seasonal jobs are created with 20 permanent positions <p>(Source: DALRRD 2008/9 to 2017/18 APR)</p>
Namakwa Irrigation Development with Onseepkans as the Anchor.	Aim is to redevelop the 118Ha and extra 200Ha Table/Raisins grapes and Dates. 134 Emerging farmers were organized into 27 CCs and own the 118Ha	The 118Ha existing lands and 200Ha new Development, with 41Ha of the 118Ha planted from 2016. (4ha table grapes and 37 Raisins) Further 17 ha developed and to be planted in 2018/19. The Namakwa Irrigation Development, upon completion, has a potential of creating 3 447 jobs (133 skilled and 1 772 semi-skilled workers).
Vaalharts Revitalization Scheme started in 2007/08. The Vaalharts-Taung Irrigation scheme is the largest irrigation water scheme of its kind in South Africa with Approximately 33 500 ha of land under irrigation. The geographical area of the scheme crosses the Northern Cape and North West provincial borders. Over the past years, the condition of the water supply infrastructure has deteriorated rapidly and the effect of waterlogging has increased to such an extent that	The Vaalharts-Taung Irrigation scheme was developed with a view to rehabilitate the irrigation infrastructure by upgrading the canals, addressing the water-logging and salinization problems and putting in measures for the efficient and sustainable use of water. The scheme, which is also a SIP 11 project, is in line with the aspirations of the NDP to expand irrigated agriculture for better use of our water resources.	<p>Even though a feasibility study was conducted in 2011 and recommended the infrastructure replacement and /or upgrading programme to be implemented over a 20-year period, work on the refurbishment of the scheme had already began in the 2007/08 financial year. In the same financial year (2007/8), a master plan was developed indicating all problem areas contributing to the degradation of the irrigation scheme (2007/08 APR, page31). From 2008/09 to 2016/17 the following progress can be reported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Sub-surface drainage systems totalling 76 065 metres have been installed, covering an area

Project/Initiative	Objective	Progress
continued agricultural production on the land has been severely affected.		<p>of over 438 hectares</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 29 overnight storage dams were constructed - A total of 13 549,88 metres of communal drainage lines were installed, servicing 1 562 hectares <p>Source: DALRRD, 2007/08 to 2016/17 APR</p>
Vanderkloof Fisheries and Cage Trout farming. The NC is targeting this dam to be the centre for trout production. In 2015/16 the department of Agriculture commissioned the University of Rhodes to conduct a study on the dam.	To achieve sustainable socio-economic growth within previously neglected rural areas. Initially focus on exploring the development of a small-scale experimental research fishery on Vanderkloof Dam, to contribute to food security and provide employment opportunities within the local rural community. Main objective of the experiment to determine the status of the resource, whether sustainable harvest levels are achievable.	Experiments of the dam started in the 2017/18 financial year and will run up to the 2020 financial year.
The combined worth of these projects is R10 billion over the next 10-15 years and government requires strategic partners and investors to assist in the development of these mega-projects. These mega-projects forced government and its partners to relook at how funding and implementation should be approached, to that effect, an intra- and intergovernmental structure called the Intergovernmental Technical Forum was set up to assist in project development, community mobilization, funding and resource mobilization.		

Source: Table compiled utilizing the Departmental Annual Reports from 2007/08 to 2017/18

7.3.6 Disaster management

The province is not exempt from the affects and effect of natural disasters such as fires, drought and excessive floods. Besides these disasters, there is also the threat of disease outbreak in both animals and crops which pose a risk and can impact on the province's food security and agricultural sustainability. Global warming and other climatic factors are contributing to the enormous losses being experienced by the province.

7.3.6.1 Drought

The table below gives a historic background and summary of the droughts that have affected farmers in the province from 2004 to 2017, as well as the departmental response.

Table 42: Summary of Droughts affecting the Northern Cape Province from 2004 - 2017

Financial Year	District	Impact thereof and Resources spent (Farmers affected and Departmental response)
2004/05	Namakwa, ZFM & part of JTG	Affecting 3198 emerging and 2898 commercial farmers. R26 Million allocated – (R25 million - fodder and R1 million - drilling boreholes.)
2005/06	Siyanda & Namakwa	Affecting 2411 emerging and 3477 commercial farmers. R20 million allocated to purchase fodder and transportation thereof.
2006/07	Namakwa	In Feb 2006, the drought extended to Lepelsfontein and Steinkopf, affecting 17 farmers. Drilling of 8 boreholes completed at a total cost of R447 000 for stock and game farmers.
2007/08	Namakwa, ZFM and JTG Districts	In 2007, drought affected 1 926 emerging and 1 006 commercial farmers late winter, early summer. R45 mil allocated to assist: 1 600 Small scale farmers (R11,7 million), 326 Medium scale farmers (R5,8 million) and 1006 Large scale farmers (21,2 million)
2008/9	JTG	R45 mil allocated. R38,780 million - fodder and R6,219 million - Stock Water
2013/14	JTG (6800), FB (262) and Namakwa (296)	7 358 communal and 133 commercial farmers (23 Namakwa and 110 JTG) affected. Joe Morolong was most affected. R50 million allocated to the province resulting in expenditure of R43 million. Challenges: issues of non-compliance of suppliers, service delivery protest in JTG and some farmers losing their livestock
2014/15	Namakwa	The 2013/14 drought extended to Loeriesfontein area. The Province, assisted an additional 257 farmers with R7,7million of fodder in 2015.
2015/16	FB, Namakwa, JTG, PKS & ZFM	In 2015, yet another drought with FB the worst of the 5 districts affecting 1 851 farmers. DAFF guided to direct 20% of CASP & Ilima/Letsema funds to drought interventions. DALRRD managed to re-prioritise 13.5% (R14,6 million) of CASP as funds already committed. NC was allocated R25 million, 10 tons of Lucerne from Vaalharts and 32 tons of maize from Rietrivier was distributed to affected JTG district farmers. Affected areas

Financial Year	District	Impact thereof and Resources spent (Farmers affected and Departmental response)
		of Namakwa assisted with Lucerne from Eiland Research Station in November 2016
2016/17	FB, Namakwa, JTG, PKS, ZFM	NDMC verified and classified the NC Disaster Drought 14 th of March 2016. 11 818 farmers in affected areas (8 095 emerging (4 181 small-scale and 3 914 medium scale) and 3 723 commercial) applied for assistance. Assistance request - R163 281 173,28.

Source: This table was compiled by utilizing the Departmental Annual reports 2004/5 to 2016/17.

The drought conditions precipitated the need for a comprehensive Agricultural Disaster Risk Management Plan (ADRMP), which was approved in the 2008/9 financial year. District Disaster Management Coordinating Committees were established and a fodder bank was also established – 120ha of Eiland, Rietrivier and Vaalharts Research stations is being utilised to plant Lucerne and maize which will be pelleted as animal fodder and given to farmers during times of disasters. Currently a stock of 206 tons (515 bales of 400 kg each) is at hand. Three pivot irrigation systems and a storage facility were constructed at Rietrivier Research station, two pivot irrigation systems and a storage facility at Vaalharts and lucern store in Eiland.

7.3.6.2 Floods

In January 2011 the province experienced floods in the catchment area of the Vaal and Orange River systems. These areas are cultivated irrigated areas, cultivating cash and permanent crops. The most vulnerable area in the lower Orange River is the area west of Upington consisting of 121 islands and protected by flood protection walls. The flood caused structural failure and caused serious damages. Areas affected most, were PKS, ZFM and Namakwa. In 2012/13, R 86 million was spent on support to farmers to repair and upgrade flood protection walls and the design of Onseepkans water supply infrastructure repair and Esteenskuil/Soverby irrigation, canals, bridges and drainage repair and upgrades. In 2013/14, R530 mil used to upgrade roads, to finalise the Onseepkans and Eksteenskuil projects designs, and repair and construction of flood protection works along the banks of Orange River to protect the developed irrigation lands against floods (155km).

In 2014/15, R262 million was allocated for repair of 44km of flood walls and flood modelling and draft master plan was 80% completed. In 2015/16, R131 862 million available to continue with the repair of outstanding damaged infrastructure along the Orange River. In 2016/17, the Onseepkans bulk water supply infrastructure, the repair of 38 bridges and access roads for Blocuso islands and installation of sub-surface drainage on Eksteenskuil farms completed (R64 million). In 2017/18, R92 million was allocated to continue with repair and construction and bulk water supply infrastructure, and at Onseepkans 40km of flood walls were completed.

7.3.6.3 Veld Fires

The period 2009 to 2013 was not without its challenges as far as veld fires are concerned. In 2009/10, R5 million used for fodder and 15 firefighting programmes, fire lanes and reparation of damaged fences in JTG. In September 2010 a fire affected 20 500ha in Koopmansfontein and four truckloads of Lucerne were provided. Fires also occurred in Loopeng, Tsineng, Heuningsvlei and Pniel affecting 40 600ha. In 2012/13, major veld fires in JTG, FB destroyed approximately 250 000ha of grazing land during October and November. Financial support of R2,75 million was provided for stock feed to support the 30 commercial farmers and 548 emerging farmers (Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development, 2012/13).

7.4 Persistent challenges

- The effects of climate change on agriculture resulting in Natural disasters such as fires, floods and excessive droughts. Besides these disasters, there is also the threat of disease outbreak in both animals and crops which pose a risk and can impact on the province's food security and agricultural sustainability.
- Backlogs in infrastructure and access to productive resources including land and water.
- Programmes for agrarian reform remain fragmented, small and poorly coordinated. A particular problem is that the process of land acquisition is largely separate from efforts to promote farming and rural development.

7.5 Looking ahead

Looking ahead to food security for all, booming rural enterprises and industries, vibrant and liveable rural economies attractive to all, the following key priorities are recommended.

- Reduce variable seasonal weather climate change impact through the promotion of climate smart risk management and reduction measures as well as diversification to new agricultural products that will ensure food security. Promote sustainable use of water resources, including smart agriculture, to mitigate the impact of climate change.
- Focused infrastructure development towards the rural communities, including access to productive resources such as energy, roads, land and water.
- Accelerated Agrarian Reform through pursuit of social compacts with established agricultural sector to promote participation and development of emerging and smallholder farmers. Speed up the resolution of all outstanding land restitution claims and accelerate the transfer of title deeds to rightful owners as part of the rapid land release programme that makes parcels of land available for those who want to build houses themselves.
- Ensure that no land is wasted or underutilised through enacting and implementing measures to promote urban agriculture and community food gardens to provide national food security and reduce hunger.
- Full productive agricultural development aimed at transforming rural economies aligned to the Agri-parks model which supports agri-hubs and provide agro-processing facilities, ensuring market access for rural producers and mobilise private sector investment. Consolidating all government support provided to small-scale farmers to ensure expanded production, including promotion of their co-operative activities through joint marketing and joint processing to ensure better impact.



Chapter 8

SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS AND IMPROVED
QUALITY OF HOUSEHOLD LIFE



CHAPTER 8

8.1 Problem statement

The housing and human settlement sectors demonstrate significant changes and evolution in how housing is understood, approached and responded to, and corresponds with a consistent maturing of the democratic processes of the country. The meaning of housing has evolved over the past two decades. Thus, the policy has gone from an initial phase of being concerned with notions of redress and redistribution, to a consequent phase where housing has come to be seen as a key element in building up assets for the poor. In addition, one of the original elements of the housing sector, that of housing as a right, has come to the fore as a key symbol of the social contract. Brought about by the outcomes-based approach and the capabilities thinking of the National Planning Commission, the current paradigm includes the sense that housing and human settlements have the additional role of building the capabilities of individuals and communities.

Policy changes have been implemented to reverse the inheritance of the apartheid era with the express intent of addressing the multiple challenge of:

- Removing the backlog of housing provision bring access to housing for millions of black South Africans,
- Reconnecting, diversifying, compacting and rewiring the unjust, unsustainable and unviable Apartheid City,
- Enabling and supporting the creation of vibrant, resilient local economies in sterile suburbs and deeply impoverished townships.

The history of planning and design of human settlements in South Africa is still characterised by biased spatial planning that largely benefits the minority. Spatial planning was based on a political ideology that promoted separate development. The majority of the South African population was condemned to the periphery of major economic centres without access to basic services, amenities and employment opportunities. While ground-breaking policy documents and legislation were developed and promulgated in post-apartheid South Africa, the legacy of apartheid spatial planning and design of human settlements still stubbornly persist twenty-five years into our democracy. The settlement patterns in the Northern Cape bears testimony to this reality.

8.2 The journey since 1994

8.2.1 Overview

In 1994, after the historic 1994 democratic elections, the incoming African National Congress (ANC) government adopted a White Paper on Housing, aimed at creating viable, integrated settlements where households could access opportunities, infrastructure and services, within which all South Africa's people will have access on a progressive basis to:

- permanent residential structure with secure tenure,
- ensuring privacy and providing adequate protection against the elements;
- and access to water, adequate sanitary facilities including waste disposal and domestic electricity supply.

In 2009, the erstwhile Department of Housing was re-named the Department of Human Settlements. In the re-configured arrangement, the Minister and Department of Human Settlements became responsible for leading the delivery of sustainable human settlements, and due to the complex nature and interdependencies of the sector, it was expected that there would be close collaboration with other ministers and departments with relevant line functions.

During this period, the paradigm was no longer one of shelter and quantity only, but it was also about integrated human settlements and the quality of investments. Investment decisions were now expected to focus more on the size and workmanship of the housing product, settlement design, alternative technology, etcetera, as well as choice (e.g. tenure, type and location). Institutionally and programmatically, the following shifts took place:

- The assessment of the UISP in 2009 indicated that there were significant blockages in the upgrading of informal settlements despite the wide array of policies and programmes in place. Consequently, the National Upgrading Support Programme (NUSP) came into being to provide assistance to municipalities to promote and ensure that informal settlement upgrading took place.
- The Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) was established in 2011 mainly to facilitate the provision of affordable inner-city rental housing stock as part of a broader urban renewal and inner-city regeneration thrust.
- A new subsidy programme, the Financed Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP), was introduced to intervene in the gap market in order to ensure a more

integrated property market. In 2012, subsequent to some difficulties in the provincial administration of the subsidy, the Department of Human Settlements appointed the National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC) to implement and promote the programme,

- The shift towards local government playing a more progressive role in the delivery of sustainable human settlements, gave way to the on-going municipal accreditation process of metros and large cities to full accreditation.

The last few years have seen an intensification of human settlement activities on all significant fronts and the continued expansion of the housing mandate to human settlements, as well as a clearer focus on municipalities as the key agents of delivery. The trajectory moved towards increased complexity, more significant policy responses and recognition that practice and implementation particularly at the local level require greater support if these are to meet the NDP and the medium terms goals that have been agreed to, inter alia:

- Address the systemic and entrenched spatial patterns that exacerbate social inequality and economic inefficiency,
- Review of housing policies towards optimal delivery of houses and restructure of town and cities,
- Develop a more coherent and inclusive approach to land i.e. develop overarching principles for spatial development,
- Revise the regulations and incentives for housing and land use management,
- Radically revise the housing finance regime,
- Build capabilities for transforming human settlements,
- Develop bolder measures to develop sustainable human settlements
- (MTSF 2014-2019, Appendix 8).

8.2.2 Legislation and Policies

From 1997 onwards the country saw the transition of the state from the RDP to the Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR) programme, together with the introduction of major key pieces of legislation and policies as outlined below:

- RDP (Reconstruction and Development Plan) (1994).
- DFA (Development Facilitation Act) (1995).
- The Prevention of Illegal Evictions Act, 1998.

- The Housing Act and Housing Amendment Act of 2001, which focused on the methods of housing subsidy and ownership provision, and
- White paper on spatial planning and land use management (2001).
- Comprehensive Plan for Sustainable Human Settlements or Breaking New Ground (2004).
- A Comprehensive Plan for Housing Delivery: National Housing Code, 2009.
- National Development Plan (2011).
- SPLUMA (Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act) (2013).
- IUDF (Integrated Urban Development Framework) (2014).
- Rental Policy (2015).
- Housing Finance Framework (2015/2016).
- Whitepaper on Housing (2016).
- The Financed Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP) - A new subsidy programme.
- The Social Housing Programme.
- National Upgrading Support Programme (NUSP).

8.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

8.3.1 Housing types and Dwellings

The characteristics of the dwellings in which households live and their access to various services and facilities provide an important indication of the well-being of household members. It is widely recognised that shelter satisfies a basic human need for physical security and comfort. The trend from 1996 to 2017 reflects that the living conditions in the Province has generally improved with an increase in the number of households living in formal dwellings, a decrease in the household living in traditional dwellings with marginal decrease of household living in informal dwellings.

According to the Statistics SA Census of 2011 and Community Survey of 2016, the percentage of households in formal dwellings increased from 78,3% in 1996 to 83,5% in 2016, indicating that the majority of households over the period lived in formal dwellings with only 2,3% by 2016 living in traditional dwellings. In 2016, 83,5 % of the total households lived in formal dwellings reflecting an increase of 5,2% from 1996. The percentage of households in traditional dwellings dropped by 5,3% from 1996 to 2016.

However, the number of households living in Informal dwellings increased from 1996 with a huge proportion of the increase from 2001 to 2011. This may be attributed to the incorporation of the cross border municipalities from the North West into the Northern Cape during 2006. The effect of the incorporation resulted in an increase in the population of the Northern Cape in 2006 by approximately 180 000. This also had a significant impact on, inter alia, the backlogs in infrastructure, water, sanitation, housing and electricity. The growth in informal dwellings further coincided with the fall in household size and other aspects such as migration.

From the Statistics SA: 2018 General Household Survey (GHS), the total household estimate in 2018 stood at 342 000. A total of 87,3% of households in the Northern Cape lived in formal dwellings, 11,7% in informal dwellings and 0,7% households in traditional dwellings. The GHS of 2018 reports that the Northern Cape was amongst the three provinces that had the highest percentage of households that lived in formal dwellings at 87,3%, Limpopo at 93% and Mpumalanga at 87,7%.

Despite the positive increase in formal housing, the increase in informal housing continues to compound the housing backlog.

Figure 51: Percentage of Household living in Formal, Traditional, and Informal Dwellings (grouped)



Source: Statistic SA Census 2011 and Community Survey 2016

Table 43: Number of Households living in Formal, Traditional, and Informal Dwellings (Grouped)

Period	Formal dwelling	Traditional dwelling	Informal dwelling
1996	169 931	16 594	27 822
2001	198 433	17 115	27 742
2011	248 313	9 505	39 604
2016	295 318	8 245	45 246

Source: Statistic SA Census 2011 and Community Survey 2016

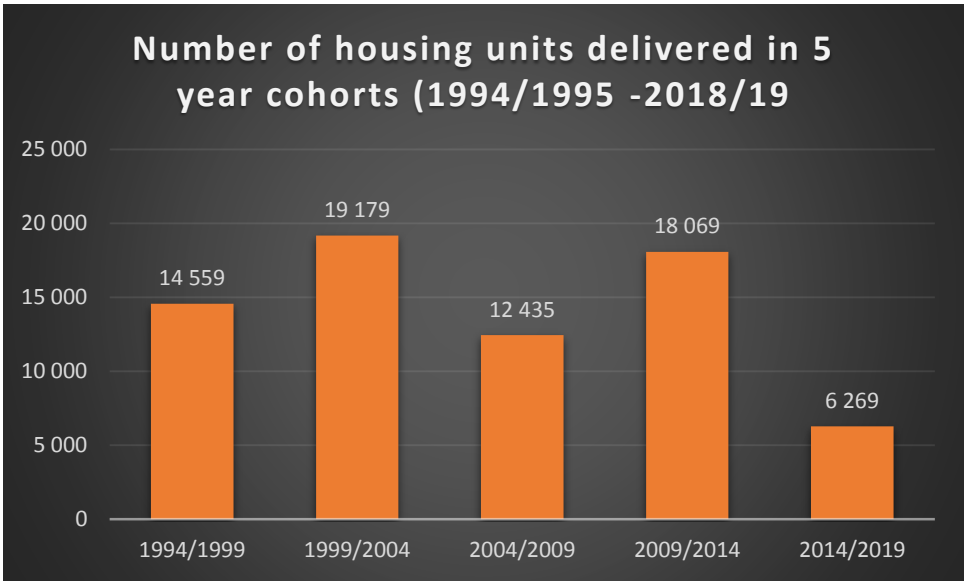
As per the above table, the combined number of informal dwellings for 2016 stood at 53 491 (15,1%). According to the 2018 General Household Survey, the combined number of

informal dwellings stood at 11,7% of the total households in the Province. The types of dwellings found in a settlement and more importantly the number of informal dwellings points to the number of quality housing units required to address the housing backlog. However, this is to be used as an estimate as the number of housing units required may be larger than the current number of informal structures, for example, to accommodate extended family, lodgers, overcrowding, future population and household growth and in - migration.

8.3.2 **Housing delivery**

Since the beginning of democracy, the total number of houses delivered in the Northern Cape amounts to 70 511. The breakdown for each successive term of government since 1994 is indicated in the table below. This is as extracted from the NDHS Housing Subsidy System.

Figure 52: Number of Houses delivered in 5 year cohorts (1994 - 2018/19)



Source: Department of Human Settlements, HSS
Note: Data collection is done at the level of the District Offices. The monthly inspection report is then updated on HSS. This data is then drawn into the HSS Online portal.

8.3.2.1 **Distribution of houses per programme**

The total number of housing units delivered per 5-year cohort and according to the different programmes is indicated in the table below. It is important to note that housing delivery between 1998 and 2019 gradually declined due to annual increments in the housing subsidy quantum. The main contributing factor being that the housing subsidy quantum was not linked to inflation and remained R 16 000.00 from 1997 to 2003, while the housing norms and standards, house sizes, gradually increased to 40 m² from 36 m² per house.

More recently recorded challenges relating to the delivery of houses and specific to the period 2014-2019 are delays caused by service delivery protests, poor performance of contractors and slow supply chain management processes thus impacting on the turnaround times of housing delivery.

Table 44: Housing units delivered per Programme in 5 year cohorts for the period 1994/1999 – 2014/2019

TYPE OF HOUSING PROGRAMME	1994-1999	1999-2004	2004-2009	2009-2014	2014-2019	TOTAL
Project Linked Subsidies (PL)	-	-	9 320	3 783	165	13 268
Rural Programme (Rural)	-	-		1 964	703	2667
Emergency (EM)	-	-	230	525	113	868
Integrated Residential Development Phase 2 (IRDP)	-	-		6 728	4 004	10 732
Informal Settlement Upgrading (ISUP)	-	-		4 263	926	5 189
Military Veterans (MV)	-	-			40	40
Individual (IND)	-	-	656	161	167	984
Institutional (INST)	-	-	443			443
Financed Linked Individual Subsidy (FLISP)	-	-	49		26	75
Peoples Housing Process (PHP)	-	-	1 737	208		1 945
Rental/CRU	-	-		437	125	562
Total	14 559	19 179	12 435	18 069	6 269	7 0511

Source: Department of Human Settlements, HSS

8.3.3 National Upgrading Support Programme (NUSP)

The National Upgrading Support Programme (NUSP) was designed to support the National Department of Human Settlement (NDHS) in its implementation of the Upgrading Informal Settlements Programme (UISP) with the objective of eventually upgrading all informal settlements in the country. The NDP identified that Governments greatest challenge stems from the fact that informal settlements continue to grow faster than the rate of low income housing delivery. Therefore, the MTSF mandates provides for the improving of the quality of life of household through the upgrading of informal settlements in well located areas.

The Upgrading Informal Settlements Programme (UISP) and Urban Settlements Development Grant (USDG) administered by the NDHS, are the primary policy and grant instruments used to meet national targets. Municipalities are required to act as developers for the UISP and the NUSP provides support, in partnership with the province, the NDHS and

the Housing Development Agency (HDA), to help them do so effectively. The Northern Cape Strategy and Programme for the Upgrade of Informal Settlements indicates that the total number of informal households in 2014 is 50, 953. The largest concentration, 33 081, is in the National Upgrade Support Programme (NUSP). (Northern Cape Strategy for the Upgrade of Human Settlements). The six NUSP municipalities are Sol Plaatje, Dawid Kruiper, Phokwane, Gasegonyana, Tsantsabane and Gamagara, while, 17 872 informal households are in other municipalities. When disregarding the 6 Municipalities that already received support from NUSP, the largest numbers of informal settlements are still within Kai! Garib (8); Umsobomvu (7); Siyancuma (7) and Dikgatlong (6) Municipalities. The highest number of affected households is in Joe Morolong (6,288), Siyancuma (4,175), Kai! Garib (2,716) and Dikgatlong (1,661) Municipalities.¹

According to the 2017 General Household Survey, the combined number of informal dwellings stood at 45 621 (13,7%) of the total households in the Province as per the General Household Survey and 40 000 (11,7%) as per the GHS 2018, thus suggesting a decrease in the number of informal settlements based on the 2014 NC HS Strategy.

8.3.4 Accreditation of Municipalities

In 2005, the Province hosted a housing summit at which a resolution was reached, to expand the role of municipalities and a decision was taken to prioritize accreditation of the five District Municipalities and three local municipalities (Emthanjeni, //Khara Hais and Sol Plaatje). Having identified accreditation as a critical tool for service delivery in these municipalities, the Provincial Department pursued an active programme to promote accreditation and provided technical assistance to municipalities for the development of accreditation business plans. District municipalities and selected local municipalities were granted conditional accreditation in 2006. In situations where both the district and one of its local municipalities are accredited, the district then focused its effort on housing delivery in its non-accredited local municipalities.

Extensive time and resources have been invested in prioritized municipalities through the appointment of additional staff. Namakwa District Municipality is substantially lagging behind other prioritized municipalities, due to the lack of dedicated housing personnel to

¹ Northern Cape Strategy and Programme for the Upgrade of Informal Settlements

manage the housing process. A process has been set in motion to capacitate the Municipality and have it assessed for level one accreditation in the near future. The department is nearly entirely reliant on the HSDG from DHS for its budget. Given the relatively small population and small share of the national backlog, the Northern Cape receives a small percentage of the total HSDG share.

Funding was proposed in such a way that municipalities themselves have a responsibility to fund some of the housing related activities highlighted in the respective business plans of the accredited municipalities. Funding arrangement for accredited municipalities has been a key priority. It would be counter – productive for the funding arrangement, including the annual allocation of housing subsidy funding to the accredited municipality, to be an annual source of negotiation and dispute between the province and municipality. It is therefore important that funding arrangements must first be linked to the Medium Expenditure framework through the DORA, with annual budgets on a three – year rolling basis.

Furthermore, the calculation of housing funds to accredited municipalities must be transparent and consistently applied without exception. Notwithstanding the above, to the extent that any accredited municipality is failing to utilise its housing budget, the Member of the Executive Council of COGHSTA may recommend the reallocation of underutilised portions to another municipality during a particular year. It is recognised that in accepting the wider responsibilities afforded by accreditation funding mechanisms can be utilised to assist municipalities with their capacity needs.

DHS is acutely aware of the financial demands of this mandate, and needs to pay serious attention to funding mechanisms for the Municipalities and especially the District Municipalities which do not have any income generation. Operational funding was provided to accredited municipalities since the implementation of the programme. The funds are intended for operational requirements associated with accreditation. The following municipalities have been accredited:

Table 45: NC: Accredited Municipalities

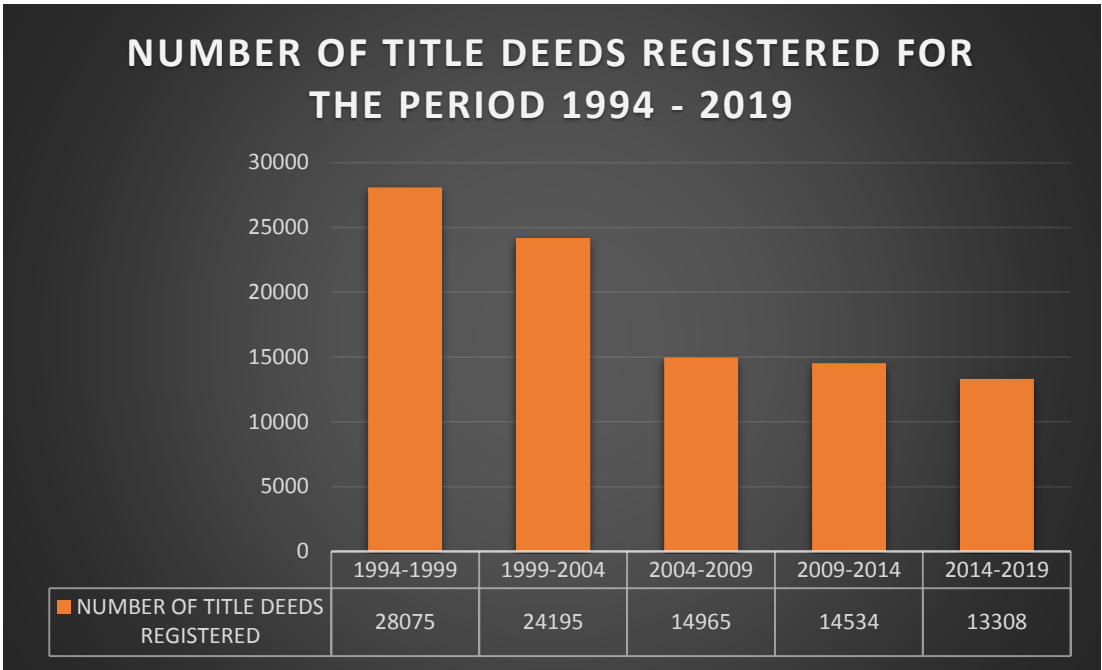
NAME OF MUNICIPALITY	LEVEL OF ACCREDITATION
Sol Plaatje LM	Level 1 & 2
Pixley Ka Seme DM	Level 1 & 2
ZF Mgcawu DM	Level 1 & 2
Dawid Kruiper (//Khara Hais LM)	Level 1 & 2
Emthanjeni LM	Level 1
John Taolo Gaetsewe DM	Level 1
Frances Baard DM	Level 1 & 2

8.3.5 Title Deeds Restoration Programme

The Title Deeds Restoration Programme is a key pillar of the government's poverty alleviation programme. In her address to the National Human Settlements Summit on 21 September 2017 in Ekurhuleni, Minister Lindiwe Sisulu pointed out that the value and importance of title deeds was not only economic, as it also provided individuals with an address and human dignity. "A title deed recognises the owner, which allows for the property to be passed on to family members in the event of death. The transfer of deeds to the rightful owners is a legal obligation, where all residents have access to their title deeds," she said.

The Province aimed to reduce the title deeds backlog which for 2018/19 stands at 15 646 and register a number of reasonable deeds. The table hereunder provides a breakdown of progress and achievement of the department from 1994 to 2019 in 5 year cohorts. A total of 13 340 old business, title deeds were registered from 1987 to 1994. For the period 1994 to 2019 a total of 95 077 title deeds were registered in the Province.

Figure 53: Number of title deeds registered in 5 year cohorts for the period 1994/1995 - 2014/2019



Source: Department of Human Settlements, HSS

Despite the immense strides taken to address the title deed backlog the above figure indicates a downward growth in the issuing of title deeds. This is due to the following challenges impeding the accelerated implementation of the title deeds restoration programme:

- There have been delays with the registration of new townships, the issuing of clearance of certificates and collection of documents, and the vesting and transfer of state land.
- The main challenge experienced in terms of implementation of the programme is inconsistency at the Deeds Offices. In order to resolve these challenges, there should be uniformity in all Deeds Offices throughout the country.
- Mother Title Deeds and Township Register Books are misplaced at the Deeds Office. This has a delay of approximately 3 weeks on the registration of Title Deeds. The filing systems should be improved and more staff must be appointed.
- Delays in the approval of General Plans by the Surveyor General. The Surveyor General should prioritize plans related to housing.
- Deceased beneficiaries and beneficiaries who cannot be traced. DHS should develop a policy on this and provide dedicated funding. The Masters Office should also be involved.
- Delays in signing of documentation by Municipalities.

8.3.6 Acquisition of land

While the Northern Cape maybe the largest province in the country, it is not necessarily blessed with suitable land for the development of sustainable human settlements. There is also a major challenge with dolomite and the lack of bulk infrastructure in most area on land that belongs to municipalities. The table hereunder is an indication of the extent of the land acquired since 1994 by the Department of Co-operative Governance and Human Settlements with the assistance of the Housing Development Agency (HDA).

Table 46: Land acquired since 1994 by COGHSTA

Property Description	Extent (ha)	Municipality	Financial Year
Erf 20972 (a portion of erf 2975)	4,13	Dawid Kruiper (Upington)	2014/15
Erf 20973 (a portion of erf 1859)	20,12		2014/15
Erf 43134	0,42	Sol Plaatje (Kimberley)	2014/15
Portion 2 of Kalahari Gholf en Jag Landgoed 775	299,86	Gamagara (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, 2018)	2017/18
Portion 12 of the Farm Pensfontein 449	46,21	Tsantsabane (Postmasburg)	2017/18
Erf 3726	21,29	Emthanjeni (De Aar)	2016/17
Erf 635	12,37	Emthanjeni (De Aar)	2017/18
Total	404,40		

Source: The Housing Development Agency

8.3.7 Youth empowerment programme

The Youth Brigade was launched in 2012 by the NDHS. Youth Brigade was established as the vehicle by which youth in the Human Settlements and the Built Environment will be presented with economic opportunities through a basket of youth empowerment programmes. The Province has also implemented the Youth Programme to empower youth since 2006. In 2006 the Youth in Human Settlements was established and further changes to the Youth Brigade from 2012 onwards. The breakdown is as follows:

Table 47: Number of Youth benefitted from Youth Empowerment Programmes in COGHSTA

AREA	YEAR	TOTAL NUMBER TRAINED
Upington	2006	100
Jan Kempdorp	2012	145
Lindelani (Galeshewe)	2014	100
Lerato Park (Galeshewe)	2015	140
Bankhara Bodulong (Kuruman)	2016	145

AREA	YEAR	TOTAL NUMBER TRAINED
Grootdrink	2017	123
TOTAL	-	753

Source: COGHSTA, Annual Reports

The training was conducted in partnership with NHBRC and National Youth Development Agency (NYDA). Successful graduates from this programme were enrolled at the TVET College in Kimberley for the Artisan Development Programme.

8.3.8 Home Ownership Education

The statistics for the number of households reached since 2013/2014 is 23 546 for the Home Ownership Education Programme.

Table 48: Households trained on Home Ownership Education Programme

FINANCIAL YEAR	NUMBER OF BENEFICIARIES TRAINED
1996 - 2012	No data
2013/2014	3425
2014/2015	2675
2015/2016	4474
2016/2017	4945
2017/2018	7902
2018/2019	20
TOTAL	23 546

Source: COGHSTA Annual Reports

While COGHSTA incrementally over-achieves its targets annually, the impact of the programme is very limited. This is mainly due to the following key factors:

- Meagre household incomes and poverty levels in the subsidy market. The priority of beneficiaries in this market is not to implement lessons learned from the HCE but it is merely how to provide for their families with the little income they receive either from state funded programmes such as social grants or informal job opportunities in the market. Improving and maintaining their properties is the least of their priorities.
- Lack of integration amongst all the relevant service delivery departments and even some human settlements entities such SHRA and the NHBRC. An integrated approach of all the stakeholders that service the subsidised market would make an impact and ensure that beneficiaries are assisted to utilize government programmes in a meaningful way that allows them to improve their livelihoods and assets.

- It is proposed that DHS should conduct a comprehensive evaluation of the impact of the programme in partnership with Statistics South Africa. The impact of the programme has never been measured since inception. While the objectives of the programme may be significant, the social conditions that beneficiaries in the subsidy market experience renders the programme worthless. The social and economic realities of these communities should be addressed to realize the objectives of this programme.

8.3.9 Rental Housing opportunities

8.3.9.1 Hull Street Integrated Project

Rental Housing opportunities at the Hull Street Integrated Housing project in the Sol Plaatje local municipality was established under the social housing regime in 2005. The Hull Street project was established as a housing association where the beneficiaries themselves participated in the planning and design of the project. The Project aimed to involve the communities in financing housing improvement. The project established saving schemes and provided access to bank loans for community members. Community were trained in Urban Agriculture, household economy, and Social housing concept. The institutional subsidy programme was utilized to deliver 127 rental units under the rent to buy tenure option. (<https://www.fcgsuweben.se>)

8.3.9.2 Lerato Park Housing Project

Lerato Park was piloted in 2005 as a Presidential lead project in terms of the informal Settlements Upgrading Programme and became a National Priority Project and was developed and implemented according to BNG principles from 2008. The existing informal settlement is to be transformed into a mixed income housing development of 4 651 housing units with an estimate project development cost of R 1,27 billion. The Project consists of a combination of subsidised, bonded, rental and institutional housing units, which, in combination with social amenities and provision for commercial opportunities, will form an integrated living space. The project is planned to be developed in nine (9) phases. (DHS, Catalytic Projects Summary Fact Sheet, April 2016)

Phases 1 and 2 were completed with Phase 3, which is the CRU units. A total of 491 subsidised units have been constructed and consist of free-standing houses, semi-detached and row houses. The project is due for completion by the end of 2019/20 financial year.

Restructuring zones were declared in the Sol Plaatje municipality (SPM). The Social Housing Programme (SHP) could therefore only be implemented in this municipality. The restructuring zones that were declared in the municipality are as follows:

- Eltoro Park and Hillcrest
- De Beers and Ernestville
- Colville, Floors Township and Square Hill Park

While these restructuring zones were declared and published by DHS in consultation with the department and municipality, they are contrary to the policy and spatial imperatives of the SHP. The main objectives of restructuring zones are to spatially, socially and economically integrate social housing projects and communities. However, restructuring zones in the SPM are not spatially, socially and economically integrated except for the De Beers and Ernestville restructuring zone.

The department, in partnership with DHS and SPM, has commenced with the review, amendment and expansion of the restructuring zones to ensure that they meet the policy objectives of the SHP. The main challenge with the implementation of the Social Housing Programme in the province is the lack of credible social housing institutions. In the period under review, there was only one conditionally accredited social housing institution with the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA), Sol Plaatje Housing Company (SPHC). However, this institution was under distress and lacked the capacity to support the department to meet its targets under this programme.

8.4 Persistent challenges

- Existing and rapidly growing housing backlogs due to in-migration and urbanisation.
- Weak, indecisive and toothless spatial planning throughout government and unresponsive and ineffective land use management in the municipal sphere.
- High costs of well-located land in towns and cities

- Most of the human settlements projects are on the periphery and urban edge because Government cannot afford to purchase well-located land for development. Consequently, beneficiaries suffer.
- Delays in the issuing of title deeds for subsidised housing units due to systemic challenges.
- Limited provision of social housing due to the lack of credible social housing institutions in the province.
- Slow upgrading of informal settlements as a result of inadequate bulk infrastructure.
- Lack of proactive planning for urbanisation and new household formation, including the identification of well-located land for housing (outcome 8)
- Skills shortages at both provincial and local government level such as town planners, quantity surveyors and engineers has resulted in the delay of housing delivery programmes.
- Aging and inadequate bulk infrastructure inhibits the efficient implementation of housing programmes.
- While the objectives of the home ownership programme may be significant, the social conditions that beneficiaries in the subsidy market experience renders the programme worthless. The social and economic realities of these communities should be addressed to realize the objectives of this programme.

8.5 Looking ahead

- Robust responses and interventions are needed for the increasing delays and backlogs in issuing title deeds to beneficiaries of housing projects funded by the capital subsidy.
 - Planning forward to address the housing backlog needs to be intensified through a year on year assessment and review. (as this is a moving target)
- Alignment of Social and Labour Plans of the Mines operating in the Province to the Municipal Integrated Development Plans with special attention to capital projects which have a potential to address Human Settlements.
- Review the subsidy regime and consider more flexible instruments, which would be able to more easily address spatial concerns (increase the declining numerical performance, while shifting towards a more qualitative integrated human settlement approach).

- Better leveraging of the private sector is needed to ensure that the benefits of transit-oriented development and other forms of state investment are extracted, that mixed-income models are established and able to go to the lower market, and that financial institutions respond better at the lower end of the market.
- Rental housing has increasingly become an important component of supply-side and demand-side solutions to housing delivery; therefore, there is a need for more information, focus and attention, especially on concerns of inner city and backyard rental.
- The Rental Housing Strategy needs to be expedited, also taking into consideration the concepts of restructuring zones for targeting investments in areas where previously disadvantaged people had no access to residential opportunities, thus contributing to the important restructuring of apartheid cities.
- Consideration of capacity at local level is required, as there is a greater move towards supporting bottom-up delivery mechanisms. Urban centres thus need to be able to collect rates and distribute them in a manner that benefits the poor.

The great focus on integrated development and planning is needed to support co-production modes of housing delivery and settlement patterns.



Chapter 9

RESPONSIVE, ACCOUNTABLE, EFFECTIVE AND EFFICIENT
LOCAL GOVERNMENT SYSTEM

25

YEAR REVIEW

CHAPTER 9

9.1 Problem statement

The apartheid regime bequeathed a local government system that was racially segregated, was built on an uneven revenue base and was unaccountable thus the new democratic local government inherited a legacy characterised by the following:

- Weak and numerous local governments
- Black local authorities that were neither accountable nor democratic
- Local government that was mostly of a centralised nature in terms of finance and administration
- A local government system that served 20 percent of the population
- Displaced urbanisation and fragmented, and grossly unequal spatial forms and settlement patterns

Since 1994, the country strived towards creating a developmental state with the transformation of the local government sphere being a crucial element hereof. Significant strides have been made since 1994 to break down the fragmented and undemocratic, and racially divided local government system that was inherited. The country embarked upon an ambitious plan to redesign and establish the local government system into a single unified local government, establishing municipal systems and processes, as well as in strengthening and building institutional capability.

9.2 The journey since 1994

9.2.1 Overview

Since 1994, there were numerous credible municipal strategies have been implemented supported by policies, guidelines and programmes available to facilitate support, monitoring and interventions within the local sphere. In addition, municipalities are governed through a complex, yet robust legislative and regulatory framework. Despite all of this, in a number of instances, municipal performance is far from optimal. The NDP in acknowledging the unsatisfactory levels of municipal performance, decreed that by 2030, South Africa will have a developmental state that is accountable, focused on citizen's priorities, and capable of

delivering high-quality services consistently and sustainably through cooperative governance and participatory democracy.

In the above scenario, local government stands at the forefront of participatory democracy, involving citizens in meaningful deliberations regarding governance and development, is responsive to citizens' priorities, and enjoys high levels of trust and credibility amongst the public. Further to this, delivering quality services is dependent on skilled employees, competent and committed to delivering quality services, is able to cost-effectively increase the quantity and quality of services and operates within a supportive and empowering intergovernmental system. The NDP however, cautions that such a developmental state cannot materialise by decree, nor can it be legislated or waved into existence by declarations. It has to be consciously built and sustained. Local government is at the centre of development, and to achieve the aspiration of a transformed and effective local government system will require strong leadership through a clear and consistent, long-term strategy.

The 2014-2019 MTSF therefore articulates the following key priorities into actionable deliverables to address the myriad of challenges impeding service delivery at local government level:

- Members of society have sustainable and reliable access to basic services.
- Intergovernmental and democratic governance arrangements for a functional system of cooperative governance strengthened.
- Sound financial and administrative management.
- Promotion of social and economic development.
- Local public employment programmes expanded through the Community Work Programme (CWP).

9.2.2 Legislation and Policies

Led by the Constitution, the White Paper on Local Government in 1998 was published, introducing a series of laws, policies and support programmes to direct the establishment of local government as a distinctive, interrelated and interdependent sphere of government.

- White Paper on Local Government 1998
- The Municipal Demarcation Act of 1998 (Act 27 of 1998)

- Local Government: Cross Boundary Municipal Act (Act No 29 of 1998)
- The Municipal Structures Act of 1998 (Act 117 of 1998)
- The Municipal Systems Act of 2000 (Act 32 of 2000)
- Free Basic Services Policy, 2001
- The Municipal Financial Management Act of 2003 (Act 56 of 2003)
- Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act (Act No 41 of 2003)
- Local Government Municipal Property Rates Act (Act No 6 of 2004)
- Intergovernmental Fiscal Relations Act (Act No 13 of 2005)
- Local Government Anti-Corruption Strategy, 2006
- Northern Cape Traditional Leadership Governance and Houses of Traditional Leaders Act (Act No 2 of 2007)
- National Public Participation Framework, 2007
- Local Government Turn Around Strategy, 2009
- Back to Basics (as adopted by Cabinet in 2014)
- Integrated Urban Development Framework (as adopted by Cabinet on 2014)

9.3 Progress for the period 1994 – 2019

9.3.1 Municipal Boundaries and Re-determination of Municipalities

When the Northern Cape Province was established it inherited 112 local authorities that were established along racial lines. Communities from previously disadvantaged backgrounds had been subjected to discrimination, appalling inequalities and degrading living conditions.

These 112 local authorities inherited in 1994, have since been reduced to 31 viable municipalities by 2019. The re-demarcation of municipal boundaries and the establishment of new municipalities was to ensure integrated economic development and extend service delivery to under-serviced communities.

The local government elections on 5 December 2000, ushered in a new system of local governance. The new municipalities were redesigned to play a developmental role. The implementation of programmes such as the Local Economic Development (LED), Consolidated Municipal Infrastructure Programme (CMIP), Urban Renewal and the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programmes are geared towards enhancing

socio-economic development through locally driven economic development initiatives (NC: 20-year review, 2014).

The new local government structure also ushered in a new system of participatory democracy to ensure that people in local communities find expression in this developmental sphere. The development of Integrated Development Plans (IDP's) as a blueprint for development at a local level, had to include the participation of local communities, and has become a critical component of the participatory democracy system. The drawing of new municipal boundaries was one of the first steps in a local government transformation process that aims to give substance to the Constitution's vision. Demarcation was not meant to solve all the problems that municipalities face, but set the structural conditions within which the other processes of transforming and developing local government can take place.

Prior to the December 2000 municipal elections, the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 was amended, and other legislation was enacted to provide for the demarcation and establishment of municipalities across provincial boundaries. Following the municipal elections of the year 2000, 16 cross-boundary municipalities were established affecting five provinces, with the Northern Cape being one of the five Provinces affected. The Northern Cape had two cross-boundary municipalities that straddled the provincial boundary with the North West. These were the Ga-Segonyana Local Municipality in the John Taolo Gaetsewe district, and Phokwane local municipality. At the provincial level, areas in the respective provinces were serviced by their respective provincial governments (Northern Cape Province 15-Year Review, 2009).

Subsequently, in terms of the RSA Constitution Twelfth Amendment Act of 2005, the cross-boundary municipalities were incorporated into the Northern Cape in 2006. Furthermore, Moshaweng municipality (now part of Joe Morolong municipality) was incorporated into the Northern Cape during that period. According to the census data, the population of the province increased from 991 919 to 1 145 861 between 2001 and 2011, with the incorporation of some areas of John Taolo Gaetsewe district from North West to the province contributing to the increase. The number of households increased from 245 086 to 301 405 between 2001 and 2011. The population further increased to 1 193 780 by 2016, with number of households increasing from 301 405 to 353 709 for the same period.

The effect of the incorporation resulted in an increased population in 2006 of the Northern Cape by approximately 180 000, but also had a significant impact on, inter alia, the backlogs in infrastructure, water, sanitation, housing and electricity (Northern Cape Province 15-Year Review, 2009). During the 2016 Local Government elections, //Khara Hais Local Municipality and Mier Local Municipality were disestablished to form the Dawid Kruiper Local Municipality. This amalgamation reduced the number of local municipalities in the Province from 27 to 26, bringing the total number of municipalities, including the 5 district municipalities, to 31. Dawid Kruiper Local Municipality, according to geographical size – 44 231 km², is currently the biggest municipality in South Africa.

The number of municipal wards in the province also increased from 162 in 2000 to 204 in 2016. The number of wards relating to each local government elections are as follow:

- 2000: 162 wards
- 2006: 174 wards
- 2011: 194 wards
- 2016: 204 wards

9.3.2 House of Traditional Leaders

Following the implementation of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003) the Northern Cape Traditional Leadership, Governance and Houses of Traditional Leader Act (Act 2 of 2007), traditional leaders were provided the opportunity to exercise their authority within a democratic local government. These Acts have given recognition to the institution of traditional leadership and acknowledges its important role in deepening and enriching democratic governance. In promoting Traditional Affairs as recognised by Chapter 12 of the RSA Constitution of 1996, the Province has continued to provide overall financial and administrative support to all recognised traditional leadership institutions.

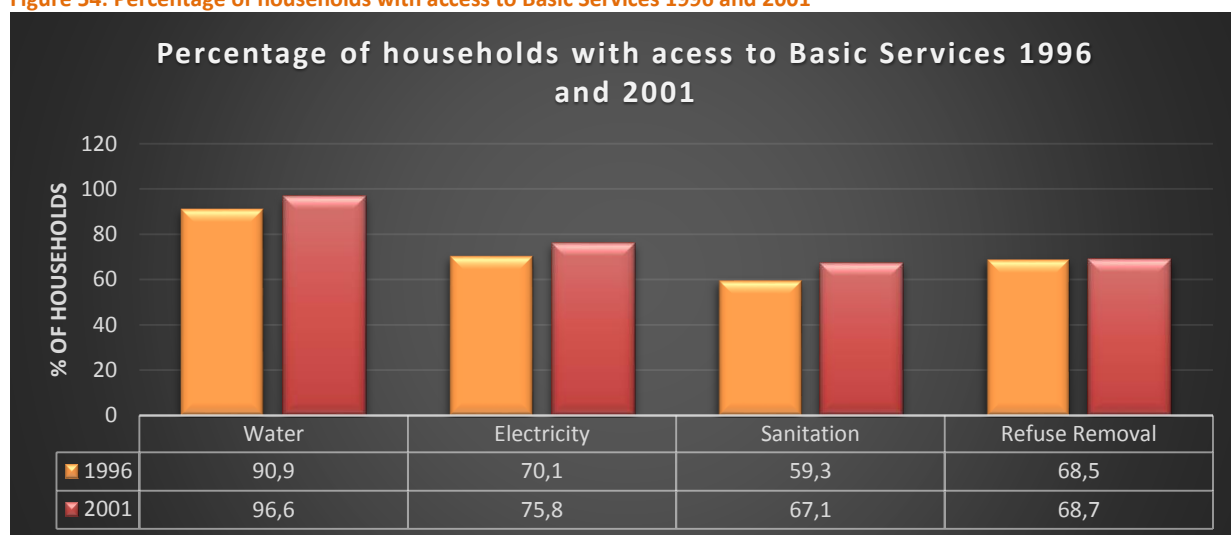
In 2017 the Provincial Gazette (Notice 150 of 2017) was passed to allow for the reconstitution of the NC Provincial House of Traditional Leaders. The gazette provided for the determination of the number of members for the NC Provincial House of Traditional Leaders and the procedure to be followed for the election of members. A milestone achievement in 2017 as a result of this process was that a female (Kgosi Toto) was elected as

the Chairperson of the Provincial House in 2017. Further to this for the first time the Provincial House elected two female traditional leaders (headmen) as members of the House.

9.3.3 Service Delivery

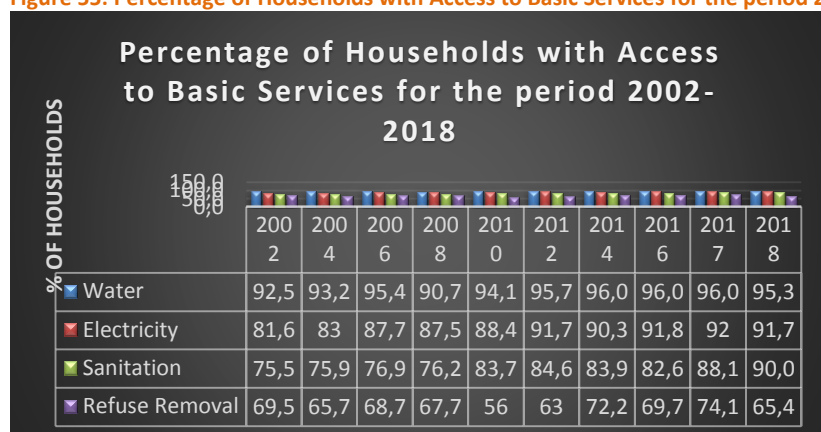
Remarkable achievements have been made in the Province in the delivery of water, sanitation, refuse removal, electricity. The provincial trend in the provision of basic services between 1996 to 2018 is one of general improvement. The assessment for the Province has been concluded based on the data extracted from Statistics SA 1996, 2001 Census and General Household Survey of 2018 released in 2019. As per the 1996 Census, the percentage of households that has access to basic services improved for water, electricity and sanitation. Refuse removal remained mainly static.

Figure 54: Percentage of households with access to Basic Services 1996 and 2001



Census 1996 and 2001

Figure 55: Percentage of Households with Access to Basic Services for the period 2002 - 2018



(General Household Survey 2001 - 2017, 2018)

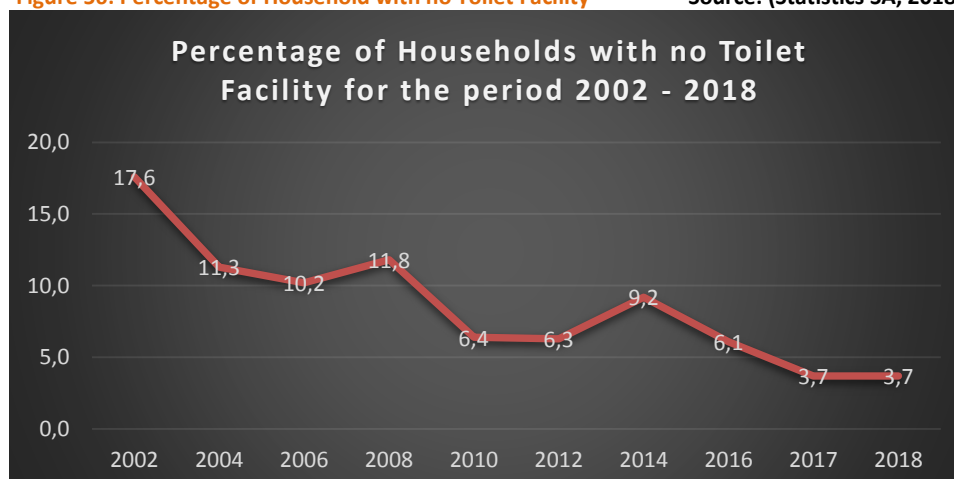
As per the general household surveys, significant improvements since 2002 may be observed. Overall when considering the census data and the General Household data, access to electricity and sanitation improved the most from 1996 to 2018.

- Access to electricity increased from 81,6% in 2002, and to 91,7% by 2018. There is a steady overall growth despite a drop in 2003 and 2009.
- Access to sanitation increased from 75,5% in 2002, and to 90% by 2018. A steady upward year on year growth is visible.
- Access to water increased from 92,5% in 2002 and to 95,3% by 2018. Growth has been marginal for the period.
- Access to refuse removal fluctuated from 69,5% in 2002 and to 65,4% by 2018. There has been fluctuating improvements with access dropping significantly in 2009 to 56% but improving thereafter.

This improvement year on year has been maintained whilst, according to Statistics SA data, the number of households in the province increased incrementally over the same period by 146 000 in 1996, to 247 000 in 2002 and 342 000 by 2018. Environmental hygiene plays an essential role in the prevention of many diseases. It also impacts on the natural environment and the preservation of important natural assets, such as water resources. Proper sanitation is one of the key elements in improving environmental sanitation. Despite the improved access to sanitation facilities, many households continue to be without any proper sanitation facilities. The figure shows the percentage of households that either had no sanitation facilities or that had to use bucket toilets. The percentage of households that continued to live without proper sanitation facilities have been declining consistently between 2002 and 2018, decreasing from 17,6% to 3,7% during this period.

Figure 56: Percentage of Household with no Toilet Facility

Source: (Statistics SA, 2018)

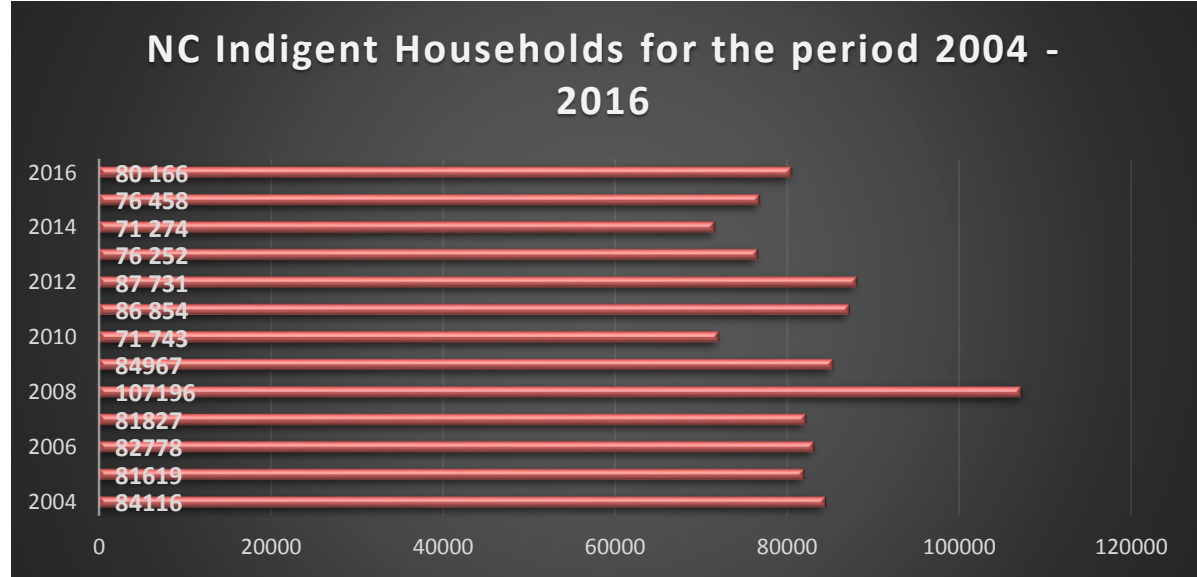


9.3.4 Free Basic Services

A key feature of the new local government system has been the provision of Free Basic Services to those severely afflicted by abject poverty and unemployment in this country and province (Northern Cape 10-year Review, 2004). The experience of poverty is multi-dimensional. While the inability to access income remains one of the most obvious expressions of poverty, it extends beyond this. There is an additional institutional dimension of poverty that recognizes that the poorest in the nation are those who are unable to access government assistance designed to provide a social safety net because of institutional failure. Institutional poverty leads to exclusion of the indigent from access to basic services. The Indigent Policy and the Indigent Policy Implementation Guidelines are intended to assist and guide municipalities in the to improve the lives of indigents through the provision of a social safety net. According to the Non-financial Census of Municipalities, for the period ending 30 June 2017, 27 of the 32 municipalities have implemented Indigent Support Policies to support indigent households.

The figure below provides a breakdown of indigent households in the province for the period 2004 – 2016. There has been a decrease in the number of indigent households from 2004 (84 116) to 2016 (80 166), with the number fluctuating during this time period. This was a substantial increase of 25 369 from 2007 to 2008 from 81 827 to 107 196. This increase may be attributed to cumulative effects of the incorporation of the cross border municipalities into the NC province. The lowest number of recorded indigent households was in 2010 at 71 743 and 2014 and 71 274.

Figure 57: NC Indigent Households for the period 2004 -2016

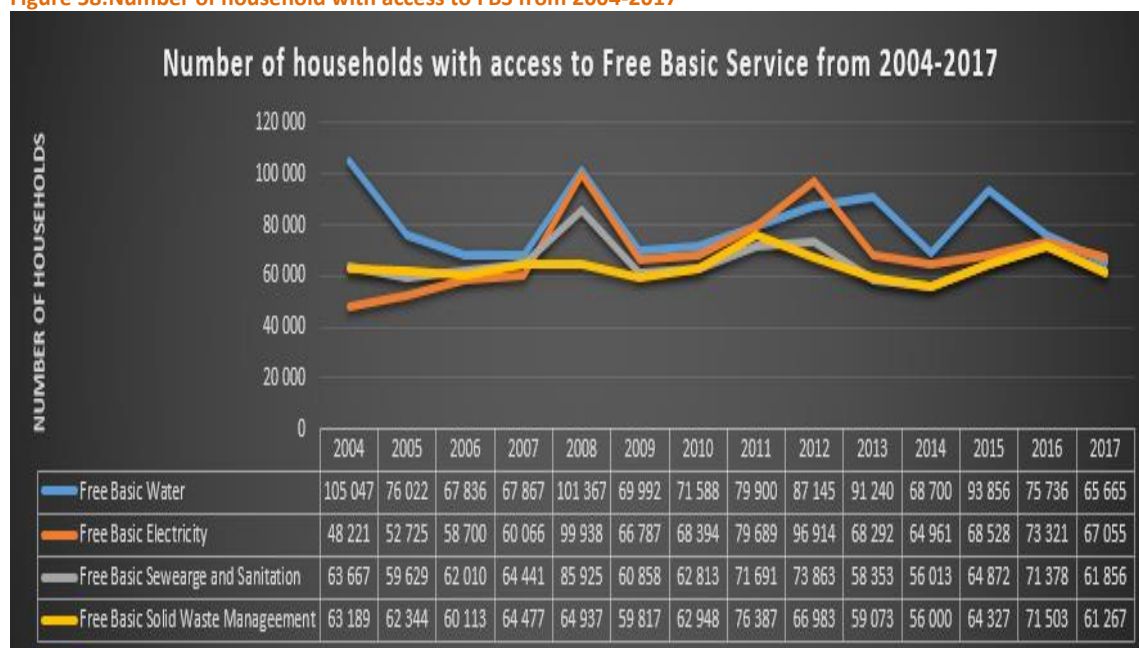


(Non Financial Census of Municipalities, 2017)

The assessment of the FBS is done against the surveys of municipalities as conducted by Statistics SA and on the concluding analysis captured in the Non-Financial Census of Municipalities. In the survey, the data source is municipalities as opposed to households. Therefore, the term used in the survey “consumer units” or “billing unit” is not directly comparable with other Stats SA household based surveys. (Non Financial Census of Municipalities, 2017). The Non Financial Census of Municipalities was initiated in 2003. Data for all FBS is available from 2004 onwards.

As per figure below, reflects the number of indigent households with access to FBS for the period 20014 – 2017. The time series reflects fluctuating numbers with 75 736 having access to FBW, 73 321 having access to FBE, 71 378 having access FBSS and 71 503 having access to FBSWM by 2016.

Figure 58: Number of household with access to FBS from 2004-2017



(Non Financial Census of Municipalities, 2017)

9.3.5 Support to Local Government

Since the establishment of the Local Government System as per the Municipal Structures Act, there have been numerous initiatives by both national and provincial government, to support local government in a more structured, practical and sustained way. These initiatives have been designed towards local government reform aimed at achieving improved local government service delivery. The province has participated in all these initiatives.

9.3.5.1 2004-2006 Project Consolidate

This was established to transform dysfunctional municipalities into entities capable of service delivery. The key achievements of Project consolidated have been: Some limited achievements of the programme were:

- Appointment of Community Development Workers (CDWs) in most municipalities. However, the challenge has been the supervision of these CDWs in the performance of their tasks.
- Training of municipal officials in financial management, although some of those have since left the municipalities.

9.3.5.2 Five-Year Local Government Strategic Agenda (2006 – 2011).

The key objectives hereof were to:

- Mainstreaming hands-on support to all municipalities;
- Addressing the structure and governance arrangements of the State in order to better support local government; and
- Refining and strengthening the policy, legislative and fiscal environment for local government.

These objectives were translated into five key Performance Areas (KPAs) that all provinces and municipalities were required to report against:

- Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development
- Basic Service Delivery
- Local Economic Development
- Municipal Financial Viability and Management
- Good Governance and Public Participation.

9.3.5.3 2011 Local Government Turn Around Strategy (LGTAS)

The strategy was intended to resolve the issues of dysfunctional municipalities and achieve a local governance system that is efficient, effective, accountable and responsive to communities. The implementation of the LGTAS programme was further complemented by the Municipal Infrastructure Support Agency (MISA) programme through the deployment of engineers. Thirteen distressed municipalities are supported through both the LGTAS and MISA programmes.

Five strategic objectives were identified to guide LGTAS interventions and support framework. These were aimed at restoring the confidence of the majority of people in municipalities, as the primary expression of the developmental state at a local level. These were:

- Ensure that municipalities meet the basic service needs of communities;
- Build clean, effective, efficient, responsive and accountable local government;
- Improve performance and professionalism in municipalities;
- Improve national and provincial policy, oversight and support, and
- Strengthen partnerships between local government, communities and civil society.

The roll-out plan of the LGTAS during 2010-2011 was divided into four phases:

Phase 1: 20 January – 9 February 2010

Provincial Support Teams undertook visits to all 32 municipalities for purposes of identifying 2 municipalities in the province that are most vulnerable and require urgent assistance from national and provincial government: The two municipalities identified were the Joe Morolong and Renosterberg local municipalities.

Phase 2: 10 February – 31 March 2010

This phase involved the full roll-out of LGTAS for the priority/targeted municipalities (i.e. Joe Morolong and Renosterberg Local Municipalities), as well as the completion of LGTAS for all 32 municipalities in the Province. The consolidation of the LGTAS priorities with the Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) and budgets of municipalities formed the key element of this phase.

Phase 3: 1 April – 30 June 2010

Focus was on provincially coordinated IDP analysis sessions to examine draft IDPs and LGTAS within them. During this phase the IDP, budgets and service delivery budget Implementation Plans (SDBIPs) were adopted by all 32 municipalities in the province.

Phase 4: 1 July 2010 – 31 March 2011

The MEC for COGHSTA commented on the commitments made to the IDPs. Implementation of the IDP went hand-in-hand with 'hands on, Rapid Response' support processes, leveraging of stakeholder support and reporting and monitoring.

9.3.5.4 Back to Basics 2014 – 2019

The Back to Basics programme was launched in 2014, after the Minister of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs, Mr Pravin Gordhan had identified local government as a primary point of delivery and where most citizens interface with government. Although a lot had been achieved, there still remained challenges. Institutional incapacity and widespread poverty had undermined the sustainability of the municipalities leading in some instances to a catastrophic breakdown in services. The spate of service delivery protests was a reflection of community frustration with these failures, and had generated a negative narrative and perceptions for municipalities. The five pillars of the Back to Basics Campaign are:

- Putting people and their concerns first;
- Supporting the delivery of municipal services to the right quality and standard;
- Promoting good governance, transparency and accountability;
- Ensuring sound financial management and accounting; and
- Building institutional resilience and administrative capability.

During the initial categorisation of municipalities to assess the performance of municipalities in 2015/16 financial year of the 32 municipalities assessed and categorised two (2) were confirmed to be doing well, whilst fifteen (15) were classified as “at Risk” and remaining fifteen (15) were classified as dysfunctional (COGHSTA Annual Report, 2016/17, pg15).

Table 49: B2B categories of municipal performance: "well", 'at risk "and "dysfunctional" during 2015/16

Well Performing	At Risk	Dysfunctional
Frances Baard DM	Gamagara LM	Mier LM (Now part of Dawid Kruiper) LM
ZF Mgcawu DM	Phokwane LM	!Kheis LM
	Magareng LM	Kai !Garib LM
	Ubuntu LM	Kgatelopele LM
	Khai-Ma LM	Dikgatlong LM
	//Khara Hais (Now Dawid Kruiper) LM	Tsantsabane LM
	Sol Plaatje LM	Joe Morolong LM
	Richterveld LM	Ga-Segonyana LM
	Namakwa DM	Renosterberg LM

Well Performing	At Risk	Dysfunctional
	Hantam DM John Taolo Gaetsewe DM Pixley ka Seme DM Emthanjeni LM Umsobomvu LM	Siyancuma LM Nama Khoi LM Siyathemba LM Thembelihle LM Karoo HooglanId LM Kamiesberg LM
2	15	15

Source: COGHTSA, Annual Performance Plan 2018/19

The then Minister of CoGTA, Mr Des van Rooyen, visited the province on 20 October 2017 to engage with municipalities on impact of B2B. Both National and Provincial government identified 8 municipalities for support. These were:

- Ubuntu Municipality
- Renosterberg Municipality
- Siyathemba Municipality
- Tsantsabane Municipality
- Kgatelopele Municipality
- Dikgatlong Municipality
- Phokwane Municipality and
- Ga-Segonyana Municipality

During 2018, the new Minister of CoGTA, Dr Zweli Mkhize, identified 57 municipalities in the country during his vote speech in May 2018, of which 8 are in the province, for special focus support. These were:

- Nama Khoi Municipality – due to revenue challenges
- Ubuntu Municipality
- Emthanjeni Municipality – due to revenue challenges
- Kareeberg Municipality – due to revenue challenges
- Siyancuma Municipality
- Renosterberg Municipality
- Tsantsabane Municipality
- Joe Morolong Municipality

In order to support the municipalities, Programme Managers from MISA were deployed to provide technical support in the areas of Chief Engineers, Civil Engineers, 2 Electrical Engineers and 2 Planners. Support during this period was provided to 14 municipalities in the province. Municipalities that are supported include Richtersveld, Khai-Ma, Dawid Kruiper, Tsantsabane, Joe Morolong, Ga-Segonyana, Gamagara, Dikgatlong, Ubuntu, Kareeberg, Renosterberg, Thembelihle, Siyathemba and Siyancuma Municipalities. Furthermore, some municipalities were enlisted for Simplified Revenue Plan. These are Nama Khoi, Ubuntu, Emthanjeni, Siyancuma and Tsantsabane. This is to assist these municipalities to address challenges in their revenue value chain. Five municipalities have developed Financial Recovery Plans (FRPs) in terms of the MFMA after experiencing financial distress. These were:

- Renosterberg Municipality
- Ubuntu Municipality
- Kai !Garib Municipality
- Dikgatlong Municipality and
- Magareng Municipality

Furthermore, the province has intervened in 2 municipalities in terms of Section 137 of the MFMA and requested them to develop Financial Recovery Plans. These were:

- Ubuntu Municipality and
- Magareng Municipality

National CoGTA and CoGHSTA have decided that all these lists be combined for support, reducing it to 15 municipalities (dysfunctional). The final list agreed by both CoGTA and department are the following municipalities:

- Nama Khoi Municipality
- Ubuntu Municipality
- Emthanjeni Municipality
- Kareeberg Municipality
- Renosterberg Municipality
- Siyathemba Municipality
- Siyancuma Municipality

- Kai !Garib Municipality
- Tsantsabane Municipality
- Kgatelopele Municipality
- Dikgatlong Municipality
- Magareng Municipality
- Phokwane Municipality
- Joe Morolong Municipality and
- Ga-Segonyana Municipality

The impact of the B2b programme is not yet visible as most are only implementing infrastructure plans after MISA have deployed technical experts. Proper analysis of the impact will be able to be made in future.

9.3.6 Improving Governance and Accountability

9.3.6.1 Audit Outcomes of Municipalities

During 2009, the late Minister Sicelo Shiceka, Minister of CoGTA launched the Operation Clean Audit 2014. Operation Clean Audit (OPCA) was initiated towards the end of 2010 to assist provincial government in its efforts to improve audit outcomes particularly in local government. To this end an OPCA Coordinating Committee (OPCACC) was established comprising of senior government officials and representatives of SALGA, DBSA and the Auditor General's Office. This committee was chaired by the Director General of the province.

For the period 2006/7 to 2017/18, as per the Auditor General audit outcomes, on municipal audits, the number of disclaimers has decreased from 25 in 2006/07 to 4 by 2017/18 financial year. Whilst the reduction in disclaimers is a positive improvement, the province has not improved on the number of municipalities that achieved clean audits. Ongoing support is provided to municipalities to improve on the audit outcomes by funding the development of GRAP compliant Asset Registers.

Table 50: Municipal: Audit Outcomes for the period 2006/7 - 2017/18

AUDIT OUTCOMES	2006/7	2007/08	2008/09	2009/10	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
Unqualified with no findings	0	1	2	1	0	0	1	2	2	2	1	1
Unqualified with findings	2	1	4	7	8	7	6	8	9	10	11	10
Qualified	4	9	4	7	6	7	9	11	13	15	15	10
Adverse	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Disclaimer	25	21	22	17	18	18	16	11	8	5	4	4
Audit not completed at legislated date	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	6
Total	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	31	31

9.3.6.2 Tabling of Annual Reports of Municipalities

The MFMA, which was promulgated on 1 July 2004, required municipalities to compile, table and adopt an annual report within seven months of the end of the financial year. From 2006/07 Financial Year all municipalities were required table their Annual Reports, since the exemption from 2004 granted by the Minister of Finance expired.

The table below provides the progress on the tabling of Annual Reports (AR) by municipalities since 2006. For the period 2008/9 to 2010/11 majority of the municipalities complied to the MFMA requirements regarding the tabling of AR with the exception of 1 in 2009/10. As of 2011/12, there is a regression as 12 municipalities did not comply. Significant improvement is noted in 2014/15 with only 1 not complying. By 2017/18 this dropped to 4 municipalities not tabling the AR.

Table 51: Tabling of Annual reports by municipalities for the period 2006/07 to 2017/18

Financial Year	Number Tabled	Municipality that did not table
2005/06	5	Exemption in place
2006/07	12	Nama Khoi, Karoo Hoogland, Namakwa, Ubuntu, Kareeberg, Renosterberg, //Khara Hais, Phokwane, Ga-Segonyana, Gamagara and Kgalagadi (now JT Gaetsewe) All other municipalities were exempted
2007/08	23	Nama Khoi, Namakwa, Thembelihle, Pixley ka Seme, Kai !Garib, !Kheis, Magareng, Moshaweng (now Joe Morolong) and Kgalagadi (now JT Gaetsewe)
2008/09	32	None
2009/10	31	Siyancuma
2010/11	32	None
2011/12	25	Richtersveld, Karoo Hoogland, Namakwa, //Khara Hais, Tsantsabane, Kgatelopele and Dikgatlong
2012/13	20	Kamiesberg, Khai-Ma, Umsobomvu, Renosterberg, Siyathemba, Siyancuma, !Kheis, Kgatelopele, Dikgatlong, Magareng, Gamagara and John Taolo Gaetsewe

2013/14	20	Khai-Ma, Ubuntu, Renosterberg, Thembelihle, Siyathemba, Siyancuma, Kgatelopele, ZF Mgcawu, Dikgatlong, Phokwane, Gamagara and John Taolo Gaetsewe
2014/15	30	Renosterberg
2015/16	26	Ubuntu, Renosterberg, Kgatelopele, Magareng and Phokwane
2016/17	27	Ubuntu, Renosterberg, Thembelihle and Siyathemba
2017/18	27	Thembelihle, Siyathemba, Tsantsabane and Phokwane

9.3.7 Citizen Participation

The establishment of ward committees at local government level has enriched the participation of local communities in the affairs of local municipalities. These committees support the right of communities to participate in decisions that affect development in their areas, while similarly imposing a corresponding duty on municipalities to encourage community participation (DPME Twenty Year Review, 2014).

Ward Committees are an indelible part of participatory democracy and municipalities need to utilise the ward committees as structures to assist development in the wards. Although ward committees have been formed, some of these are not meeting as required. These needs to improve their ward operational plans to ensure that they become more effective. The department continues to support municipalities where the committees are not functioning as required. The legislative review on ward committees will assist in dealing with challenges ward committees are experiencing and the outcome of the review will be implemented in 2021 after the local government elections.

Community Development Workers (CDW's) are employed in most of the wards within the province. The programme initially started with 315 CDW's appointed. CDW's attended a compulsory training for one year and the qualification attained was at NQF 4 level. When the programme was implemented it was not funded by government and the department of COGHSTA needed to find the funding from within its departmental budget for the CDW programme.

As at end August 2017 there were 231 CDW's, who were distributed as follows. This is as reported in the COGHSTA Public Participation Regional Reports: March 2019

- Namakwa – 39
- Pixley ka Seme – 54
- ZF Mgcawu – 29
- Frances Baard – 67
- John Taolo Gaetsewe – 42

As at the end of March 2019 there were 219 CDW's in the employ of the department, distributed as follows:

- Namakwa – 38
- Pixley ka Seme – 51
- ZF Mgcawu – 27
- Frances Baard – 62
- John Taolo Gaetsewe – 41

CDW's experience challenges with the tools of trade to be able to perform their role more effectively; as well as the non-filling of vacant posts of CDW's. In some wards there are currently no CDW's. This means that communities are at a disadvantage in accessing government services. The appointment of CDW supervisors will need to get attention in the 6th administration. Despite these challenges, CDW's assist communities to access government services and are an integral part of the programmes of government at a ward level. In the 6th administration CDW's, will be encouraged to make 1 minute videos of the community members they have assisted and these will be collated into regional videos to showcase the access provided to government services.

9.3.8 Developing Skills and Capacity

Since municipalities operate in a complex environment. The 2014-19 MTsf established that municipal performance is impacted at four levels: the individual, institutional, environmental and macro-socio-economic. Responding to these issues requires a proactive approach to managing the intergovernmental system, in order to address specific weaknesses in coordination and capacity support. National and provincial departments and entities impacting on local government, will have to cooperate better and act with greater synergy in providing oversight and support to the local sphere. Moreover, provincial

departments of local government will need to improve the way they monitor and support local government (MTSF 2014-2019, Appendix 9, Pg 2).

Between 2014 – 2019, the province has made numerous interventions to address the capacity constraints and institutional weaknesses.

- Due to vacant senior management positions such as municipal managers, chief financial officers, directors of community services, corporate services, and technical services, among others, qualified and competent personnel of COGHSTA were seconded to fill those vacant positions and ensure that municipal performance improved and formal recruitment process to fill such vacant positions was underway.
- Following the municipal elections that took place in 2016, COGHSTA was able to advise the municipalities to be constituted legally, induction of newly elected councillors was completed on time and various training programmes were instituted and assistance was provided to municipalities with the election of wards committees.
- Support has been provided to municipalities to develop participatory ward level service improvement plans (covering service delivery quality and reliability, clearing of curb-sides & vacant land, road quality), as well as design mechanisms for municipalities to make project and delivery information available and transparent, for the purpose of capacitating communities to hold municipalities accountable (COGHSTA, R 2016/17).
- Assistance to municipalities provided to improve own revenues by putting in place measures to improve property valuation rating and levying of user charges. The aim has always been to help municipalities with development of revenue improvement plans. Supported municipalities to develop; implement and monitor action plans to address previous audit outcomes with a view to achieving unqualified audit outcome without matters and establish systems to help monitor in-year financial reports and address deficiencies in a manner that will seek to help municipalities to improve their audit outcomes.

Noting the challenges that still prevail within municipalities, support to municipalities is ongoing in an effort to turn around the state of performance, finance, governance and service delivery capability. Equally, deployment of adequate resources is critical for municipalities to deliver quality services to the needy on time. That would require

deployment of skilled and knowledgeable managers and qualified and competent staff at all levels (COGHTSA, AR 2016/17).

9.3.9 Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The MIG aims to eradicate municipal infrastructure backlogs in poor communities to ensure the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting. The Department of Cooperative Governance is responsible for managing and transferring the MIG and provides support to the province and municipalities on implementing MIG projects. Although the MIG allocations have increased to municipalities over the period, most municipalities are unable to spend the allocated funding. When municipalities do not spend a determined level by end December the transfer of funds ceases and reallocated to those municipalities spending. Details are provided for the last two financial years below.

For the 2017/18 Financial Year, Northern Cape municipalities were allocated R480 527 million. Allocations of R43 507 million were reduced to 8 municipalities and reallocated R51 000 million to 5 municipalities. The Northern Cape was re-allocated an additional R7 493 million, increasing allocation to R488 020 million. For the 2018/19 Financial Year, Northern Cape municipalities were allocated R474 985 million. Allocations of R49 766 million were reduced to 12 municipalities and proposed to reallocate additional R32 765 million to 3 municipalities. Northern Cape municipalities allocations was to be reduced by R17 million.

9.3.10 Community Works Programme (CWP)

The Community Works Programme (CWP) was established in 2010, as one of the government's interventions to fight unemployment and create sustainable jobs for people living in marginalised areas where there are few opportunities. It is intended to be an ongoing programme to assist the vulnerable in society to fight unemployment, by providing participants with a sense of dignity and social inclusion whilst developing their skills to make them eligible for employment within society both private and public as well as providing opportunities for the establishment of co-operatives and small businesses.

The CWP is an area-based programme with sites usually covering several wards in a municipal area. Each municipality is a site and it may have sub sites based on geographical spread of the municipality. Sites are located in areas where unemployment is high and

where alternatives seem likely to remain limited for the foreseeable future. Each site has a target of between 500 - 1 500 participants in every municipality. The local community where the site is located is actively involved in the Local Reference Committee (LRC) in identifying 'useful work' they believe is needed in their area. These include planting and cultivating food gardens at clinics, schools, churches and households plots; home-based care; developing recreational spaces and sporting facilities; environmental rehabilitation; general maintenance work, including the cleaning of schools, as well as other tasks to support schools and community safety. Priority is given to government buildings in terms of repair and maintenance.

There are two categories of CWP participants: regular participants and supervisors/coordinators. Supervisors work a maximum of 20 days per month per month, limited to 240 days per year. Regular participants are guaranteed 8 work days per month and 100 days per year. The stipends received by the participants injects just under R50 million on a quarterly basis into the economy of the Northern Cape.

For CWP, 127 056 jobs were created from 2012/13 to 2018/19, of which 45% represented youth, 73% women and 3,3% persons with disabilities.

Table 52: Number of opportunities created per financial year for the period 2011/12 to 2018/19

Financial Year	No of opportunities	% of youth	% of women	% of people with disabilities
2010/11	0			
2011/12	300 but nobody registered			
2012/13	11 040	56,9	66,57	2,4
2013/14	16 689	53,3	71,6	2,8
2014/15	13 701	45,7	75,8	3,4
2015/16	16 596	45,9	75,7	3,3
2016/17	20 378	45,1	74,9	3,5
2017/18	23 602	43,0	74,7	3,7
2018/19	25 050	35,2	74,3	3,6

Source: CWP: Management Information System April 2019

The programme in the province is being implemented by an implementing agent as appointed by National CoGTA on a three (3) year basis and the programme implementation is monitored and supported by the provincial department of COGHSTA. There are sites who have not reached their target in terms of the number of opportunities available and this matter is receiving attention in the 2019/2020 financial year, as there are other sites that could make use of the job opportunities for the vulnerable.

9.4 Persistent challenges

- High vacancy rate at Senior Management level is being experienced by municipalities in the province. They struggle to recruit suitable candidates that meet the prescribed competencies and the remoteness of some of the municipalities.
- Failure to maintain and refurbish infrastructure resulting in deterioration of the quality of the infrastructure. This results service delivery break-downs as a result of most of our municipalities not spending on maintenance.
- Non interphase with ward committees and council as it relates to service delivery challenges as well as little or no representation of councillors at ward meetings.
- Sharp decline in public trust and confidence in local government. This can be seen by the increase in service delivery protests.
- Some Municipal sites not achieving their target in terms of the CWP Programme which results in losses of job opportunities, whilst other sites need more job opportunities for the vulnerable in society.
- The challenge CDW's experience is the tools of trade to be able to perform their role more effectively; as well as the non-filling of vacant posts of CDW's.
- Weak financial management and governance. This can be seen from the unfavourable audit outcomes by Office of the Auditor General and increase in the dysfunctional and at risk status of municipalities.
- Debt to Eskom and Water Boards. Most of the municipalities have high levels of debt to Eskom, Water Boards and audit fees as a result of their inability to collect revenue for municipal services. Although a Provincial Debt Steering Committee has been established, additional measures are needed to address this challenge.

9.5 Looking ahead

- Improve governance. It is important that the capacity of Councillors to exercise their oversight responsibilities in the municipalities. This include the improvement of the relationship between Council and the municipal administration. Council Committees need to play their oversight roles including the MPACs.
- Speakers of local municipalities will be required to report on a monthly basis to the MEC for Co-operative Governance on the processes of public participation in their municipalities including the legislative meetings councillors are required to hold in their wards. They will need to report as well on the interphase between council and ward committees including whether the service delivery matters raised by ward committees have been attended to by the municipality.
- The department will interact with underperforming sites in the CWP Programme and reduce their allocated targets in order that the sites that are performing can increase their targets due to the appetite there is to participate in the CWP programme.
- Improved monitoring and support of public participation processes by COGHSTA.
- Increased and improved municipal management.
- Improved delivery of services. This includes spending of Conditional Grants and MIG to improve services to previously disadvantaged areas and maintenance of infrastructure in serviced areas.
- Support the change in focus towards strengthening integration of basic service delivery across spheres and sectors of government, including addressing misalignment particularly (but not exclusively) in municipalities where the greatest level of unemployment and poverty are found and where largest economic growth is generated. This focus should be maintained for the 2019-24 medium-term.
- Put in place a viable national framework that incentivises and supports municipalities to plan and ensure adequate funding for the maintenance and refurbishment of infrastructure.;
- DWS to lead in the refurbishment of the waste water treatment works that have become dysfunctional, if any in the province.
- Strengthen performance (in terms of monitoring, supporting and empowering municipalities to fulfil their mandate) of COGHSTA.
- Improve the operational and functional performance of WSAs and municipalities that distribute electricity.



Chapter 10

PROTECT AND ENHANCE OUR ENVIRONMENTAL ASSETS
AND NATURAL RESOURCES

25

YEAR REVIEW

CHAPTER 10

10.1 Problem statement

Apartheid legislation hindered access to natural resources, e.g. use of land, water, fisheries, minerals, wildlife and clean air. Furthermore:

‘South Africa's apartheid policies, combined with the under regulated activities of local and transnational corporations, contributed to the degradation of environmental resources, including soil, water and vegetation. They encouraged the misuse of fertilisers and pesticides. They placed workers' lives at severe risk because dangerous practices and substances were inadequately monitored (mining in South Africa remains an extremely dangerous job). Poverty and environmental degradation have been closely linked. In general, existing environmental policies allow inefficient and wasteful use of water, energy and raw materials, and high levels of air and water pollution’ (Reconstruction and Development Programme: A Policy Framework, 1994, pp. 42-43).

The changes in administrative boundaries after 1994, brought about the Northern Cape Province, consisting of approximately 1/3 or about 30% of the landmass of the country, with a coastline at the Atlantic Ocean and bordering Namibia and Botswana to the north. The province is home to internationally recognised biodiversity ‘hotspots’ or areas with especially high concentrations of biodiversity which are under serious threat, namely the Succulent Karoo shared with the Western Cape and Namibia and a part of the Cape Floral Kingdom - fynbos biome which it shares with the Western Cape (Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, 2005, p. 12). The Orange River Mouth, in the north west of the province, where the Orange River flows into the Atlantic Ocean, is an estuary of international importance, supporting a wide variety of plants and animals. International borders with Namibia and Botswana make the province vulnerable to (illegal) import of invasive species and illegal activities across these borders.

Northern Cape had 5 nature reserves, while in the environmental management sector, the provincial and local authorities played a major role. The biodiversity management sector was small, with only a few game farmers and a few bird breeders. The old Cape legislation of 1974 under which the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform, Environment and

Conservation operated, made it difficult to execute its mandates (South Africa country study 2005: Situational assessment undertaken to inform South Africa's National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP), 2005, p. 45). The National Environmental Management Act (107 of 1998), acknowledges that the 'inequality in the distribution of wealth and resources, and the resultant poverty, are among the important causes as well as the results of environmentally harmful practices.'

10.2 The journey since 1994

10.2.1 Overview

Post 1994, Conservation management and environmental management were clustered in one programme in the Department of Agriculture. The Programme focused on waste management and pollution control, impact management, environmental education, coastal management, management of protected areas, biodiversity management while scientific management and regional ecological services fell under the Programme: Scientific Services. The agricultural leg of the department focused on land conservation and landcare projects. Later, the functions of air quality management and regulatory services (now known as compliance and enforcement) were added.

By 1994, environment did not have any presence in the districts, except for impact management in the Namaqua District (History of environment and conservation sectors in the province, 2019). Where in the past the mandate focused on conservation and tourism, it shifted to the promotion of sustainable development through an integrated environmental management approach. For sustainable development to be achieved, social, economic and environmental issues should be equally considered.

One of the objectives of the RDP was 'Creating a sustainable and environmentally friendly growth and development path' (The Presidency: White Paper on Reconstruction and Development, 1994, p. 7). The National Environmental Management Act (1998) paved the way to make this a reality for everyone. It set standards and procedures for the incorporation of environmental considerations into every decision. It also provided a framework for measures such as land reform and the provision of basic infrastructure to ultimately reduce the pressure on the natural environment.

10.2.2 Legislation and Policies

10.2.2.1 Constitutional provisions enshrined in the Bill of Rights

The Bill of Rights provides for the right to a clean and healthy environment and so implies that the state must ensure that negative environmental impacts do not harm people. Section 24 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act 1996, delineate that everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being. It further states that the environment needs to be protected for the benefit of present and future generations. It further alludes to prevention of pollution and ecological degradation, promotion of conservation and securing ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources, while promoting justifiable economic and social development (NC: Provincial Growth and Development Plan, 2018, p. 325).

10.2.2.2 National Development Plan (NDP) 2030

The vision of the NDP relating to environmental sustainability was a transition to a low-carbon economy and the integration of environmental matters in to all economic and social activities to ensure sustainable development.

10.2.2.3 Key developmental priorities over the past 25 years

The National Environmental Management Act (107 of 1998) set out to ensure the social, economic and environmental rights of everyone are 'protected, promoted and fulfilled' and the 'basic needs of previously disadvantaged communities' are met. The Act set out to 'prevent pollution and ecological degradation; promote conservation; and secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development'. The environment sector put in place policy, frameworks, legislation and institutional arrangements to manage the country's natural assets on which the national economy fundamentally depends (South Africa country study 2005: Situational assessment undertaken to inform South Africa's National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP), 2005, p. 3).

10.2.2.4 Key governmental commitments regarding policy pronouncements and plans - including legislation.

In 1995, South Africa ratified the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), which was nationalised through the National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004. South Africa is also part of the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES). CITES aim to ensure that international trade in specimens of wild animals and plants does not threaten their survival. In 1997, South Africa also ratified the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) for which an implementation mechanism was approved by Cabinet in 2004 (the Climate Change Response Strategy).

The National Environmental Management Act no 107 of 1998 (NEMA), and a suit of subordinate legislation, resulted from the constitutional right for a clean and healthy environment. The NEMA also provided the policy framework for the achievement of the RDP objectives of effective protection and sustainable use of the environment, integration of environmental objectives with reconstruction and development plans. The NEMA was based on the premise that 'sustainable development requires the integration of social, economic and environmental factors in the planning, implementation and evaluation of decisions to ensure that development serves present and future generations. The subordinate legislation provided for management and governance of specific areas of environmental management, e.g. air quality, biodiversity management, waste management, coastal management, protected areas, etcetera. The Biodiversity Act 2004 provides a broad base of legislation, as it relates to the natural environment of South Africa (NC: Provincial Growth and Development Plan, 2018, p. 325). Other legislation like the National Water Act no 36 of 1998, the National Forests Act no 84 of 1998 and the Marine Living Resources Act no 18 of 1998 also govern sections of the natural environment and its sustainable use.

South Africa's National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan of 2005 described biological diversity as follows:

'Essentially, it provides a unifying principle which encompasses all genes, species, habitats and ecosystems on earth, thus covering everything from a wild plant's genes to the high seas. This convenient shorthand not only denotes all components of the living world but also the intricate interdependence between them' (Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, 2005, p. 3)

The Strategy is a framework against which the natural assets, on which the national economy fundamentally depends, can be managed (Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, 2005, p. 3). It 'sets out a framework and a plan of action for the conservation of South Africa's biological diversity and the equitable sharing of benefits derived from this use' (Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, 2005, p. 6). The Integrated Resource Plan 2010 (promulgated in 2011) outlined the preferred energy mix for future needs. The plan included 9.2 GW of wind, 8.4 GW of solar PV and 1.2 GW of CSP by 2020. The Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme provides a vehicle for the provision of renewable (and non-renewable) energy sources (Department of Energy, 2019).

10.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

10.3.1 Waste Management

The function of landfill site licensing was under the Department of Water Affairs, while the provincial environmental unit would monitor the landfill sites of local authorities. With the promulgation of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act no 59 of 2008, the licensing function was given over to Department of Environmental Affairs, which then cascaded it to provinces.

At the dawn of democracy, the capacity in municipalities was insufficient to implement environmental legislation effectively and efficiently. Despite years of capacity building initiatives, this challenge still exists in 2019, which is reflected in e.g. the slow pace of the licensing of municipal landfill sites, where only by 2018 all municipal sites in the province were licensed. In 2001, 4.8% of households in the Northern Cape did not have access to refuse removal. In 2007, 3% did not have access (Community Survey 2007, 2009), while in 2016 this increased to 5% (Statistics South Africa, 2018). From 2015 to 2018, officials and councillors of 20 municipalities were trained on waste management. Seven (7) recycling initiatives were coordinated or supported with financial and technical support in all districts from 2003 to 2019.

10.3.2 Incorporation of environmental considerations into planning and decision making

With the necessary assistance from DENC to officers and councillors, local and district municipalities have been able to develop the following tools: Integrated Waste Management Plans, Climate Change Response Strategies, Spatial Development Frameworks, Air Quality Management Plans, Environmental Management Frameworks, etcetera. These tools are assisting municipalities to integrate environmental sustainability into their plans and operations.

Municipalities have been supported systematically, to integrate environmental matters in Municipal Integrated Development Plans. The Environmental Management Frameworks for Municipalities assisted this process by providing a study of the biophysical and socio-cultural systems of a geographically defined area, to reveal where specific land uses may best be practiced and to offer performance standards for maintaining appropriate use of such land. Environmental matters have been systematically integrated into Spatial Development Plans with the implementation of the Guidelines for the Development of Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks, published by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. This approach was strengthened with the promulgation of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No. 16 of 2013.

Environmental Impact Assessment workshops were held with various stakeholders since 2002, to capacitate all on the requirements and proper interpretation of legislation and guidelines and their implementation. The Environmental Implementation Plan (EIP) serves as a tool to coordinate environmental matters across spheres and sectors of government. In 2003, the first edition of the Northern Cape Environmental Implementation Plan (EIP) was gazetted, and a booklet published for use by the public, municipalities and other stakeholders. By 2015, the third edition of the EIP was published. The implementation of the plan has been monitored annually and allows for the identification of gaps in the management of sustainable development. The State of the Environment Outlook Report of 2005, provides a guiding framework for sustainable development in the province.

10.3.3 Economy

The province is the biggest contributor of renewable energy in the country. By the end of 2018, 59 projects for 3 621 MW were procured in the Northern Cape, with approximately 1552 MW or 43% in Solar PV, 1 459 or 40% in wind energy, 600 MW or 17% in CSP and 10 MW in Hydro energy (Independent Power Producers Procurement Programme: An overview, 2018, p. 50).

The mining sector has been, and remains to be one of the biggest contributing economic sectors in the province. The industry is invasive and destruction of biodiversity is unavoidable. In 1996 the mining and quarrying industry contributed 25.8% to the provincial economy (Gross Domestic Product of the Region) and in 2002 this was 23.7% (NC: Provincial Growth and Development Strategy 2004-2014, 2004), while in 2017 this reduced to 17,5% (Socio-economic Review and Outlook 2018, 2018, p. 15).

The developments in the mining and renewable energy sectors require consideration of potential consequences, by ensuring minimum impact for the health and wellbeing of future generations and the promotion of sustainable development. Where the mitigation hierarchy of avoidance, minimisation and restoration of impacts does not result in 'no net loss', these impacts have to be offset. The province provided Environmental Authorisations for mining activities until a change in legislation in 2014 transferred this responsibility to the Department of Mineral Resources. Where the mining activity triggers the need for a provincial biodiversity permit, the mitigation hierarchy is applied to promote sustainable development in the province.

10.3.4 Wildlife Economy

While mining and agriculture remain two key primary sectors in the economy of the province, the economy in the Northern Cape has seen significant growth in the renewable energy and wildlife sectors. In 2007, the total economic impact of the hunting industry in the Northern Cape was estimated at R774.3 million (South African Journal of Wildlife Research , 2009, p. 29). However, in that same year 134 active professional hunters were recorded, of which only fifteen were black, and 67 active hunting operators, of which only two were black (South African Journal of Wildlife Research , 2009, p. 28). The DENC

implemented training interventions to transform the sector. From 2014 to 2017, a total of 17 previously disadvantaged individuals (PDI's) were trained.

Through the land reform programme of the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform 623 194 (rounded off) hectares of land was transferred and restitution of 202 284 hectares (rounded off) of land was effected between 2009/10 and 2017/18 (DRDLR: Annual Statistical Report for Selected Service Delivery Programmes, 2018, pp. 9-17). Some of this land is suitable for game farming. The province has supported the transformation of the wildlife industry by providing training, technical support, access to land, mediation of mentorship arrangements and the provision of game. DENC supports Community Property Associations, individual landowners and prospective game farmers. The Operation Phakisa: Biodiversity Economy initiative (2016) has given new momentum to the transformation of the sector.

10.3.5 Conservation

In 1994, five provincially managed nature reserves covered 53 933 hectares (Department of Environment and Nature Conservation, 2018), although these did not cover all the biomes in the Province. By 2018 the provincially managed conservation estate was expanded to 7 reserves, covering 57 561 hectares: Doornkloof, Goegap, Nababiep, Oorlogskloof, Rolfontein, Witsand and Oranjeriviermond (DENC Annual Report 2017/18, 2018). The conservation estate was further expanded through the declaration of privately managed nature reserves expanding from 0 hectares to covering 183 391 hectares in the period 1994 to 2018. The stewardship programme, through which private land owners receive support when they decide to put their land under protection, complements the expansion of the conservation estate and could be implemented with funding support from the Lesley Hill Succulent Karoo Trust from 2015/16.

10.3.6 Awareness

The RDP objective on the formulation of a formal curriculum for environmental education, was fully effected with the integration of environmental content into the CAPS - Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement (2011). The Ecoschool programme, rolled out from 2009, provided assistance to schools in the Northern Cape for integration of environmental

learning into lessons. Between 2009 and 2018, 172 schools were reached through this programme. Between 2010 and 2018, 1567 teachers were trained.

10.3.7 Compliance and Enforcement

The compliance and enforcement unit was established in 2005 and Environmental Management Inspectors have been deployed across the province to monitor compliance and implement enforcement actions where required.

10.3.8 Climate Change

Climate change is regarded as a process which causes the earth's temperature to rise and fall periodically over centuries. Human intervention, however, has sped up the process, causing catastrophic effects world-wide. All ecosystems and biodiversity are threatened by climate change.

Climate change has a profound impact on human life - it influences temperatures shifts, food security, water resources and greenhouse gasses. Addressing climate change is an unfunded mandate for the province, but the department (DENC) was able to conduct key studies to inform adaptation and mitigation strategies from 2012, namely the provincial Climate Risk and Vulnerability Assessment (2016) and the Provincial Climate Change Adaptation Response Strategy (2018), as well as Climate Change Adaptation and Response Strategies for each District (2018). The Climate Change White Paper 10.2.6 (Department of Environmental Affairs, 2011), provide provinces with the mandate to establish Climate Change forums. The Climate Change forum (est. 2016) serves to initiate training, to coordinate the implementation of projects and to institute legislation.

10.3.9 Ocean's Economy

As part of Operation Phakisa, the Oceans Economy is a new strategic opportunity for the Northern Cape. Progress on the Ocean's economy, as reported to DENC, is as follows:

10.3.9.1 Marine transport and manufacturing

The Northern Cape project team is conducting pre-feasibility work on the Boegoebay Port Project, which should be finalised in 2019.

10.3.9.2 Offshore oil and gas exploration

Strategic Environmental Assessment for the phased gas pipeline network is being implemented by CSIR. Specialist studies have been completed.

10.3.9.3 Aquaculture

(a) Implementation of catalyst projects

Projects in the Northern Cape:

Hondeklip Bay:

- DCA Ranching
- Expansion of DST Abalone Hatchery
- Hondeklip Baai Abalone Hatchery

Kleinsee:

Really Useful Investments (new aquaculture project), now known as Diamond Coast Aquaculture, is implemented and expansion planned. This project uses abalone recirculation aquaculture systems.

(b) Develop and implement Aquaculture Development Zones (ADZ's)

In order to stimulate development investment in the sector and create an enabling environment, the DAFF has embarked on a process to establish ADZ's. The Van der Kloof Aquaculture Development Zone is one such identified zone and various projects are undertaken in this area with relevant partners.

(c) Marine protection services and ocean governance

The creation of a Marine Protected Area (MPA) representative network is underway.

(d) Small harbour development

A lab process is being prepared and planned, during which detailed project plans have been developed by DENC, Provincial Departments and Municipalities.

(e) Coastal and marine tourism

The following projects are in the planning phase with financial support by the National Department of Tourism (approximately R9 million).

- Development of a Hondeklipbaai - Port Nolloth Master Plan.
- Development of an Orange River Mouth Master Plan.

- Concept development for Hondeklipbaai and McDougall's Bay Campsites in the Northern Cape.
- Feasibility study for Northern Cape coastal aviation infrastructure.
- Concept development for Kleinsee Beach Precinct.

10.3.10 Impact of milestones on the lives of ordinary South Africans

Local government has shown to steadily improve the integration of environmental matters into its plans and strategies and has improved its ability to translate these into practices and actions in support of sustainable development. Improved compliance and enforcement actions of transgressions on environmental legislation, including through collaboration between provincial, national and international roleplayers. National and international interest in the unique biodiversity of the province has led to a vast amount of research by international and national academic institutions which informs decision making. The (inter-) national interest has also led to growth in the tourism and especially hunting industry.

10.3.10.1 Waste management

Improved management of waste has impact on communities where human activities are no longer taking place next to landfill sites. Work opportunities through recycling, with a steady export of recyclables from the province to processing plants.

10.3.10.2 Climate change

Climate smart initiatives in e.g. agriculture allow for more sustainable use of land and other resources.

10.3.10.3 Biodiversity economy

Opportunities for support in the form of access to land, training, game, technical advice to develop businesses in the biodiversity economy sector.

10.3.10.4 Conservation

The growing understanding of ecosystems allow for better informed decision making in support of sustainable development. The rich biodiversity in the province is an attraction for (international) tourists thus providing for opportunities for the tourism and hospitality industries.

10.4 Persistent challenges

There are several binding constraints that government has persistently encountered over the 25-years. These are covered under the relevant headings below:

10.4.1.1 Waste management

Multiple challenges at the local government sphere slow down implementation of legislation and plans, as well as the management of municipal functions like waste management.

10.4.1.2 Wildlife economy

Coordination between roleplayers in the sector remained a challenge mainly due to a lack of resources.

10.4.1.3 Conservation

Management of nature reserves is constrained by limited staff establishment and very low operational budgets. This situation poses the risk of losing biodiversity in the areas set aside to protect unique and threatened biodiversity, habitats and ecosystems. The conservation estate in the province has slowly but steadily increased, however, the limited growth in funding for the maintenance of these areas is threatening the future of the conservation status of these areas. Expansion of the conservation estate is hampered by the high costs of acquisition of land. This has partly been mitigated by focusing more on the conservation of private land, where the private land owner would remain responsible for the management and maintenance of these areas.

10.4.1.4 Awareness

Awareness of the public on environmental matters remains limited. Some examples of irresponsible actions are the illegal dumping of waste, degradation of riverine systems, building in dry river beds and wetlands, etcetera.

10.4.1.5 Climate change

It is still an unfunded mandate; thus the climate change mandate is being attended to by officials with other responsibilities. Lack of funding threatens progress in the development of climate change response tools. Most activities require sourcing of external (donor) funding. Climate change adaptation and mitigation strategies exist, however the implementation of these plans is still not done systematically, resulting in developments that are unsustainable and are harmful to the environment.

10.4.1.6 Enabling and disabling factors

Much of the environmental management functions reside with local municipalities who do not always have the capacity to effectively and efficiently implement these. Capacity building interventions have only limited impact when pressing challenges in municipalities compete for budget and capacity, and key staff members change regularly. Lack of awareness and skills among the public and key roleplayers/stakeholders and a lack of 'ownership' by communities of their environments, is equally debilitating.

On the enabling front, is the interest by various stakeholders leading to commitments that result in markable achievements and improvements.

10.4.1.7 Measures developed and implemented to address disabling factors

Training, financial and technical support to key roleplayers in the province is of utmost importance. Sourcing of external (donor) funding directly or through national channels for expansion of the conservation estate through the Stewardship Programme, for licencing of municipal landfill sites and for the development of climate change and air quality management tools.

There is a need to instil a sense of ownership of the environment, on which every person is impacting with his/her daily actions. The ecoschool programme teaches children about environmental matters as they are relevant in their own context.

10.4.1.8 Capacity

Environmental protection and development is a specialised field, but the Department of Environment and Nature Conservation has been restricted by capacity constraints for a considerable period of time. To ensure effective environmental protection and development, critical posts have to be filled. Lack of capacity to implement programmes can be traced to the small budget available to appoint specialist staff. Pressure on the provincial fiscus does not assist in this regard.

10.4.1.9 Research

A key and important challenge which faces the NC DENC, remains funding for baseline research to be conducted in the province. The NC DENC is experiencing a decrease in funds to implement these studies, whilst other role-players in the academic field, like universities, research institutions and Non-Governmental Organisations (NGO's) are also cutting on budgets for research impacting on the Northern Cape Province. Alternative sources of funds

are being used, but are insufficient to address the information gaps for informed decision making in support of sustainable development, including through a better understanding of the cumulative impacts of developments on the environment.

10.5 Looking ahead

The impacts of **climate change** will result in some parts of the province to become dryer, while rainfall variability may be further aggravated. With expected increased demands for water for domestic use and for economic activities like agriculture and industry, it will be more important to change water use efficiency, reduce misuse and reduce pollution of water to prevent more people to experience absolute **water scarcity**. The effects of climate change on the already hot, dry climate of the Northern Cape, coupled with scarcity of water, poses unique challenges to the management of the environment. Projects, such as Agri-Parks, will add to the demand for water. To address water challenges for household purposes, sea water desalination may be worth exploring. Existing technologies that can be built on, exist and the possibilities of job creation goes without saying.

Mining is no doubt a big driver in the Northern Cape economy. Its effects on the environment calls for thorough investigation and governance. The rehabilitation and utilisation of closed mines is another venture worth exploring. **Waste management**, including landfills and recycling, needs to be addressed. Poor management by municipalities is mostly to blame for the state of affairs. **Renewable energy** has the potential to grow very big in the Northern Cape with its rich solar radiation. The impact of solar farms on the natural environment still needs to be investigated. The Northern Cape also offers diverse eco-tourism opportunities that remains largely untapped.

Stricter **enforcement of environmental laws** requires closer collaboration with municipalities and more investment into awareness programmes. Capacity constraints, as one of the main factors that hamper environmental law enforcement and implementation, needs to be addressed as soon as possible. For the population of the Northern Cape to have access to an untouched, healthy environment, strategically placed environmental development programmes and alternative green infrastructure investments must be in place.



Chapter 11

CREATE A BETTER SOUTH AFRICA, A BETTER AFRICA
AND A BETTER WORLD



CHAPTER 11

11.1 Problem statement

The Northern Cape Provincial Government was established after the 1st democratic elections of 1994. Before this, the Province formed part of the broader Cape Province and did not pursue International Relations on its own. During the above time frame, South Africa was isolated by the global community because of its apartheid and discriminatory policies. Apartheid South Africa did not enjoy any sound cooperation with most of the countries in the world, with its international and global outlook characterised by a numerous conflict, wars, instability and killings of innocent people, as a result sanctions were imposed on the country.

With the dawn of democracy and the drafting of the new Constitution of South Africa, it became clear that international relations required national focus, and this was strengthened by sections 84 and 231 of the Constitution, which mandated the President to receive and appoint, among other, diplomatic and consular representatives; as well as concluding international treaties and agreements. However, and without detracting from the national government's competence, provinces have an important role to play in international relations, which incidentally is to exercise a number of their constitutionally assigned powers. Although provincial governments have a limited constitutional role in international relations and national government determines foreign policy, all provinces and local governments have some international relations role to play.

11.2 The journey since 1994

11.2.1 Overview

The focus of International Relations has been to foster international ties and partnerships with the international arena aimed at:

- Positioning the NC
- Promoting and marketing the Province
- Strengthening Regional Integration
- Strengthening Bilateral co-operation

- Negotiating developmental support
- Boosting the Socio Economic landscape

The province in pursuing international collaborations and partnerships gives expression to the key deliverables of Outcome 11 (create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world) of government's 2014-2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

11.2.2 Legislation and Policies

➤ **Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001)**

The Act provides for the immunities and privileges of diplomatic missions and consular posts and their members, of heads of states, special envoys and certain representatives of the United Nations and its specialised agencies, and other international organisations and of certain other persons. Provision is also made for immunities and privileges pertaining to international conferences and meetings. It enacts into law certain conventions and provides for matters connected therewith.

➤ **African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund Act, 2001 (Act 51 of 2001)**

The Act establishes an African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund (ARF) to enhance cooperation between the Republic and other countries, in particular African countries, through the promotion of democracy, good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development and integration, humanitarian assistance and human resource development.

➤ **The Measures and Guidelines for Enhanced Coordination of South Africa's International Engagements and its annexures, approved by Cabinet in 2009,** establish more effective measures and mechanisms to coordinate the conduct of international relations and the implementation of South Africa's foreign policy

➤ **The South African Council on International Relations (SACOIR), approved by Cabinet and established in 2015,** provides a consultative platform for engagement of non-state actors in South Africa's international relations.

➤ **The White Paper on Foreign Policy, approved by Cabinet in 2011,** assesses South Africa's foreign policy against the rising expectations of the critical role of foreign policy to meet domestic priorities.

➤ **Foreign Service Dispensation (FSD)** is implemented in terms of the provisions of Section 3(3) (c) of the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended, and is

applicable to designated employees who serve in a foreign country at a South African mission abroad and fall within the scope of the Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council. The FSD consists mainly of two measures, namely remunerative measures (South Africa)

11.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

11.3.1 People to people relations in Africa

Memorandum of Understanding between Northern Cape Province and //Kharas Region in Namibia

According to the Mid-Term Review of 2017, this MOU and Twinning agreement has been long-standing between these two regions since its inception in 1999, and is actively progressing with numerous engagements between senior officials and political leadership. The relationship between the Northern Cape Government and the Kharas Region was reaffirmed in 2011, with the establishment of a joint Steering committee of senior officials of both regions, who coordinate activities between the two countries, with the following agreed focus areas:

- Education, Sports, Arts and Culture
- Tourism
- Mining
- Fisheries and Agriculture
- Safety and Security
- Local Government
- Educational and cultural exchange programmes are taking place between the //Kharas region and Northern Cape Province. These programmes are facilitated by the department of education and the department of sports, arts and culture.

A joint technical and steering committee has been established and met in August 2015 in Upington and December 2016. These were to discuss a joint local government framework and exchange programme of best practice in the municipal sphere of governance and to track and assess progress on the different work streams. Several visits also took place and include amongst others conferences and cultural events. (NC: Mid-term review 2014-2019, 2017, p. 61)

11.3.2 South – South cooperation

Relations between the Northern Cape Provincial Government and the Southern Hemisphere in particular the People's Republic of China, span several years. It started with a Memorandum of Agreement which was signed between the Hunan Province in the People's Republic of China and the Northern Cape Province, in September 2003. This Agreement is aimed at carrying out principles of equality and mutual benefit, exchanges and cooperation in the fields of economy, trade, science, technology, culture, education, sports and health personnel exchanges. The agreement is still active and has seen several missions of delegations between the two provinces (Northern Cape Provincial Administration, 2017).

11.3.3 North – South Cooperation

According to the Twinning Agreements and Memorandum of Understanding Report (Northern Cape Provincial Administration, 2018), the Northern Cape Government has sealed relationships with the North through several agreements and understandings with Europe and the Northern America since the dawn of democracy. Amongst these agreements are the following;

- Following the Memorandum of Understanding between South Africa and the Swedish Development Cooperation in November 1994, the Northern Cape Provincial Government went ahead and signed a Memorandum of Understanding with the Swedish government in December 1995. This MOU was aimed at developing the then new Provincial Government and consisted of two (2) projects namely; management development, institutional and capacity building as well as the development of an economic strategy for the Province.
- The Provincial Information Society Strategy Programme (INSPIRE) was initiated in 2007 for a three-year period between the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Finland and the Ministry of Communications in South Africa, under the 2001 Development Cooperation Agreement between the two countries. The programme was administered by the Department of Communications, Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development (PNC on ISAD) and implemented in the provinces of Limpopo and the Northern Cape, under the respective provincial Offices of the Premier. The programme concluded in June 2012, with the first Northern Cape Information Society Strategy (NCISS) being adopted. Technical expertise for the NCISS came from Finland and provided a methodological

approach to developing the NCISS. The focus was on the following five programme components (NC: 20-year review, 2014, p. 154):

- Technical Assistance.
 - Strategy Process.
 - Capacity Building.
 - Technical Infrastructure; and
 - Strategy Induced Initiatives.
- The Emthanjeni Municipality (De Aar) signed an Agreement with the Karlstad Municipality in Sweden in 2001 aimed at supporting the Project Agenda 21 Environmental project. This agreement ended in October 2002 (NCPA: Twinning Agreements and Memorandum of Understanding Report, 2018).
- In November 2003, the Northern Cape Provincial Government through the Kimberley Hospital Complex, signed a twinning agreement with the Paediatric Sub-Speciality Physicians Associates at the Advocates Hope Children's Hospital. The main objective of this agreement was to enhance clinical and technical skills, to explore best practices in health care and to advance health service delivery in both of these organisations. This agreement was reaffirmed in 2005 (NCPA: Twinning Agreements and Memorandum of Understanding Report, 2018).
- The Sol Plaatje Municipality signed a Memorandum of Agreement with the Varnamo Municipality in Sweden in October 2007, aimed at developing a partnership which was based on common areas of interest and mutual benefit and included amongst others these areas; early learning, disaster management, health care organisation, environmental health, cultural exchange and infrastructure development. (NCPA: Twinning Agreements and Memorandum of Understanding Report, 2018)
- A Trip to the USA, Chicago from the 02 August till 13 August 2016 for Members of the Provincial legislature. The purpose for the trip was to attend the National Conference of State Legislature (NCSL – Summit) (NCPA: Twinning Agreements and Memorandum of Understanding Report, 2018).

11.3.4 Economic Diplomacy

Major Sporting and Cultural Events

- The Northern Cape Government signed an Agreement with the Uruguay Association DE Futbol in December 2009, to serve as the basecamp for their team during the 2010 Football World Cup which was hosted by South Africa.
- The Maloof Money Cup which is also known as the World Skateboarding Championship is a premier showcase for amateur and professional skateboarding. This championship was hosted by the Northern Cape Province from 2011 to 2012 for the first time outside the United States of America since its inauguration in 2008. In 2013 the tournament changed to the Kimberley Diamond Cup and it was hosted in Kimberley till 2015. The tournament saw skateboarding champions from across the world and the country, descending on Kimberley for more than a week during each of the years that the championship was hosted in the Capital City of the province (Northern Cape Tourism Authority, 2019). See further elucidation in Chapter 4.
- The Northern Cape Provincial Government entered into a Bilateral Agreement with the Bloodhound SSC (Pty) Limited UK (Bloodhound), to pursue the setting of a new land speed world record on the Hakskeenpan of the Mier Local Municipality situated in the Northern Cape Province. This agreement has been in place since 2013 and has seen several visits undertaken between the United Kingdom and The Northern Cape Province in preparation for this historic event. (See further elucidation in Chapter 4)

11.4 Persistent challenges

There are several reasons for poor management by provincial structures in international relations discussed below:

- The monitoring and tracking of twinning agreements and memoranda of understanding between the province and international community has not been done efficiently in the past 25 years and hence requires policies, guidelines and an international relations strategy to effectively deal with this challenge
- Further to the above, the crafting and tracking of progress reports following international visits is also a major challenge.

- The lack of adequately skilled and experienced staff in international relations coupled with the absence of the necessary resources has resulted in inadequate records keeping and inadequate coordination of in- and outbound missions by the provincial administration and municipalities.
- Central coordination of outbound missions remains a challenge as departments initiate and coordinate their own mission sometimes separate from the Unit in Office of the Premier.
- There is no clear policy framework in relations to the role of Provinces in international relations as this is a national mandate. The Department of International Relations and Cooperation (DIRCO) created the directorate for provincial Liaison (intergovernmental Relations and protocol) to serve as a liaison office between the National and provincial governments on international affairs to bring greater coherence to provincial international relations and align these to the National foreign policy and development.

11.5 Looking ahead

A Provincial International Relations Strategy for the Northern Cape Province is a necessity and must. The IR strategy should outline what the provincial priorities are for Northern Cape and where and how the province positions itself in terms of the global trade and investment spaces.

The IR strategy should also be explicit about the provinces' role, function and responsibility of Official Development Assistance (ODA), which has been an area not given much attention to. The way forward in this regard, would be to include ODA in the IR strategy and also to review the reporting thereof in the Annual Performance Plan in future as a separate key performance area and that this function forms part of IR. The function of ODA in essence forms part of National Treasury, so it would suffice that Provincial Treasury plays a key role at a provincial level.

Coordination of the foreign relations of provincial governments and those of the central government is essential to try and achieve a reasonably coherent strategy towards the outside world, both as regards to formulation and implementation. By using appropriate measures, our country will ensure that the various voices expressing provincial and national interest are complementary.



Chapter 12

AN EFFICIENT, EFFECTIVE AND DEVELOPMENT
ORIENTED PUBLIC SERVICE



CHAPTER 12

12.1 Problem statement

In 1993, the Cape Province was divided into three smaller provinces. The Northern Cape was one of three provinces made out of the Cape Province in 1994, the others being Western Cape to the south and Eastern Cape to the southeast. The 1994 democratic government also inherited a country characterised by a population with low educational and skill levels, fragmented education and training system designed to perpetuate apartheid policies, hence it was unequal and parts of it dysfunctional. The situation was exacerbated by the fact that Kimberley had to compete with other centres in the country for a limited pool of qualified candidates. The Northern Cape then, as it is at present, is not the first choice of many a candidate.

All in all, the mammoth task of creating a Provincial Government with a measure of Administration and Management capacity was completed in less than five years. The progress made in this regard is evident in the AG's reports from 1994 to 1999 and beyond. Therefore, the Northern Cape Provincial Administration had to start from scratch.

12.2 The journey since 1994

12.2.1 Overview

The Northern Cape has made remarkable progress in transforming the public service and making it more representative of the provincial demographics.

12.2.2 Legislation and Policies

Provincial Government derives its mandates from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996); and we are also obligated to align our functions and perform our work, services and tasks in terms of the following pieces of legislation:

- Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act No. 75 of 1997);
- Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003; (Act No. 53 of 2003)
- Child Care Act of 2005;

- Commission of Enquiry Act, 1952 (Act no. 60 of 1952);
- Division of Revenue Act, 2015 (Act no. 1 of 2015);
- Electronic Communication and Transaction Act, 2002 (Act No. 25 of 2002);
- Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act No. 55 of 1998); as amended (Act No 47 of 2013)
- Framework for Managing Programme Performance Information, Published by National Treasury, May 2007;
- Framework for Strategic Plans and Annual Performance Plans, Published by National Treasury August 2010;
- Framework for the National Skills Development Strategy 2011/12 – 2015/16;
- Government Immovable Asset Management Act, 2007(Act No. 19 of 2007);
- Human Resource Development South Africa Strategy 2010 – 2030;
- Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act No 58 of 1962); as amended 1997
- Infrastructure Development Act, 2014 (Act No. 23 of 2014)
- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005
- Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act No. 66 of 1995); as amended (Act No 6 of 2014)
- Medium Term Strategic Framework, 2015 – 2019;
- Municipal Integrated Development Plans;
- Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks;
- National Archives and Records Service Act, 1996 (Act no. 43 of 1996);
- National Development Plan – Vision 2030
- National Monitoring and Evaluation Framework White Paper of October 2009
- National Policy Framework for Women’s Empowerment and Gender Equality, 2011;
- National Planning Commission White Paper of October 2009
- National Skills Development Strategy III, 2011;
- National Strategic Intelligence Act;
- National Strategic Plan of Human Immune Deficiency Virus (HIV), Sexually Transmitted Infections (STI’s) & Tuberculosis (TB) 2012 – 2016 and Provincial Strategic Plan for HIV, STI’s & TB 2012 – 2016;
- National Strategic Planning Green Paper of September 2009
- New Growth Path, 2010
- Northern Cape Land Administration Act, 2002, (Act no. 6 of 2002);
- Northern Cape Planning and Development Act, 1998 (Act no. 7 of 1998);
- Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993);

- Pension Fund Act, 1956 (Act no. 24 of 1956);
- Performance Information Handbook, Published by National Treasury, April 2011;
- Policy Framework for the Government – wide Monitoring and Evaluation System, Published by the Presidency, November 2007;
- Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act No. 2 of 2000);
- Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act No. 12 of 2004)
- Protection of Personal Information Act (POPI);
- Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act No. 2 of 2000);
- Promotion of Administrative of Justice Act, 2000 (Act No. 3 of 2000);
- Provincial Growth and Development Strategy 2014;
- Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2012;
- Public Administration Management Act, 2014 (Act No. 11 of 2014)
- Public Audit Act 2004; (Act No. 25 of 2004);
- Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act No. 1 of 1999)
- Public Service Act 1994 as amended by (Act No. 30 of 2007);
- Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act No. 97 of 1998);
- Skills Development Levy Act, 1999 (Act No. 9 of 1999);
- Socio-economic Impact Assessment System (SEIAS)
- South African Foreign Policy;
- Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act No. 16 of 2013);
- Special Economic Zone Act, 2014 (Act No. 16 of 2014)
- State Information Technology Agency Act, 1998 (Act No. 88 of 1998);
- State Liability Amended Act, 2011 (Act No. 14 of 2011);
- The Integrated National Disability Strategy of 1997;
- The Role of Premier's Office in Government – wide Monitoring and Evaluation: A good Practice Guide: Published by the Presidency, July 2008;
- Traditional Leadership, Governance and House of Traditional Leaders Act, 2007 (Act no. 2 of 2007)
- Youth Enterprise Development Strategy – 2023

12.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

The Outcome 12 focus has been on the effectiveness, efficiency, responsiveness, accountability and developmental orientation of the public service within the Northern Cape.

12.3.1 Distribution of Public Servants in the Northern Cape

Employment in the public sector in the Northern Cape has increased from 16 659 personnel in 2002 to 27 497 personnel during the 2017 Financial Year (grew by 10 928). The two largest departments, namely Department of Education (13 209) and Health (7 262) having the largest personnel headcount in the province. **Headcount entails Employees on the fixed establishment, Periodical Remuneration, Abnormal Appointments and Session Workers.*

Figure 59: Total Headcount per Year: 2002-2017

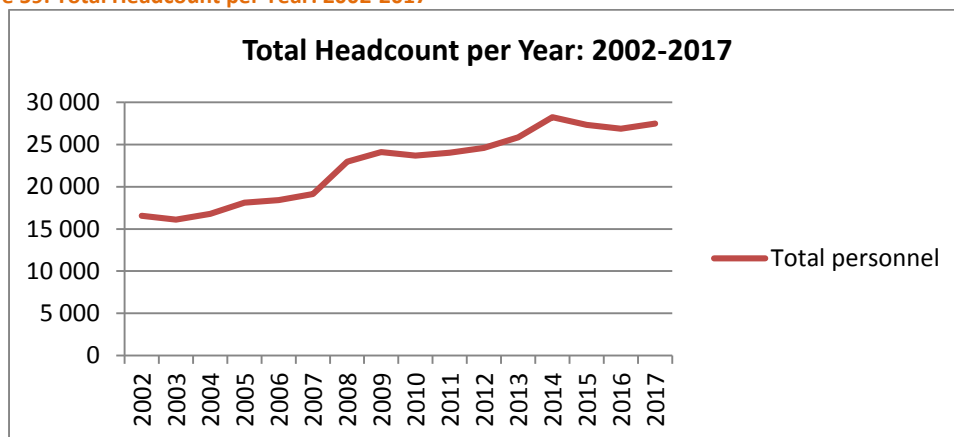


Table 53: Headcount per Vote

Total Headcount per Vote: 2002 to 2017

Provincia I Dept	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
OTP			175	182	194	215	251	265	295	229	227	241	252	257	256	259
Prov Leg			114	110	112	133	144	173	158	156	158	163	162	160	161	163
DTSL			30	42	221	259	296	323	321	342	343	367	366	998	488	580
DOE			9 550	9767	9820	9976	12852	13 077	12 709	12 577	12 432	12 309	13 247	13 118	12 776	13 209
DRPW			560	585	452	414	805	990	841	721	1 253	2 125	2 295	1 803	2 016	1 918
DEDAT			58	75	103	109	124	162	165	196	210	170	185	189	213	213
DSAC			170	168	169	361	497	585	518	549	507	628	622	685	627	645
PT			136	157	132	127	175	238	237	240	244	295	292	313	344	346
COGHST A			283	488	595	637	669	698	637	782	781	764	813	783	757	750
DOH			4 566	5252	5557	5640	5981	5 944	5 928	6 208	6 597	6 741	8 199	7 009	7 010	7 262
DSD			722	829	579	654	824	846	1 034	969	946	942	929	995	1 064	1 004
DALRRD			423	443	348	433	496	532	549	649	655	580	572	612	605	602
DENC			0	0	154	197	250	290	286	404	265	521	329	419	564	546
	16 569	16 121	16 787	18 098	18 436	19 155	22 969	24 123	23 678	24 022	24 618	25 846	28 263	27 341	26 881	27 497

*Headcount entails Employees on the fixed establishment, Periodical Remuneration, Abnormal Appointments and Session Workers

12.3.2 Compensation of employees

Over the period spending on compensation of employees has increased from R1,317 billion in 2000/01 to R9,220 billion in 2017/18 financial year. This trend has been influenced by various policy priorities within various departments. The spending trend on the public sector wage bill has been increasing by more than 5 percent above inflation every year since 2007/08.

In 2000/01 financial provincial employees' compensation constituted an average of 50% of the total provincial budget, this has increased to 56% in the 2017/18 financial year. This trend is due to various policy priorities that were implemented during the period such as 2000/01 which was the first year of PFMA implementation, many departments focused on establishing the structures necessary for implementation, like Chief Financial Officers, Internal Audit units and Audit Committees. This was followed by the spending in support of employment strategies in the social sector departments (i.e. Education, Health and Social

Development) such as the Occupation Specific Dispensation (OSD), this saw an increase on personnel spending.

Figure 60: The below shows the provincial payments on compensation of employees.

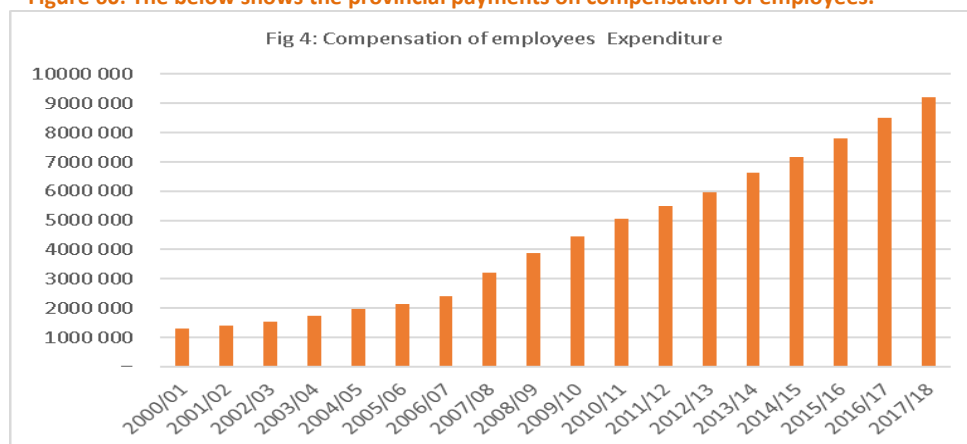
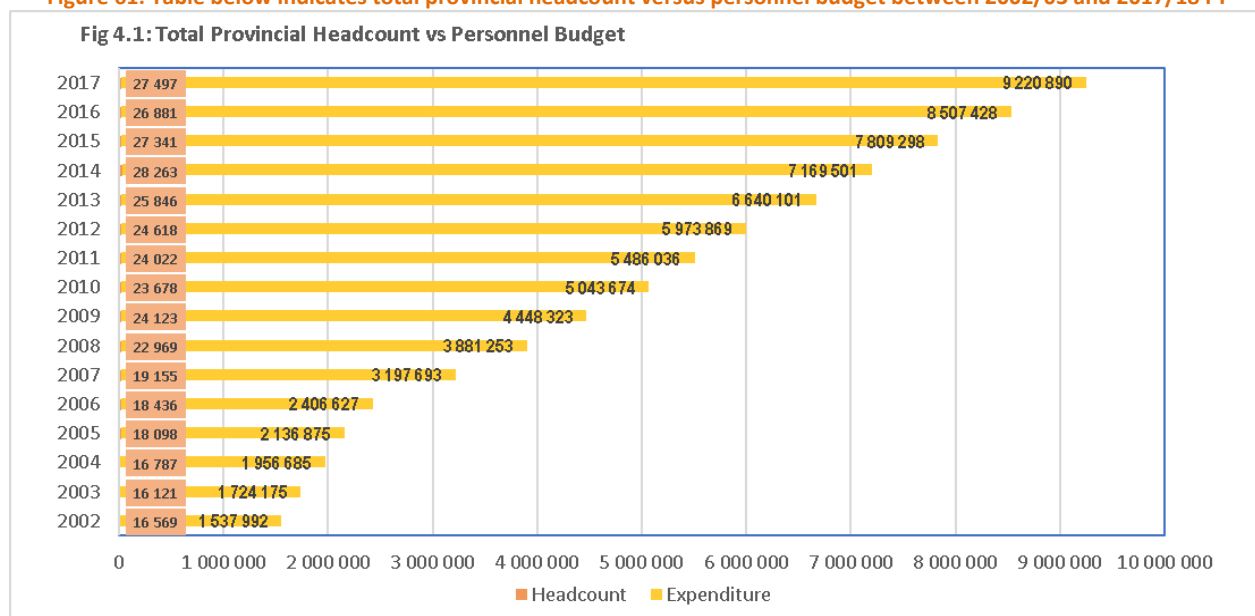


Figure 61: Table below indicates total provincial headcount versus personnel budget between 2002/03 and 2017/18 FY



(Source: NC Provincial Treasury, Vulindlela reports)

Prior to the 2002/03 financial year, the PERSAL function was centralised at the Office of the Premier and most departments did not go through the process of developing organograms. When comparing the growth of personnel numbers with that of spending on compensation of employees, it must be noted that the increase on personnel expenditure over the period has been influenced by various wage settlements and inflationary related increases. Outcomes of annual wage negotiations have contributed to this strong growth trend over the past several years, with Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council resolutions often establishing higher-than-budgeted wage increases.

Departments have to find resources in other areas of their budgets to cover these costs. Although departments do receive some additional funding to cover additional personnel costs, the effects of the wage agreements continue into the subsequent years and departments have to take these into account when formulating personnel budgets.

Any shortcomings in managing this part of the budget can undermine the overall service delivery, hence the Northern Cape province implemented a moratorium in the 2015/16 financial year as a strategy to manage the wage bill. This however has a shortcoming in that it has the potential of undermining the overall service delivery and other priority areas. Given the large share of employee compensation in their budgets, departments must monitor and evaluate their expenditure and must cost the system of salary progression as accurately as possible.

12.3.3 Organisational Design

From a public service environment where all organisational structures were developed by the PSC, the province established a centralised unit for organisational design within the Office of the Premier (OTP) in 1994. Small at first, this unit gradually grew and was capacitated to support all departments within the Province in this regard. Organisational structures were routed through the provincial Executive Council for endorsement, before the relevant EA's approved them.

The decision was subsequently taken to decentralise the Organisational Design (OD) function, as the final HR-related function to follow in this regard. Departments established their own small units, while support was still rendered from the OTP. With the release of the 2006 Directive on OD, and then later the 2015 Directive on Changes to Organisational Structures, amended in 2016, it became clear that the complexities around OD was increasing in terms of the requirements set and the financial realities which had to be taken into consideration. The capacity in terms of OD provincially dwindled, due to the skill leaving the province, skilled practitioners pursuing other career opportunities, and the training opportunities becoming unevenly matched in terms of the specific skills demand.

Notwithstanding, the MPAT process yielded some best practice case studies in this area, markedly the Department of Social Development, used to build capacity in this regard.

12.3.4 Operations Management Framework (OMF)

In light of the myriad of challenges faced in this area, such as severe financial constraints, increasing service delivery demands, demands for highly skilled practitioners to navigate the complexities and meet the requirements involved in OD, there is a need for improved incorporation of organisational design as a building block of the Operations Management Framework (OMF), improved collaborative platforms and capacity building opportunities for practitioners, using creative means and technology, as well as a continuous dedication at all levels of government for the streamlining of organisational structures, improvement of productivity and the elimination of waste.

12.3.5 Career of Choice

The province is proactive in the development of staff and offers training opportunities to unemployed youth. To address the skills gaps in the public service through training programmes, 2399 unemployed youth were placed in an Artisanship, Internship, Learnership, WIL and Bursaries programmes across the province within 2017/18 Financial Year, and a further 782 unemployed youth were trained at the end of the 2018/19 Financial Year.

Table 54: Artisanship, Internship, Learnership, WIL and Bursaries programmes 2017/18

Artisanship, Internship, Learnership, WIL and Bursaries programmes 2017/18									
Programme	Female				Male				Total
	A	C	W	I	A	C	W	I	
Artisans completed	36	22	0	0	64	40	75	0	237
Artisans registered	78	28	0	0	305	72	87	1	571
Bursaries	96	54	0	0	120	48	36	2	356
Internships	38	20	0	0	9	0	0	0	67
Learnership	202	211	0	0	271	162	4	0	67
WIL	109	20	2	0	120	65	2	0	318
GRAND TOTALS	559	335	2	0	889	387	204	3	2399

Provincial departments submit annual HRD Monitoring Reports on the progress made with regard to the HRD Implementation Plan.

12.3.6 Vacancy Rate

In order to improve HR management and development, targets were set to reduce the average period to fill vacancies to six months. The provincial vacancy rate stood at 12,95% in June 2015, 9,76% as at December 2016, 8,5% as on 28 February 2019 and has improved significantly to 7% at end March 2019 for the Provincial Administration.

12.3.7 Performance Management and Development

The performance of employees on Levels 1 to 12 is governed by the Departmental/Provincial Policy on Performance Management and Development System (PMDS) which have been reviewed and amended over the years since 2005 to ensure improvement in the system and its effectiveness. The performance of members of the Senior Management

Service (SMS) on Levels 13 to 16 is governed by Chapter 4 of the SMS Handbook which also saw a few improvements over the past few years.

The performance evaluations of Heads of Department (HOD's) were previously conducted by the Public Service Commission. As an interim arrangement this function was transferred to Office of the Premier in February 2014 for conclusion of previous performance cycles dating back to 2012/13, pending review and implementation of an alternative Performance Management System for HOD's. The new Directive on PMDS for HOD's was finally approved and implemented with effect from 1 April 2018 whereby Offices of the Premier are formally responsible for the management of HOD performance.

From 2005 to 2016, the performance management system for members of the SMS and employees on levels 1 to 12, required supervisors and employees to conduct four quarterly, written reviews. Levels 1-8 were assessed on Key Performance Areas (KPA's) and Generic Assessment Factors (GAF's), whilst Levels 9-16 were assessed on Key Performance Areas (KPA's) and Core Management criteria (CMC's). GAF's and CMC's were scored independently from KPA's. Throughout the years, the reporting tools and rating scale have been changed however, the principles surrounding PMDS remained the same. With effect from 2016, the quarterly reviews were amended to make provision for bi-annual formal

written reviews in the form of mid-term reviews and annual assessments. The latest review of the PMDS system resulted in the implementation of new Directives on PMDS for Levels 1 to 12 and SMS respectively, with effect from 1 April 2018.

In terms of the Performance Management Incentive Policy Framework, Departments were expected to budget 2% of wage bill for pay progression and 1,5% of the remuneration bill for cash incentives. This has however been amended with effect from 1 April 2019 as the 1,5% budget for cash incentives will gradationally be reduced to 0% over the next three performance cycles, pending a comprehensive review of the performance management system for Public Service.

12.3.8 Financial Disclosure and prohibition of doing business with the State

The Financial Disclosure Framework is regarded as a necessary step to safeguard the confidence that the public bestows on the Public Service. The electronic disclosure system (eDisclosure) was introduced during the 2013/2014 Financial Year. The Northern Cape Administration has been consistently achieving 100% compliance rate in terms of the SMS financial disclosures.

12.3.9 National Anti-Corruption Hotline (NACH)

The PSC was mandated by Cabinet to manage the National Anti-Corruption Hotline (NACH). The NACH came into effect on 1 September 2004 under the management of the PSC, and it provides a “one-stop” mechanism for members of the public to report acts of corruption anonymously. Provincial departments are requested to investigate all reports forwarded to them and provide feedback to the PSC. When the PSC had satisfied itself of the truthfulness of the results, it will close the case. Unfortunately, most departments did not have the capacity to investigate all allegations of corruption against themselves, thus cases were taking longer to conclude than expected. Training was rolled out to departments in order to investigate cases faster. This has resulted in a reduction in backlogs. As at end March 2019, the province only had one (1) case still under investigation (COGHSTA), with all other departments having no cases under investigation.

12.3.10 Presidential Hotline

Since the inception of the Presidential Hotline in 2009, the Northern Cape Province was not performing well - the Province being at number 9 out of 9 provinces. However, since 2012, after the Supervisor and Modifier visited all municipalities in the Province with the expressed aim to assist them to resolve all their outstanding cases/complaints, things took a change.

From 2012 – 2018, the Province has been boasting with a consistent above 95% - 100% resolution rate in the Province. The team is in close consultation with Provincial Government Departments, as well as Municipalities around the functionality and

performance of the Hotline. To date the Province has received 1267 complaints since the inception of the Presidential Hotline in 2009, and 1260 cases have been resolved with 7 cases/complaints still open/outstanding.

Table 55: Top 10 Service Delivery Complaints for Northern Cape Province

No	Complaint Type
1	Employment/World of work
2	A place to live
3	Electricity
4	Water for household use
5	Health Services
6	Roads (Building & Maintenance)
7	Education and training
8	Sanitation; Refuse and Sewage
9	Information from government
10	Town planning and Land use

12.3.10.1 Progress

- The Northern Cape Province has registered a massive improvement on the resolution of cases/complaints reported to the Presidential Hotline since 2012.
- The Presidency has set a target of 90% resolution rate on all calls logged.
- As a province, we have been achieving above 95% in each quarter, even 100% for other quarters.

All District Communicator's Fora are monitored, in order to ensure that PLO's are properly trained and briefed on the expectations of the Presidential Hotline and on the resolution of logged cases/complaints.

12.3.10.2 Achievements

- A Presidential Hotline awareness campaign between the Presidency and the Office of the Premier in 2015.
- Annual hosting of the Provincial Presidential Hotline Forum.
- Compilation of guidelines for the handling of complaints and enquiries in the public sector.

Figure 62: Hotline calls per province

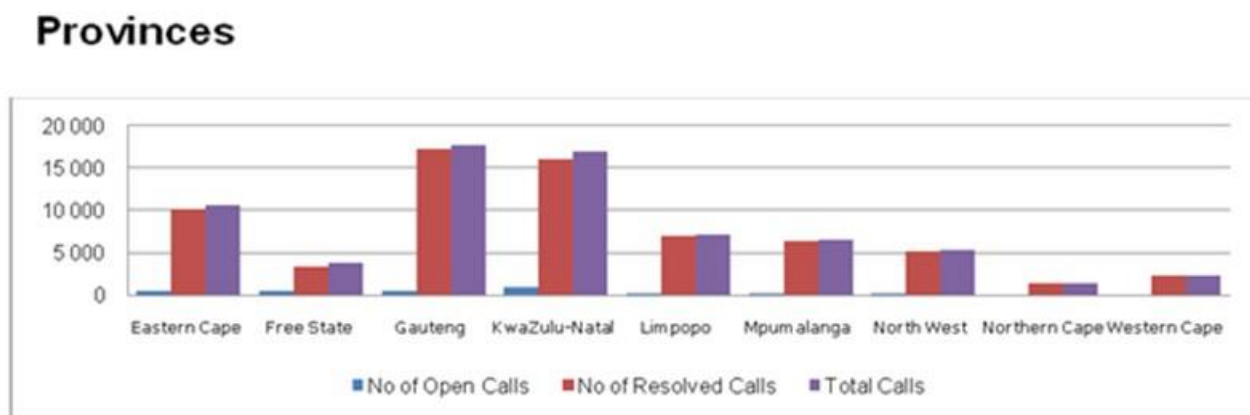
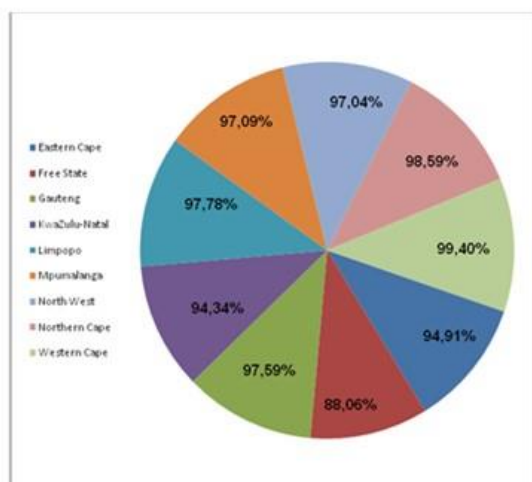


Figure 63: Percentage calls resolved



12.3.11 Batho Pele

To revitalise and monitor adherence to the Batho Pele programme, a complaints and compliments management framework has been developed and presented to Heads of Departments in the Northern Cape in 2015/16. In addition, Government recommitted itself to implementing the requirement in the Public Service Regulations for all departments to have Service Delivery Standards in place and improvement plans to address the gaps between current service levels and the standards. The province continues to support and report on the quality and progress on the SDIPs in service delivery.

12.3.12 Frontline Service Delivery (FSDM)

The FSDM Programme was introduced in 2011 and its emphasis has been on improving the quality of frontline service delivery and experiences of citizens on services rendered. The initial focus of the FSDM has been on an assessment methodology that examines selective

performance areas, their associated standards and measurement of standards directly affecting the frontline facilities in order to improve the quality of service delivery in accordance with the policies and regulations of the sector departments. Since its inception in 2011 the following Sectors were monitored; Local Municipalities; Drivers Licence Testing Centres and Municipal (DLTC's) Customer Care Centres (MCCC's), Education, Health, Home Affairs, Justice, SAPS, SASSA.

Specific Standards were measured in these sectors that included amongst others:

- Location and accessibility of services
- Visibility & signage to service points
- Queue management and waiting times for services
- Dignified treatment as per the Batho Pele principles
- Cleanliness and comfort in and around the facility
- Safety in and around the facility
- Service availability-adherence to operational hours
- Complaints/compliments management systems

Table 56: FSDM coverage (June 2011 to September 2017)

FSDM coverage (June 2011 to September 2017)	
Sector	Number of sites
DLTC	4
EDUCATION	14
HEALTH	25
HOME AFFAIRS	7
JUSTICE	10
MCCC	12
SAPS	9
SASSA	11
YOUTH	1
TOTAL	93

Source: OTP, M&E

In 2018/19, a change in approach to Frontline Service Delivery Monitoring was necessitated, in order to monitor activities to display the responsiveness of the state to deliver basic services (impact). The new approach was two pronged in nature and entailed the selection of sites based in pre-identified matters (mentioned in SONA and SOPA), as well as a rapid response to unblock service delivery challenges informed by Presidential Hotline, Media Expose and Municipalities identified for support by COGHSTA. In terms of the new approach the following sites were selected for the 2018/19 financial year;

Table 57: FSD Sites

Description	Source	Visit Type
Kimberley Mental Hospital	Issues Stemming from the Media	Rapid Response
Dr Harry Surtie Hospital	Presidential Hotline	Pre-Identified
Prof ZK Matthews Hospital	Issues Stemming from the Media	Rapid Response
Tshwaragano Hospital	FSDM Baseline and Improvements Poor performing facilities	Pre-Identified
De Aar Hospital	National Health Insurance Pilot Provincial Priority	Pre-Identified
Victoria West High	FSDM Baseline and Improvements Poor performing facilities	Pre-Identified
Umso High School	FSDM Baseline and Improvements Poor performing facilities	Pre-Identified
Langberg High School	FSDM Baseline and Improvements Poor performing facilities	Pre-Identified
Post Office	Issues stemming from the media State of readiness to disburse Social Grants	Rapid Response
Joe Morolong and Ga-Segonyana Local Municipality	SOPA poor performing Municipality	Pre-identified
Galeshewe Ministerial Imbizo	Previous executive monitoring visit issues and projects	Pre-identified

12.3.13 Citizen Based Monitoring (CBM)

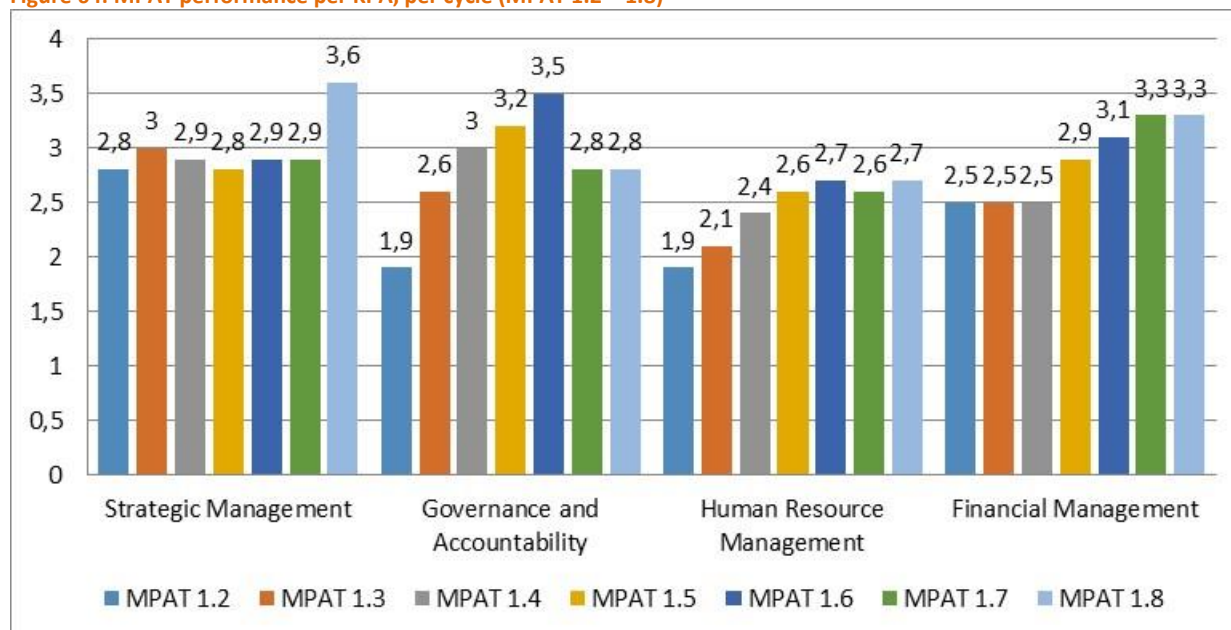
CBM is an approach to monitoring government performance that focuses on the experiences of ordinary citizens in order to strengthen public accountability and drive service delivery improvements. It places citizens as active participants in shaping what is monitored, how the monitoring is done and what interpretations and actions are derived from the data. CBM is about routine mechanisms to bring the voice of the citizen into the service delivery process. Citizen-based monitoring shifts the emphasis to focusing on building local level accountability through the co-production of monitoring information by citizens and frontline officials. It is not designed to replace, but rather enhance, government's existing monitoring systems. Since its inception, the programme has been rolled out in the province in a joint approach by the Office of the Premier and the Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation. Survey findings were then communicated to the relevant stakeholders who were expected to make commitments and these commitments were further monitored by the OTP M&E Unit.

The programme was initially piloted in 2015, in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District (after roll out in other province in the country), with a community survey done by 40 trained community surveyors that targeted the following facilities; Batlharos Police Station, SASSA services in Batlharos Village, Tshwaragano Hospital and Gateway Clinic, Social Development Survey of Community Perceptions in Batlharos. The programme was then rolled out in the Umsobomvu Municipality in early 2017, with a focus on the IDP process within the Municipality. 100 trained community surveyors conducted the survey through door to doors in all 6 wards of this municipality. This programme was further rolled out in the Phokwane Municipality in 2018, with community engagements in the 12 wards of the municipality, which recorded the needs of the community.

12.3.14 Management Performance Assessment Tool (MPAT)

The Province has maintained an upward performance trajectory in its overall MPAT performance over all the MPAT Cycles spanning from MPAT 1.2 up to MPAT 1.6 and in the current MPAT 1.7 cycle performance dropped slightly. In MPAT 1.2 the Province was at an overall average of level 2 and in MPAT 1.6 the Province improved to an overall average of level 3 score, however in MPAT 1.7 performance dropped slightly to 2.9.

Figure 64: MPAT performance per KPA, per cycle (MPAT 1.2 – 1.8)



Source: OTP, M&E

As illustrated in the graph above there has been marked improvement in the provincial performance since the inception of MPAT, with a slight dip in MPAT 1.7

Table 58: Provincial Trend Analysis per Department, MPAT 1.2 to MPAT 1.8

Department	Cycle of MPAT						
	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8
1. Office of the Premier	2.4	2.6	3.0	3.4	3.6	3.3	3.5
2. Environment and Nature Conservation	2.4	2.7	2.4	2.8	3.2	3.3	3.4
3. Social Development	2.7	3.3	3.1	3.7	3.6	3.3	3.3
3. COGHSTA	1.8	1.8	2.3	2.4	3	3.1	3.3
4. Education	2.2	2.3	2.8	2.9	3	2.4	3.2
4. Sport, Arts and Culture	2.1	2.6	2.3	2.9	2.8	2.5	3.2
5. Roads and Public Works	2.2	2.5	2.4	2.9	2.8	2.7	3.1
5. Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development	2.3	2.6	2.8	2.8	3.3	3	3.1
6. Economic Development and Tourism	2.2	2.6	2.9	2.8	2.9	2.5	3.0
7. Provincial Treasury	2.0	2.4	2.7	3.0	3	2.5	2.8
7. Transport, Safety and Liaison	2.4	2.3	2.7	2.8	3.1	2.6	2.8
12. Health	2.1	2.3	2.7	2.4	2.4	2.3	2.0
PROVINCIAL AVERAGE	2.3	2.5	2.7	2.9	3	2.8	3.1

Source: OTP, M&E

The table above illustrates strides made in the monitoring of management principles across the departments. The Provincial performance of the province was at non-compliance in MPAT 1.2 (2012) a gradual consistent improvement was seen over the next 4 cycles with a slight decline in 2017 and by MPAT 1.8 (2018) the province was at a compliance score of 3.1

12.3.15 Audit Outcomes

The Northern Cape government experienced an improvement in the financial management of the State. Over 50% of departments AG reports had a “disclaimer”, meaning these were not verifiable in the early years. In 1998, 9 departments (52,9%) received disclaimers, 7 departments (41.2%) received qualified opinions and only 1 department (5.9%) received an unqualified audit outcome. The “disclaimer” applied to less than 6% by 1999. In the financial year ending 31 March 2000, the AG reported for the first time that the Northern Cape’s financial management and administration complied with accepted standards (10 Year Review, 2004).

Table 59: Actual audit outcomes for the Northern Cape provincial departments for the period 2009/10 to 2017/18

Departments	2009/10	2010/2011	2011/2012	2012/2013	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/2017	2017/18
1. Agriculture, Land Reform & Rural Development	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified
2. COGHSTA	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
3. Economic Development & Tourism	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings
4. Education	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
5. Health	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified
6. Provincial Legislature	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with findings
7. Office of the Premier	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings
8. Provincial Treasury	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings
9. Transport, Safety & Liaison	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
10. Social Services and Population Development	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
11. Sport, Arts & Culture	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
12. Environment & Nature Conservation	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with findings
13. Roads & Public Works	Disclaimer	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Unqualified with findings

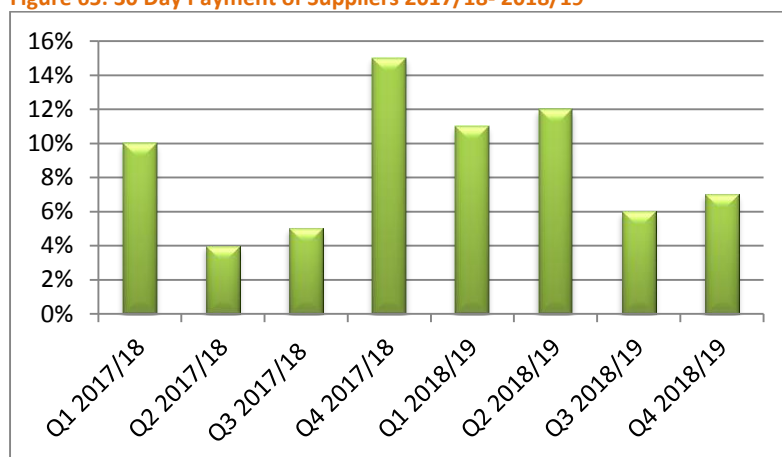
Table 60: Summary of the audit outcomes of provincial public entities for the period 2009/10 to 2015/16

Departments	2009/2010	2010/2011	2011/2012	2012/2013	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18
14. Kalahari Kid			Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Qualified	Outstanding audit being finalised	Qualified
15. Northern Cape Gambling Board			Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with findings
16. Northern Cape Liquor Board			Disclaimer	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings
17. Northern Cape Tourism Authority	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings
18. Northern Cape Housing Fund	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Unqualified	Unqualified	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings	Unqualified with no findings
19. NCEDA		Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
20. McGregor museum	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified
21. Northern Cape Fleet Management Trading entity	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings	Unqualified with findings
22. Ngwao Boswa Kapa Bokone	Qualified	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified with findings
23. NC Arts Council	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Disclaimer	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Audit not finalised at legislated date	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified

12.3.16 30 Day Payments

The 30-day payment of invoices from suppliers has gradually registered improvement; however, the percentage still fluctuates with the Department of Health's late payment of creditors due to inadequate budgeting and cash flow.

Figure 65: 30 Day Payment of Suppliers 2017/18- 2018/19



(Source: Outcome 12 NC POA 2017/18-2018/19)

12.3.17 Provincial Growth and Development Plan (PDGP)

The development and adoption of the PGDS in early 2005 and the introduction of ASGISA towards the end of 2006 was a clear and informed plan intended to translate 'the people's contract to create work and fight poverty' into clear deliverables (Source: NC 15 Year Review, 2009). The focus of the Northern Cape Provincial Government (NCPG) has remained on long term planning and has drafted the Provincial Growth and Development Plan (PGDP) Vision 2040 and drafted the Provincial Spatial Development Framework (PSDF), which was gazetted on the 15th of October 2018.

12.4 Persistent challenges

- The decentralisation and the limited capacity within departments has been a constant challenge in OD implementation. With the release of the 2006 Directive on OD, and then later the 2015 Directive on Changes to Organisational Structures, amended in 2016, it became clear that the complexities around OD were increasing in terms of the requirements set and the financial realities. The MPAT 1.8 results

further revealed that only 4 Departments (OTP, DSD, RPW and ENC) had approved organisational structures.

- Although the vacancy rate of the province has been reduced over the past 25 years, a constant challenge remains the ability to attract and retain the required skills in a resource constraint environment. Departments are further faced with challenges in terms of the number of vacancies that need to be filled in order to carry out its constitutional mandate, which is a cause for concern.
- The success of the CBM programme depends on the ability of a municipality to approve the roll out of this programme. This has become a challenge as in some instances municipalities refuse the roll out of the programme due to unwarranted reasons.
- The disjuncture between the resolution rate of complaints and the satisfaction rate of complainants remains a challenge especially in the face of increased violent service delivery protests
- Challenges faced by the Department of Health are impeding compliance to the Provincial Treasury regulation requirements in terms of the 30 Day payment of creditors. This is due to inadequate budgeting and cash flow constraints.

12.5 Looking ahead

- The reviews of the organisational structures are still in progress while engagement and consultation processes are still underway.
- The province will continue with the monitoring of the vacancy rates and will implement strategies to reduce the vacancy rate, which will include the capturing of only filled and funded vacant posts.
- To improve service delivery, all SDIPs should include baseline information on service and action plans to address the gaps between the baselines and the service delivery standards.
- Integrated, co-ordinated, and spatially referenced planning is required for a shared developmental vision for service delivery. Integrated planning at all levels is required to reduce duplication and to ensure optimal use of the limited resources and funding for seamless planning.

- Provincial policies should be implemented to compel municipalities and entities to cooperate with service delivery monitoring programmes, which include the Presidential Hotline, FSDM and CBM. There should further be constant communication and feedback on the satisfaction rate vs. the resolution rate of complaints.
- Presidential Hotline top ten issues, CBM and FSDP surveys to be expanded and used as a guide for improving service delivery and identifying hotspots.
- Province to ensure the adequate budgeting and monitoring of cash flow to adhere to the Provincial Treasury regulation requirements in terms of the 30 Day payment of creditors.
- Departments are urged to implement procurement plans in line with their budgets to ensure the timeous payment of invoices.



Chapter 13

AN INCLUSIVE AND RESPONSIVE SOCIAL PROTECTION SYSTEM



CHAPTER 13

13.1 Problem statement

Like the South African economy, Northern Cape economy continues to struggle to create a labour market stable enough to generate an adequate number of jobs. Employment is a critical element in the eradication of deep levels of poverty. Women, young people and persons with disabilities are the groups which are most likely to be unemployed and bear the brunt of poverty and inequality.

The dependence by vulnerable groups on stable family networks is precarious given the extent of unemployment and under-employment. Northern Cape, like elsewhere in South Africa has no comprehensive integrated social protection system. The existing social protection systems which do exist, are marred by inefficiencies, fragmentation and misalignment which need to be addressed. In addition, there is a need to enhance the coverage and effectiveness of social protection measures.

In 1994, the democratic government inherited a social system divided across racial lines, with the black majority receiving low standard of services. Despite progress in reducing fragmentation in the post-apartheid era, the social welfare sector is still constrained by a lack of coordination and integration of systems, weak and limited effectiveness of funding and significant capacity deficits. The distribution of and access to both public and private social welfare services remains skewed along racial and income lines, with the wealthy having access to relatively effective private services. The demand for social welfare services and care is increasing. Those with the ability to pay for social welfare services and care privately have the advantage of better services, whereas the quality of government funded services, either provided directly by the state or through Non-Profit Organisations (NPOs), are often plagued by inefficiencies, inadequate funding, competition for scarce resources and inadequate monitoring and oversight of services delivered.

Since 1994, the South African Government has increasingly adopted a social agenda, channelling a significant amount of effort and resources towards identifying vulnerable groups in society, crafting legislation that would protect their interests and develop and

implement programmes and strategies to support them. Today, the vulnerabilities of children, the youth, the elderly, women and the disabled are still inextricably linked to harsh apartheid-era legislation, aimed at subjugating black South Africans and further exacerbated by systemic poverty and inequality which continues to manifest itself along a racial divide. Even though many programmes aimed at improving the well-being of vulnerable groups have been implemented during the past 17 years, less effort has been put into establishing the extent to which service delivery has had an impact on the situation of these vulnerable groups over time.

13.2 The journey since 1994

13.2.1 Overview

The National Development Plan (NDP:2030), was introduced with the aim to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030. However, reducing unemployment, poverty and inequality remains the biggest challenge in South Africa to date. To this effect, the social sector policies and programmes are aimed at making a significant contribution to the government-wide fight against these triple challenges. The province does this by providing comprehensive social protection to the poor and vulnerable members of our society.

The NDP commits to achieving a defined social protection floor. This is a set of basic social security guarantees which secure protection aimed at preventing or alleviating poverty, vulnerability and social exclusion. This means that households who have not achieved the basic standard of living are assisted and highlights the state's obligation to provide social assistance to those in need. In line with the NDP's commitment, the social grant system continues to be a major anti-poverty programme of government, providing income support to millions of poor households. However, the system is still fragmented, plagued by administrative bottlenecks and implementation inefficiencies.

It is important to note that while there is an unemployment insurance system that provides support for a limited period to those who have made contributions, we do not have a comprehensive unemployment benefit system. One of the key issues is exclusions and

reaching all of those who are entitled to the existing social assistance benefits. This impedes on the social sector's ability to address the triple challenge, and conversely affecting the poorest individuals in our society including orphans, people with disabilities and people located in farms and remote rural areas.

In July 2000, the Department of Welfare was renamed Department of Social Development. across all the nine provinces. Than a "Ten Point Plan" was adopted which represented the priorities to be addressed by the department in partnership with other stakeholders during the period 2000 to 2005. The following priorities were adopted as the Ten Point Plan:

- Integrated poverty eradication strategy.
- Comprehensive social security system.
- Comprehensive social security system.
- Violence against women and children, older persons and other vulnerable groups.
- Youth Development.
- HIV/AIDS.
- Accessibility of social welfare services.
- Service's to people with disabilities.
- Commitment to co-operative governance.
- Train, educate, re-deploy and employ a new category of workers in social development.

13.2.2 Legislation and Policies

In 1994, after the historic 1994 democratic elections, the incoming African National Congress (ANC) government approved the Constitution in 1996. The Constitution of the Republic (1996) therefore introduced social protection as a right in Section 27 which recognises social security as a basic right: all South Africans "have the right to social security, including, if they are unable to support themselves and their dependants." Section 27(2) goes further to state that the state must take reasonable legislative and other measures, within its available resources, to achieve the progressive realisation of the right of access to social security and social assistance. Section 28(1)(c) provides for the right of children to social services. Informed by these two key policy directives, apartheid policies and

legislation had to be reviewed/abolished and new legislation was developed which is outlined below:

- Reconstruction Development Programme (RDP-1994)- advocated for the provision of basic needs and universal access to a just, fair social security and a welfare system for all people regardless of their race, gender or physical disability.
- The Constitution of South Africa section 29(1) (c) 1996- provides for the right of access to appropriate Social Assistance to those unable to support themselves and their dependents.
- White paper for Social Welfare Services 1997- aims to promote sustainable human development and quality of life for all South Africans through the integration of population issues into development planning in all spheres of government and in all sectors of society.
- Child Care Act 1983-is the primary statute for the protection of children.
- Children's Act 2005- makes provision for the rights and responsibilities of children and parents and protection of children and the promotion of their wellbeing.
- Non-Profit Organisation Act 1997- this Act repealed the Fundraising Act of 1997. The Act established an administrative and regulatory framework within which Non-Profit Organisations can conduct their affairs (1997).
- The Aged Persons Amendment Act, No 100 of 1998-provides for conditions regarding subsidies to managers of registered homes, to monitor compliance with conditions of registration of homes, establishment of management conditions, accessibility of homes and reporting on abuse of older persons.
- Older Persons Act 2006- strive towards the protection and promotion of the status, wellbeing, safety and security of older persons.

13.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

13.3.1 Poverty

Poverty is about not having enough money to meet basic needs including food, clothing and shelter. However, poverty is much more than just not having enough money. The World

Bank describes poverty in this way “Poverty is hunger, lack of shelter, poverty is being sick and not being able to see a doctor. Poverty is not having access to school and not knowing how to read. Poverty is not having a job, is fear for the future, living one day at a time”. Poverty has many faces, changing from place to place and across time, and has been described in many ways. Most often, poverty is a situation people want to escape. So, poverty is a call to action for the poor and the wealthy alike, a call to change the world so that many more may have enough to eat, adequate shelter, access to education and health, protection from violence, and a voice in what happens in their communities.”

Reducing poverty and inequality is the overriding concern of South Africa’s development policies and programs, from the onset of our democracy in 1994 in the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) to the current National Development Plan: Vision 2030 (NDP). The guiding principle, as captured in the NDP, is that “no political democracy can survive and flourish if the mass of our people remains in poverty, without land, without tangible prospects for a better life. Attacking poverty and deprivation must be the first priority of a democratic government”.

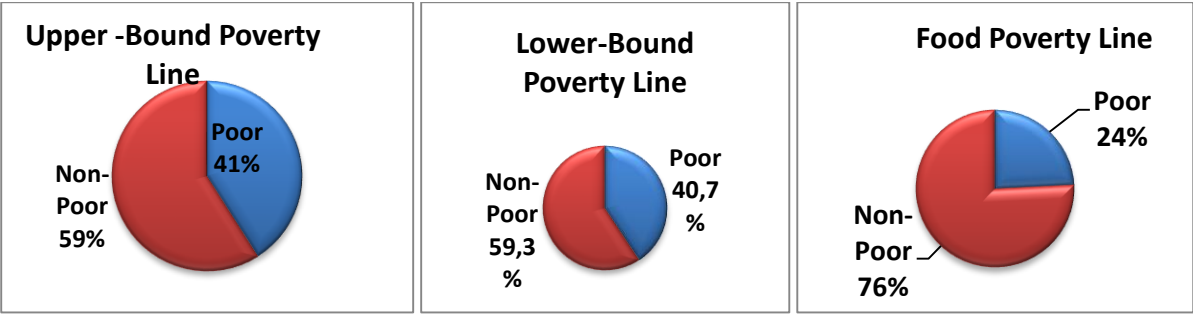
The NDP posits that to raise the living standards to the minimum required level will involve various mechanisms, such as increasing employment, incomes, productivity as well as through social protection and quality public services. The measure of success of government’s development policies will be when the lives and opportunities of poorest South Africans are transformed for the better.

13.3.1.1 Poverty Lines

Despite the many definitions, poverty is a complex and multidimensional societal issue. No matter how poverty is defined, it is an issue that requires attention. Therefore, given the complexity of poverty, Statistics South Africa (StatsSA) employed an internationally recognised approach the cost-of-basic-needs approach to produce three poverty lines, namely the food poverty line (FPL), the lower-bound poverty line (LBPL), and the upper-bound poverty line (UBPL) which are explained below.

- Food poverty line - R547 (in April 2018 prices) per person per month. This refers to the amount of money that an individual will need to afford the minimum required daily energy intake. This is also commonly referred to as the “extreme” poverty line.
- The lower-bound poverty line - R785 (in April 2017 prices) per person per month. This refers to the food poverty line plus the average amount derived from non-food items of households whose total expenditure is equal to the food poverty line.
- Upper-bound poverty line - R1 183 (in April 2018 prices) per person per month. This refers to the food poverty line plus the average amount derived from non-food items of households whose food expenditure is equal to the food poverty line.

Figure 66: Poverty Headcount in the Northern Province, 2015



Source: StatsSA. 2017

In 2018, the food poverty line was adjusted to R547 per month to keep up with the changes in the cost of living. In 2015, 24% of the Northern Cape's population was living below the food poverty line.

People living below this poverty line are considered to live in “extreme poverty”, as they are not able to afford to eat enough food to meet their basic physical needs. In 2015, 40,7% of the population lived below the LBPL, indicating that they did not have enough money to purchase both adequate food and non-food items, whilst 41% that lived below the UBPL were still considered to be living in poverty but were generally able purchase both food and non-food items.

13.3.1.2 Poverty and the Severity of Poverty.

The poverty gap measures the number of households that are living below the poverty line and the resources needed to bring them above the poverty line. The severity of poverty is based on the square of the gap between the poverty line and the incomes of the poor, thus it gives great weight to those who are most deeply in poverty. This takes into account not only the distance separating the population from the poverty line (the poverty gap), but also the inequality among the poor. That is, a higher weight is placed on those households/ individuals who are further away from the poverty line (Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation, 2016).

Table 61: Poverty Gap and the Severity of Poverty Per Province, 2006-2015.

Provinces	Poverty Gap				Severity of Poverty			
	2006	2009	2011	2015	2006	2009	2011	2015
Eastern Cape	43,9	44,9	35,5	41,3	28,4	29,6	21,6	27,1
Free State	31,0	34,9	23,4	25,1	18,2	21,0	13,4	14,2
Gauteng	18,3	16,6	12,0	13,2	9,6	9,1	6,4	6,9
KwaZulu Natal	45,2	41,2	33,4	36,1	30,3	27,1	20,4	22,7
Limpopo	47,4	50,6	26,8	40,3	31,0	34,7	23,0	26,4
Mpumalanga	41,8	40,7	31,1	29,0	26,9	26,4	18,0	17,3
Northern Cape	40,9	36,6	26,4	28,0	26,2	22,6	14,9	16,5
North West	37,5	36,0	29,6	32,2	23,7	22,5	17,8	19,8
Western Cape	21,2	18,1	12,5	14,7	11,7	9,9	6,2	7,6
South Africa	35,6	33,5	25,5	27,7	22,5	21,3	15,0	17,0

Source: Development Indicators 2016, DPME

The poverty gap and the severity of poverty declined in all nine provinces between 2006 and 2016. According to the development indicators data, the province's poverty gap which measures the number of people living below the poverty line and the resources needed to push them above the poverty line registered a decline from 40,9% in 2005 to 26,2% in 2015 whilst the severity of poverty also decreases from 22,6% to 16,5% over the same period. A decline in the poverty gap and the severity of poverty is an indication that the number of people living below the poverty line declined over this period under study. Although poverty

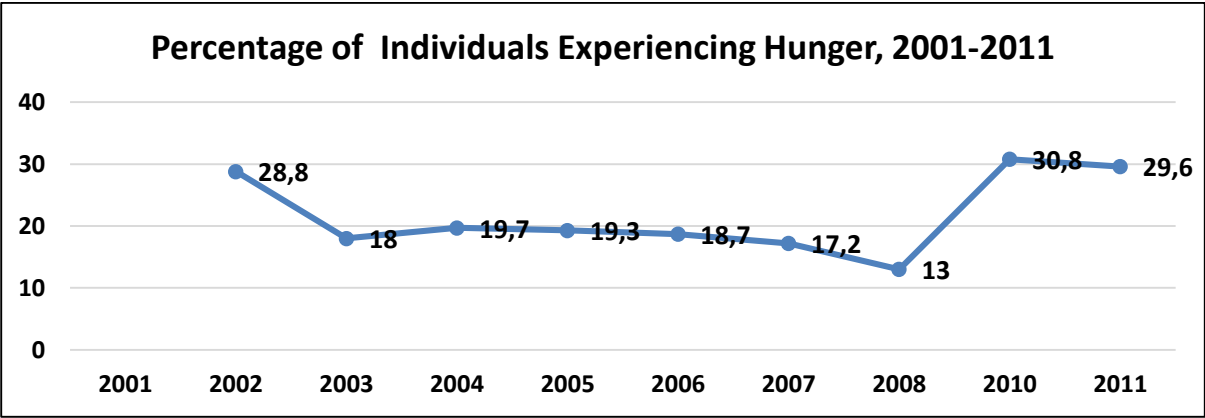
has reduced in the Northern Cape, the key indicators show that the major gains were made during 2011 because the poverty gap and the severity of poverty recorded the least percentage of 26,4% and 14,9% respectively.

13.3.2 Poverty and Food Security in the province

Poverty and food insecurity are some of the legacies of race-based socio-economic development practices that have been enforced throughout history. However, the right to food is a basic human right that is entrenched in the Constitution. Hunger refers to a personal, physical sensation of discomfort, while food insecurity refers to a lack of available financial resources for food at the level of the household. This section examines individuals/households experiencing hunger, the vulnerability of households to hunger and the main source of household income as well as the impact of social grants on poverty alleviation.

13.3.2.1 Vulnerability to Hunger.

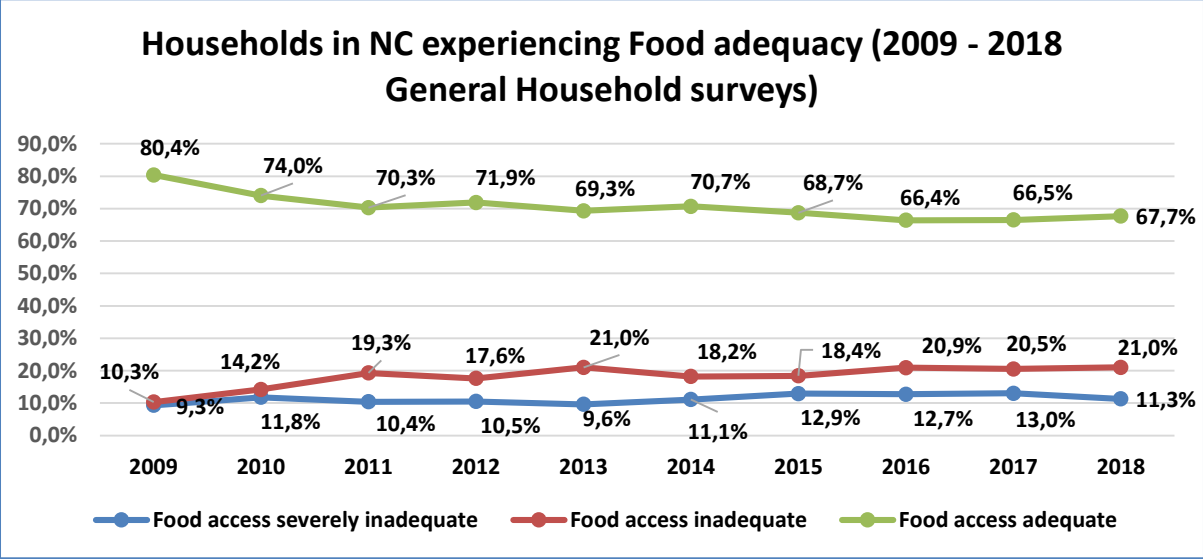
Figure 67: Percentage of Households Experiencing Hunger, 2001-2011.



Source: (Statistics South Africa, 2013)

The Millennium Development Goal 1 report of 2013 by Statistics SA, indicates that the number of individuals experiencing hunger in the province remained consistent around 19% between 2004 and 2005, before it declined to 13% in 2008. It then increased to 29,6% in 2011. Supporting the trend in the increase in households experiencing hunger, is the General Household Surveys from 2009 to 2018, which indicated that the adequate access of food decreased from 80% in 2009 to 67,7% in 2018.

Figure 68: Households in the Northern Cape Experiencing Food Adequacy, 2009-2018



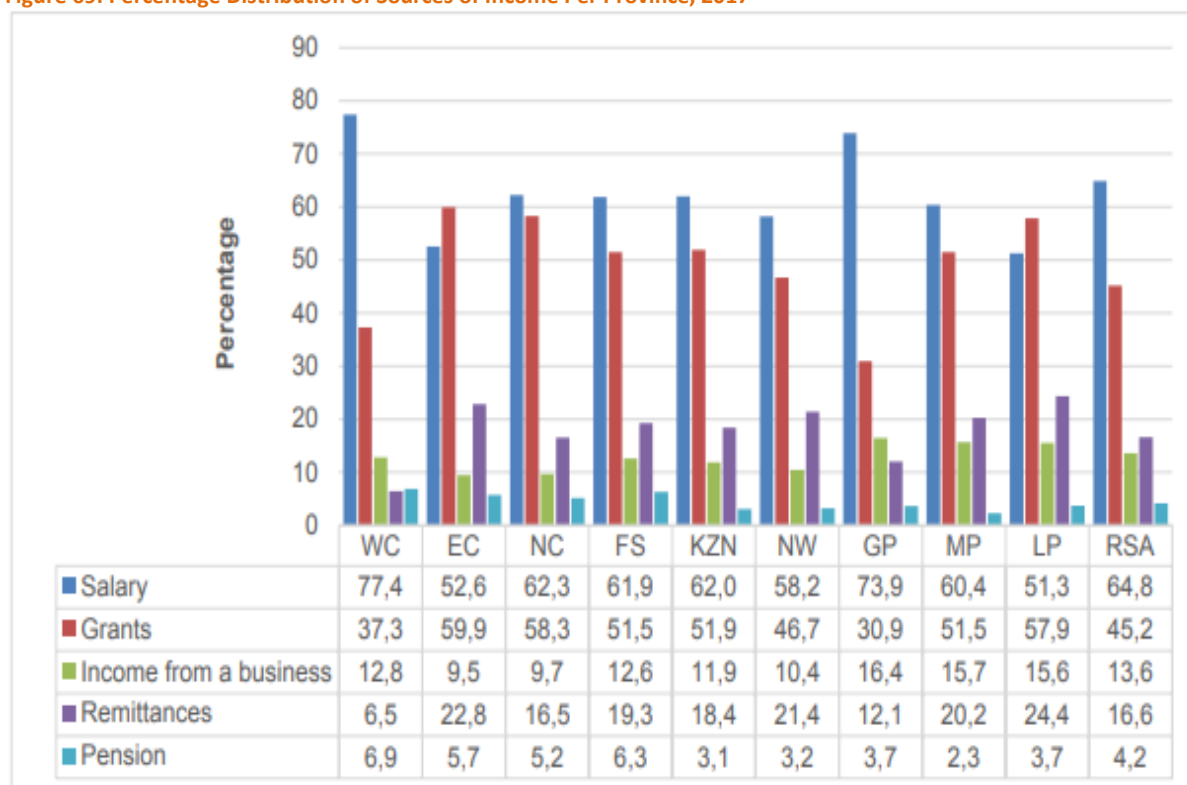
Data sources: StatsSA, GHS 2018

According to Statistics South Africa, General Household Survey (2018), the Northern Cape recorded the second highest proportion of households with food access that was severely inadequate (11,3%). A further 21,0% (joint second highest in the country) of households had food access that was described as inadequate, which together with the severely inadequate totals 32,3%. This means that about one in three Northern Cape households has inadequate access to food. The province's households with food access that was severely inadequate (11,3%) was more than double that of the country's average (5,2%). The effects of poverty are more than just missing a meal, families struggle with chronic food insecurity, hunger which can ultimately result to malnutrition.

13.3.2.2 Source of Income Per Province.

The source of income is used to determine household income across different categories. The figure below, illustrates the main sources of income for the province for 2018.

Figure 69: Percentage Distribution of Sources of Income Per Province, 2017



Data sources: StatsSA, GHS 2017

The main source of income for most provinces was salaries followed by social grant in 2018. The Northern Cape Province main source of household income was salaries at 62,3% and 58,3% of households depended on social grants. Income from business recorded 9,7%, remittances 16,5% and pensions 5,2% in 2018.

13.3.2.3 Social Grants.

Prior to 1994, government implemented the State Maintenance Grant which was implemented along racial lines and was therefore exclusionary. Therefore, social assistance is the one area where significant changes and progress has been made since 1994. The changes include modifying the previous social protection system to eliminate racial inequities and introducing some new guarantees and benefits:

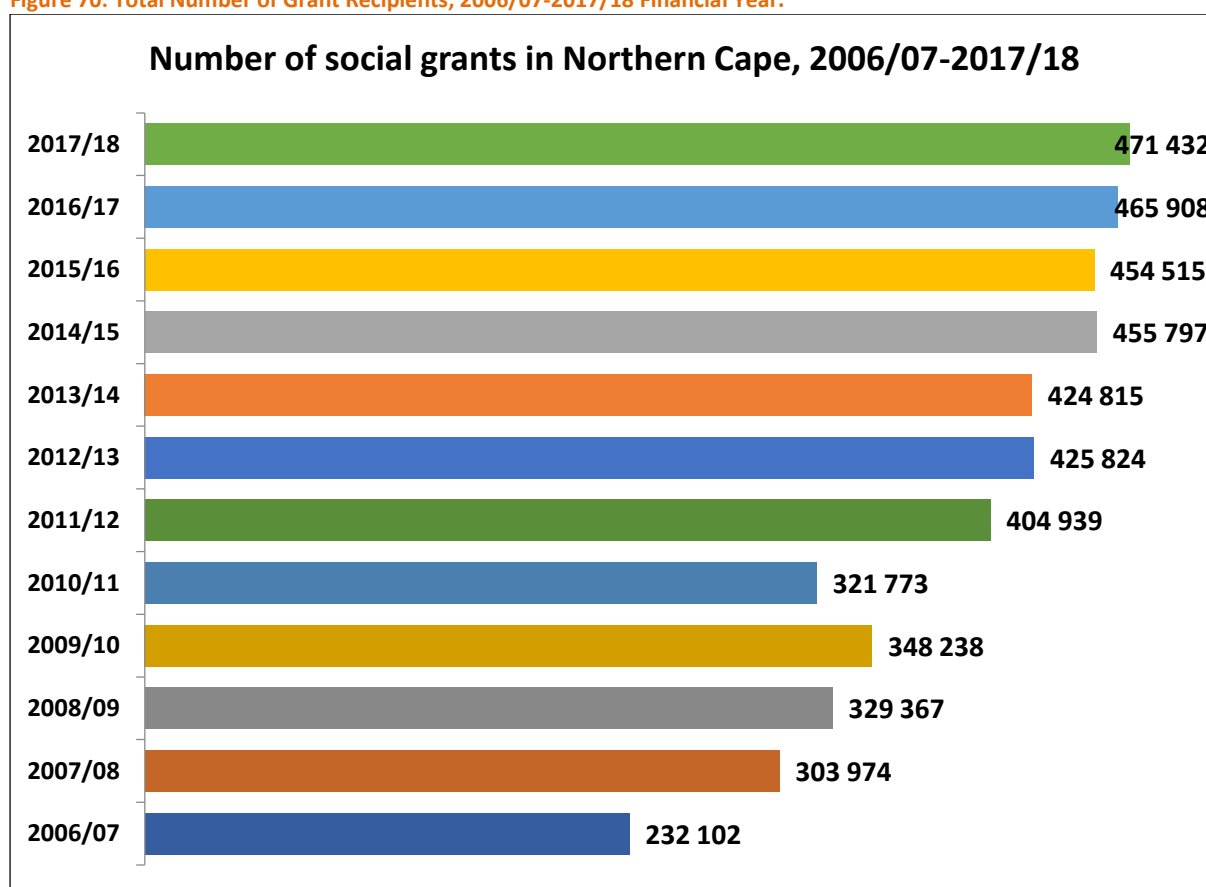
- The Child Support Grant (CSG) was introduced in 1998. It initially targeted children aged 0 to 7 years. The age limit of the CSG was gradually raised to 18 years.
- The Old-age Grant (OAG) was normalised so that blacks would also get a monthly income, unlike before 1994, when they received it bi-monthly. The age limit for men

was gradually lowered from 65 to 60, to match the limit for women. Social grants became a core component of South Africa's poverty alleviation strategy.

- The Disability Grant, Foster Care Grant, Care Dependency Grant and War Veterans' Grant were extended.

The government introduced social grants as poverty alleviation strategy to assist individuals and households living in abject poverty. The table below depicts the total number of grant recipients in the Northern Cape by grant type from 2006/07-2017/18.

Figure 70: Total Number of Grant Recipients, 2006/07-2017/18 Financial Year.



Source: SASSA Statistical Report, March 2017

The total number of grant recipients increased from 232 102 to 471 432 between 2006/07 and 2017/18 financial years. While the Northern Cape received 2,7% of all grants nationally its population only accounts for 2,2% of the national population. The uptake rate of grants in the Northern Cape thus remains proportionately higher than its contribution to the national population. A situation that has persisted for many years. Most grants are child

support grants (65%), followed by old age grants (18%) and disability grants (11%) according to the provincial Department of Social Development.

13.3.2.4 Impact of Social Grants on Poverty Alleviation.

According to Devereux and Waidler (Devereux, S. and Waidler, J, 2017) several empirical studies found good evidence that the receipt of social grants positively impacts on household food security indicators, and on individual nutritional status of South Africans. Studies (Devereux, S. and Waidler, J, 2017) have found that children living in households with old age grant recipients were taller, and the child support grant significantly reduces the incidence of child stunting. Nevertheless, the Devereux and Waidler study suggests that the child support and old age grants are insufficient to meet food needs, and eradicate hunger in all recipient households.

13.3.3 Provincial Poverty Alleviation Programmes

13.3.3.1 War on Poverty.

The War on Poverty Campaign signalled a new approach in the fight against poverty by the three spheres of government and its social partners. The main objective of this approach was to enable the provision of integrated services to poor households through the use of social research. The effective implementation of this programme will, amongst other things, assist in:

- The identification of needy households for planning purposes to develop strategies to alleviate poverty and improve service delivery.
- The integration of services between departments and spheres of government; and
- Informed planning, budgeting and decision-making by all government departments.

The Provincial War on Poverty Programme was an overarching programme that aimed at assisting families to graduate out of poverty. The programme focused on the following priorities:

Priority 1: Access to a “basket of public services” to ensure all Northern Cape constituents enjoy the minimum acceptable standard of living.

- Priority 2: Income protection through the social wage that includes, among things, social grants, transport subsidies, no-fee schools and housing subsidies; and
- Priority 3: Economic Inclusion through linking beneficiaries to job and skills development opportunities.

The War on Poverty Programme was based on a Provincial Indices of Multiple Deprivation study that looked at five domains (Income and Material, Employment, Health, Education and Living Environment Deprivation) of deprivation. Based on these variables, 63 wards for the Province have been identified, of which 21 are situated in Frances Baard, 18 in Pixley ka Seme, 11 in John Taolo Gaetsewe, 9 in Zwelintlanga Fatman Mgcawu and 4 in Namakwa district.

In order to intensify the War on Poverty campaign, the Northern Cape Provincial government saw the need for accurate information with regard to the households in the province. To this end, it embarked on the 'Balelapa household profiling project' which was aimed at providing the provincial government with up-to-date information on all households in the province, therefore enabling government to enhance its planning capabilities and to direct services to where it was needed most.

The Balelapa project was initiated in May 2010 with the sole objective of profiling all the households in the province, with the ultimate aim of ensuring that the poor and vulnerable households are provided with an integrated basket of services and development support that included access to education, nutrition, free basic services, and economic empowerment opportunities. According to information available in 2010, there were approximately 280 000 households in the Northern Cape located in 271 settlements.

The Balelapa project unfolded in 3 phases, namely:

- Profiling of all households in the province.
- Verification and capturing of data obtained during the profiling process.
- Analysis of the data and reporting.

By the end of the 2011/12 fiscal year, a total of 120 223 households were profiled and 48 252 needy households across the Province were identified as living in abject poverty qualifying for assistance from the War on Poverty Programme. An incremental approach was adopted to graduate households out of poverty and implementation began in 2013.

Between 2013 and 2017, approximately 10 820 households with no income received an integrated basket of services to assist them towards sustainability and were successfully migrated out of extreme poverty. Furthermore, 3 842 Change Agents were linked to development and economic opportunities to support and facilitate their migration towards sustainability. These Change Agents are in the main young people, because the key to eliminating poverty and reducing inequality is the investment in people, especially young people.

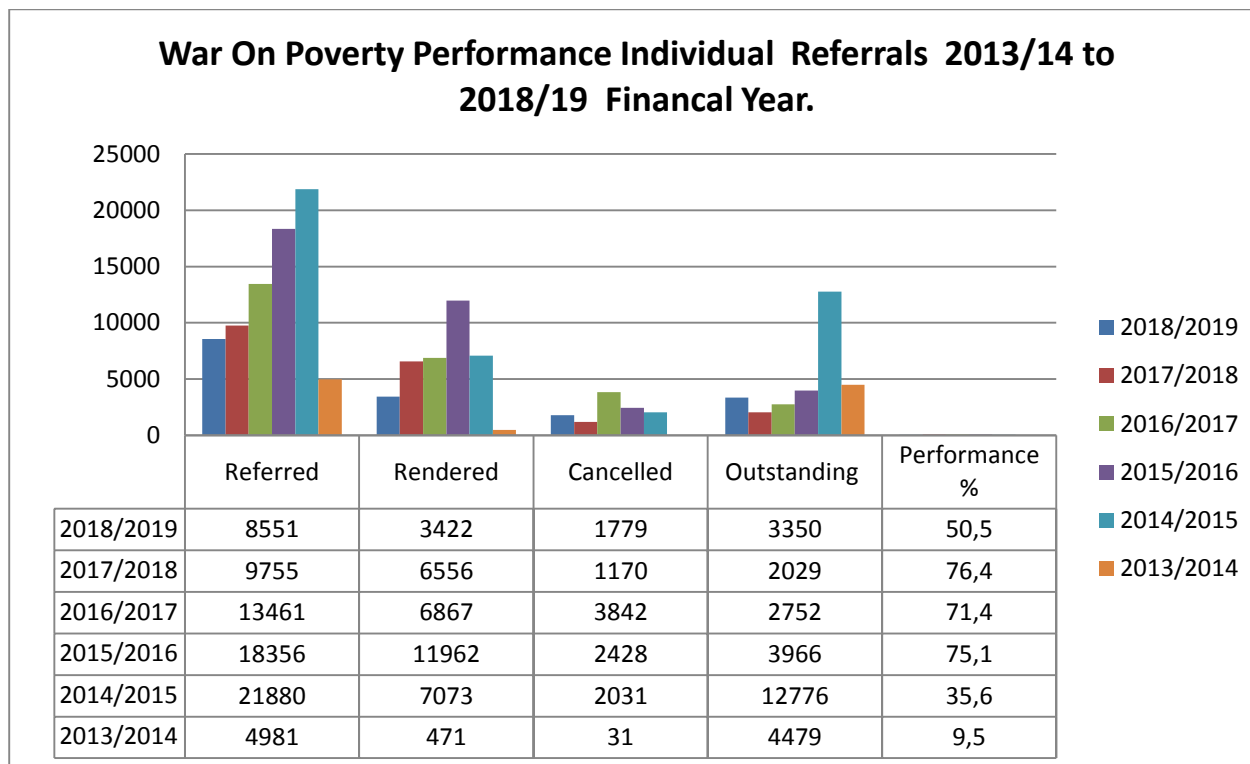
A highlight is the award which the Balelapa Project has won despite extensive criticism and challenges. This ground-breaking project scooped the DPSA's 1st Runner-up Centre for Public Service Innovation Award, 2011 in the category "Innovative Enhancement of Internal Systems in Government". The War on Poverty Programme was and continue to be marred by a number of challenges, key amongst them:

- Lack of alignment between Provincial and Local Government in terms of the identification of no-income and/or indigent households.
- The Programme was by-and-large seen as a safety-net intervention and therefore the developmental aspect of the Programme in terms of the Change Agent Empowerment Programme was never fully embraced and implemented in terms of the economic cluster departments.
- Educational level of identified Change Agents was very low and their skills / capabilities were minimum, therefore the current developmental programmes were incompatible with the majority of change agents because they were not aligned to the skills / educational level of the change agents.

The absence of an Anti-Poverty Strategy in the Province further compounded the lack of integration and coordination of the War on Poverty Programme, therefore resulting in government departments pulling in different directions with no cohesion in terms of anti-poverty interventions.

The figure below, shows the number of individuals that benefited from the War on Poverty programme from 2013/14-2018/19 financial year.

Figure 71: War on Poverty Performance Individual Referrals, 2013/14-2018/19 Financial Year.



Source: Northern Cape Office of the Premier, 2013/14-2018/19 Financial year.

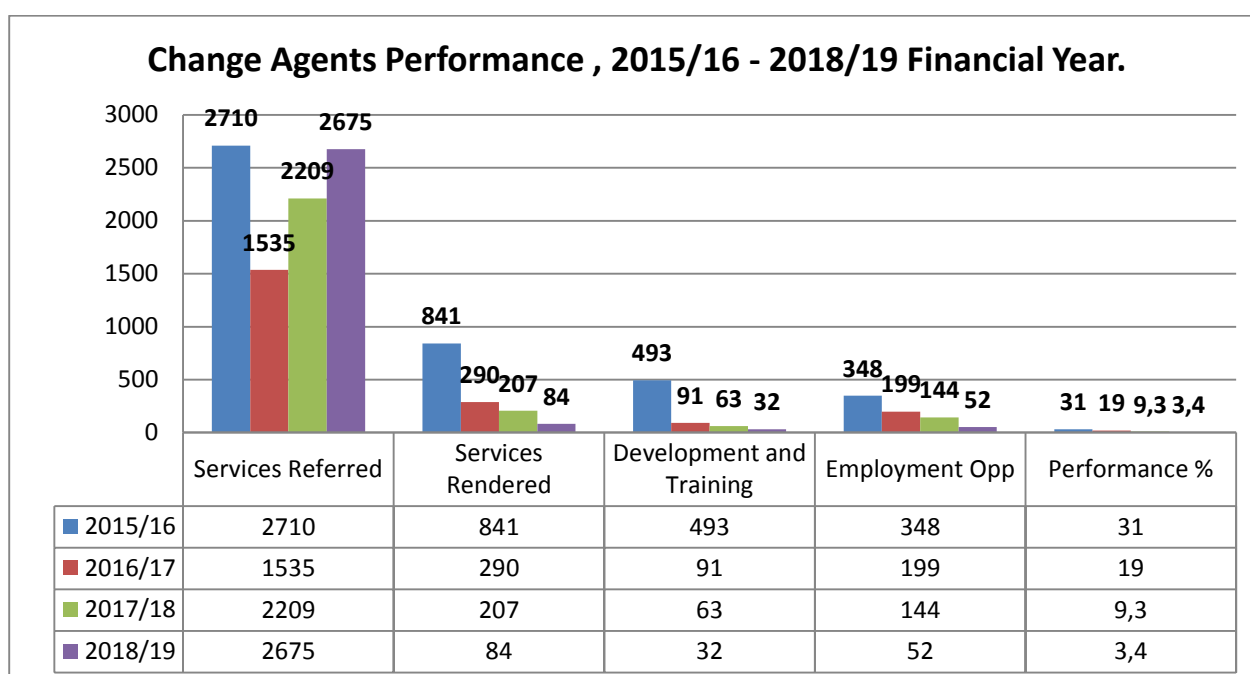
The graph above depicts the performance trends on the WOP programme from 2013/14 to 2018/19. Referrals in 2013/14 were 4 981 with a performance of 9,5% of services rendered by the end of that year. This improved to 35,5% in the next year and to 75,1 % in 2015/16. This demonstrated an upward trend in terms of performance although performance was not at the ideal 80-100% stage yet. In 2016/17 a slight drop in performance was observed with 71,4% of service rendered and this was followed by another improvement of 76,4% in 2017/18, which was the highest performance since the inception of the programme. In 2018/19, however, there was a regression in performance with a recorded performance of only 50,5% of services rendered.

Notable from the above graph also, is the increase in cancelled services between 2013/14 and 2018/19 financial year. Cancelled services are those services which are deemed no

more necessary to these household due to either duplication or the recipient no longer requires the service or the recipient cannot be located.

Outstanding services on the other hand are those services allocated to different departments that could not be attended to within the financial year and are not carried over or monitored in the next financial year. As seen in the graph above the number of services outstanding fluctuated from year to year with highest number in 2013/14, a sharp increase in 2014/15, followed by a drastic drop in 2015/16, 2016/17 and 2017/18 and a rise again in 2018/19.

Figure 72: Change Agents Performance, 2015/16-2018/19 Financial Year.



Source: Northern Cape Office of the Premier, 2013/14-2018/19 Financial year.

The graph above depicts the performance on services rendered to change agents over the period 2015/16 to 2018/19. Service referred for change agents were 2 710, the highest number of referrals over the past 4 years. Performance for 2015/16 was at 31%, while performance in 2016/17 dropped to 19%, followed by a further drop below 10% in 2017/18 and the lowest in 2018/19 at 3,4%. The performance on services to change agents demonstrates a downward trend in performance and may point to system challenges in rendering services to these stakeholders who have been identified as sources for permanent change in the circumstances of these households.

13.3.4 Food Security

The gap between the rich and the poor has widened and the most obvious manifestation of this has been household food insecurity. In order to address the challenges of food insecurity the state has implemented the Sustainable Livelihood programme through which Drop-in-Centres, Soup Kitchens and food production initiatives have been established. The table below lists the number of Soup Kitchens funded by the provincial government and the annual expenditure incurred for the five-year period 2009/10 to 2017/18.

Table 62: Total number of Soup Kitchens Funded and Total Expenditure, 2009/10-2017/18.

FINANCIAL YEAR	NO OF SOUP KITCHENS	NO. OF BENEFICIARIES	EXPENDITURE R'000
2009/10	53	16 976	3 462
2010/11	74	35 113	4 887
2011/12	75	125 155	6 213
2012/13	75	53 407	5 882
2013/14	109	32 487	10 708
2014/15	112	38 628	9 667
2015/16	115	54 600	13 836
2016/17	115	72 701	14 738
2017/18	112	24 086	10 474
TOTAL	112	125 155	79 867

Source: NCDSD, Annual Reports, 2009/10-2017/18

The number of food kitchens in the province increased from 53 in 2009/10 to 112 in 2017/18 financial year. To date, 125 155 beneficiaries benefited through the provision of meals from the soup kitchens in the province. The soup kitchens budget allocation increased year-on-year tripling over this period under study.

Table 63: The number of Drop-In-Centres funded and total expenditure from 2009/10-2017/18

FINANCIAL YEAR	NO OF DROP IN CENTRES	EXPENDITURE R'000
2009/10	21	5 458
2010/11	28	8 300

FINANCIAL YEAR	NO OF DROP IN CENTRES	EXPENDITURE R'000
2011/12	30	9 228
2012/13	34	6 725
2013/14	29	7 297
2014/15	26	7 923
2015/16	26	6 541
2016/17	23	4 980
2017/18	20	4 985
TOTAL	20	61 437

Source: NCDSD, Annual Reports, 2009/10-2017/18

The number of drop-in-centres in the province increased from 21 in 2009/10 to 34 in 2012/13 and declined to 20 in 2017/18 financial years. The budget allocation for the drop-in-centres depicts a fluctuating trend between 2009/10 to 2017/18 financial year. The budget increased from R5 458 in 2009/10 to R7 923 in 2015/15 and declined again to R4 985 in 2017/18 financial year.

Table 64: The number of beneficiaries and the budget for Social Relief, 2009/10-2017/18

FINANCIAL YEAR	NO. OF BENEFICIARIES	BUDGET IN R'000
2009/10	13 168	4 070
2010/11	16 256	4 808
2011/12	16 136	5 516
2012/13	30 416	4 847
2013/14	45 428	6 085
2014/15	98 629	6 906
2015/16	65 302	7 623
2016/17	38 853	8 225
2017/18	32 169	10 918
TOTAL	98 629	58 998

Source: NCDSD, Annual Reports, 2009/10-2017/18

The main focus of the social relief programme is to render temporary relief to families experiencing undue hardship and distress, as well as those affected by natural and unnatural disasters. Social relief is usually provided in the form of, amongst other things, food parcels, blankets, school uniforms and household utensils. Over the past years a total of 98 629 individuals benefited from the social relief programmes. The total budget for social relief programmes amounted to R 58 998 million from 2009/10 to 2017/18.

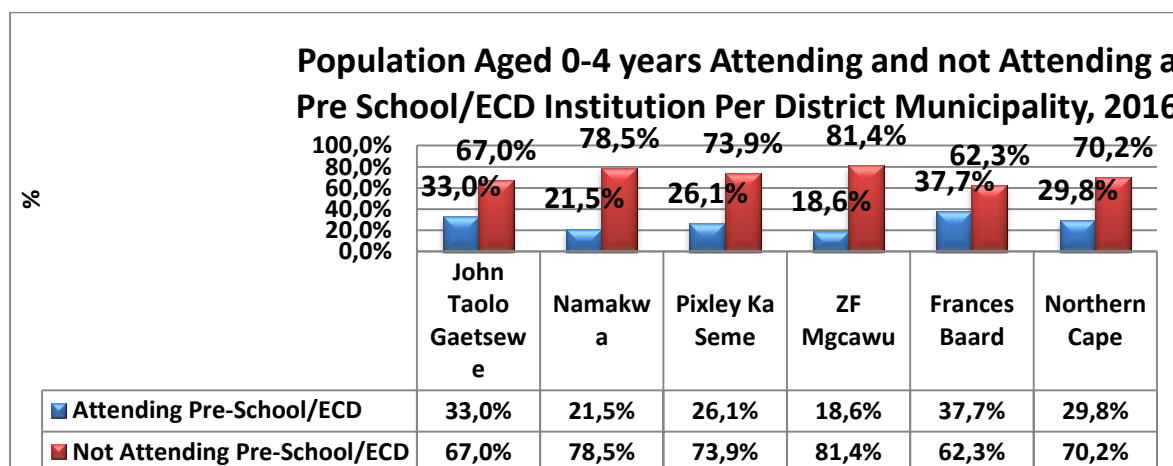
13.3.5 Early Childhood Development (ECD)

In 1994, government had no idea of how many ECD sites exist and how many children were accessing these sites. In 2015, government adopted the National Integrated Early Childhood Development Policy which aims at transforming early childhood development service delivery in South Africa. In line with the Policy, during 2019, the Executive Council approved (Executive Council Resolution No 082/2018(09)) the Provincial Integrated ECD Strategy.

The Strategy is aimed at transforming ECD service delivery in the province, in particular to address critical gaps and to ensure the provision of a comprehensive, universally available and equitable ECD services. For children 0-4 years, this strategy will facilitate the provision of a comprehensive package of ECD services for infants and young children, including children with special needs, children with disabilities and other developmental challenges.

13.3.5.1 Population Distribution.

Figure 73: Population 0-4 attending and not attending a Pre-School/ ECD Institution, 2016



Source: Statistics South Africa, Community Survey 2016

According to the Community Survey 2016 (StatsSA), there were more children between the ages of 0-4 not attending ECD institutions in the province. The highest percentage was recorded in Mgcawu and Pixley Ka Seme district municipalities with 81,4% and 78,5% respectively. There were 62,3% of children not attending ECD institutions in Frances Baard District Municipality as compared to other district municipalities.

13.3.5.2 Early Childhood Development Enrolment.

Early Childhood Development was not an institutionalised service in the Northern Cape prior to 2015. No indicators existed to measure enrolment, therefore ECD only became a stand-alone Sub-Programme during the 2015/16 financial year with the adoption of the National Policy. In the preceding years, ECD was reported as part of Child Care and Protection, hence the inability to quantify monies spent on ECD. The table below provides the ECD centres, learners and practitioners as well as the expenditure.

Table 65: Number of ECD Centres, Learners and Practitioners and Expenditure. 2015/16-2017/18

FINANCIAL YEAR	NUMBER OF REGISTERED ECD CENTRES	NO. OF BENEFICIARIES	NUMBER OF ECD PRACTITIONERS	EXPENDITURE R'000
2015/16	Not applicable	26 410	Not applicable	73 143
2016/17	Not applicable	31 479	Not applicable	86 299
2017/18	206	28 187	949	90 751

Source: NCDSD, Annual Reports 2015/16-2017/18

The Department of Social Development's ECD budget increased from R73 1143 in 2015/16, to R90 751 in the 2017/18 financial year, as well as the number of beneficiaries over the same period. In 2017/18 Financial year, the department had a total of 206 registered ECD centres, 28 187 ECD beneficiaries and 949 practitioners. Despite the Policy and the Strategy, the delivery of early childhood development services and programmes are beleaguered by a myriad of challenges relating to: lack of appropriate and safe infrastructure which is conducive to learning and teaching. This has an adverse effect on both registration and funding of ECD Centres due to non-compliance with the Children's Act of 2005. The delivery of age and stage appropriate programmes for children with disabilities. Insufficient funding

of early childhood development, especially for children with disabilities and high turnover of trained practitioners, resulting in the delivery.

13.3.5.3 Early Childhood Development Grant.

During 2017/18 financial year, the Department received the Early Childhood Development (ECD) Conditional Grant to the value of R13 million for maintenance and infrastructure upgrades of ECDs, in order to improve the infrastructure and increase access to ECD services. The Department appointed 2 Project Managers and an Administrative Officer on a three-year contract (2018 – 2021) to manage the ECD Conditional grant. A Quantity Surveyor was appointed on a seasonal basis.

The maximum value to spend per ECD centre was initially 130 000,00, however this has been increased to R 180 000,00 for the 2018/19 financial year. Sixty (60) ECD Centres were successfully upgraded during the 2017/18 financial year to ensure compliance with the prescribed Norms and Standards of the Children's Act. A total of 1 221 Children in 11 Centres were provided access to ECD services through a subsidy of R 15 per child per day for 264 days. A further 40 ECDs were identified for the 2018/19 financial year to benefit from infrastructural upgrades. The Department received R 18,2 million of which R 7,2 million has been set aside for infrastructural upgrades of the 40 identified ECDs. A further 1 640 children will benefit from a subsidy of R 15 per child per day for 264 days.

13.3.6 Social Welfare Services

The Department of social Development's (DSD) strategic priorities are: caring for and protecting vulnerable groups, especially children, women and people with disabilities; strengthening families and communities; transforming social relations, with a specific focus on gender and victim empowerment; and strengthening institutional capacity to deliver quality services.

In addition, DSD contributes to the realisation of some of the following government outcomes: improved quality basic education; a long and healthy life for all; citizens are safe

and feel safe; decent employment through inclusive economic growth; a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path; vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all; sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life; a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system; and an efficient, effective and development-orientated public service, and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

13.3.6.1 Child and Youth Care Services.

The Department of Social Development will expand its Child and Youth Care Services using a model known as 'Isibindi'. This model has proven to be effective in addressing the needs of orphans and vulnerable children through the appointment of Child and Youth Care Workers who provide children with direct support in their homes, and support at the community level through safe parks and life skills programmes. Up to 12 000 children benefited from direct supervision and psychosocial support services since the model has been rolled out.

The Department of Social Development has also been funding 11 child and youth care centres to ensure the provision of services for abandoned, abused neglected children in a safe environment. The Department established 3 secure care centres to ensure that children in conflict with the law are diverted away from criminal justice system and subjected to effective transitional care programmes to ensure that the children's rights are being promoted. The development of restorative responses within the programme as well as the development of skills and provision of education are critical elements of the programmes.

13.3.6.2 Services to Older Persons.

The Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006) enjoins the Department to protect, promote and maintain the status, rights, well-being and security of older persons. This the Department does through the implementation of community-based and residential care services. Older persons facilities increased from 20 in 2009/10, to 24 in the 2017/18 financial year. Between 2009/10 and 2017/18 financial year, the department had a fluctuating trend in the number of older persons accessing residential facilities from 984 in

2009/10 to 33 555 in 2011/12 and 1 980 in 2017/18. Currently there are 3 111 older persons accessing Community Based Care and Support Services.

13.3.6.3 Services to Persons with Disabilities.

The province had 3 residential facilities for persons with disabilities. To date, there are 3 360 persons with disabilities accessing these residential facilities and 2 700 persons with disabilities with access to protective workshops. The Department has however established 7 protective workshops post 1994, to ensure that the people with disabilities are exposed to level of training in terms of technical and vocation skills.

13.3.6.4 Social Welfare Personnel.

Due to the shortage of social workers, in 2007 the National Department of Social Development introduced the National Social Scholarship Programme. Since the implementation of the National Social Work Scholarship Programme, the Department has successfully trained 275 social workers of which 218 have been absorbed while 57 remain unemployed. The Department currently funds a total of 64 social work students (varying from 2nd to 4th year). However, due to challenges to absorb social work graduates, the National Department of Social Development has suspended new scholarship intakes for the 2018 academic year onwards to redirect funding to the absorption of Social Workers. However, the students who are in the scholarships programme awarded in previous financial years, are to be funded until the finalisation of their studies.

13.3.7 Prevention Services

13.3.7.1 Substance Abuse Treatment Centre.

The Prevention and Treatment of Substance Abuse Act (2008) prescribes that each province must have at least one treatment centre and one halfway house. However, provision of treatment, prevention, early intervention, reintegration and after-care services is far below the estimates of the act and of the national Drug Master Plan. Treatment services are costly

to provide; therefore, departmental services were mainly focussed on prevention services due to the absence of a treatment facility in the Northern Cape.

After many years of lobbying, the Department was allocated R 74 million over the Medium-Term Expenditure Framework for the establishment and the operationalization of a Northern Cape In-Patient Treatment Centre. The construction process of the 40-bed facility was successfully completed in 2018, at a cost of R 73 932 715.90. The Centre is a 40-bed facility and has commenced with its first intake of 30 service users in February 2019. The programme implemented by the Centre is the TIME Programme, which is a 12-week (3 months) intensive programme, inclusive of life-skills and vocational skills.

13.4 Persistent challenges

- At National level, the Department was to develop a National Policy for Community Development to guide and streamline the implementation of community development work across the different spheres of government and ensure alignment between the different spheres. This policy has unfortunately not been finalized. Consequently, no Norms and Standards exist for Community Development Work resulting in duplication of functions, lack of integration and an overlap of work between the different cadres responsible for community development, e.g. Community Development Practitioners, Community Development Workers.
- Access to Early Childhood Development (ECD) services remain a challenge, especially in far-flung rural areas because of infrastructure challenges. The mandate for infrastructure development for ECDs sits with local government; however, this mandate is often treated as a budget neutral mandate “unfunded mandate” and therefore many ECD Centres could not be registered because of non-compliance in terms of the Children’s Act which meant that the children in those ECD Centres could not be subsidized and were therefore not exposed to registered quality stimulation programmes.
- Although the province achieved on its pre-determined objectives in terms of statutory services and safety net interventions, the success or efficacy of these short-term interventions is dependent on interdepartmental integration, coordination and

collaboration. Unfortunately, unless the conditions that led to vulnerability in one form or the other is addressed, the intervention implemented by the department will remain ineffective.

- The absence of a long-term provincial social protection plan, coupled by the lack of cooperation between departments and the absence of central coordination of government social protection programme from Office of the Premier served as a disabling factor. There is however a realisation that for the province to succeed it needs to foster strategic partnerships with various stakeholders and enhance integration among departments.
- The development of the Northern Cape War on Poverty Programme was in the main implemented to ensure the implementation of targeted and coordinated interventions aimed at the most deprived populace. However, mistakes were made at the conception and design stage in terms of the involvement of private sector and local government which proved costly.
- The absorption of social work graduates remains a challenge in the province.

13.5 Looking ahead

The key priorities for the 2019 - 2024 Medium Strategic Framework for the Northern Cape Provincial Administration in terms of social protection should be the following:

- The War on Poverty Programme needs to be subjected to an evaluation process with the aim to redesign and repackage it in such a manner that it can become the provincial integrated service delivery model that will guide planning, implementation and evaluation of social protection interventions.
- Development of a **Provincial Anti-Poverty Strategy** that will among others:
 - Identify the poor communities in the Northern Cape based on a mutually agreed upon criteria in terms of social infrastructure,
 - Consolidate all government interventions in terms of social protection,
 - Develop a consolidated indigent household database,
 - Develop the range of interventions such households would qualify for and the departments and agencies responsible for such interventions,

- Strengthening of referral mechanisms and reporting of such households in line with the targets as per the Anti-Poverty Strategy,
- Introduce a monitoring and evaluation framework to assess social protection interventions,
- Strengthen public-private-partnership in terms of government's anti-poverty strategy,
- **On Food Security**- consolidate all government interventions in terms of social protection, Increased levels of nutrition and food safety among the food insecure and Increase safety nets and food emergency management systems.
- **On Governance and coordination of social security programme**- Improved levels of governance, integration, coordination, financial and administration management of social security interventions in all spheres of government, between government and the private sector and civil society and the establishment of social protection system to strengthen coordination, integration planning, monitoring and evaluation of services.
- **Integrated ECD Strategy** to address the development and training of practitioners as well as access to ECD.
- The development of the Provincial Human Resource Development Strategy to address Social Workers absorption in the province.



Chapter 14

NATION BUILDING AND SOCIAL COHESION



CHAPTER 14

14.1 Problem statement

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa sets out the vision for a united, prosperous, non-racial and non-sexist country. It also sees a country which belongs to all who live in it, united in its diversity. Our constitution also obliges the country to heal the divisions of the past and recognizes that we come from a system that robbed the majority of its citizens of opportunity. This two-fold imperative forms the foundations of the mandate of this Department.

It is widely acknowledged that tremendous progress has been made since 1994. Yet 25 years after the democratic breakthrough, South African society remains divided with race still the biggest factor hampering progress. The historical privilege attached to race, class, space and gender has not yet been fully reversed. Since the dawn of democracy, the level of inequality has further increased widening the gap between the haves and the have-nots. The situation is exacerbated by high levels of corruption, fraud and greed robbing the poor of the services they deserve.

The racial divide is still prominent in the psyche and activities of the different sectors of the community. There is minimal contact and assimilation between the different communities especially amongst blacks and whites. Over the years, we have noted an increase in the number of exclusively white communities in parts of our province e.g. Eureka, Savannah and Owendale. It has also been noted that attendance at the celebration of our National Days is limited to certain sections of the community. Community dialogues and social cohesion summits have been established to engage on these matters with a view to erode the issues that divide and support the issues that attract and cause cohesion.

Existing apartheid spatial patterns mean limited opportunity for sharing of space across race and class and thus there is still limited interaction across race. Another legacy of apartheid spatial logic is that the poor often live far from places of work. This makes it harder to find

work and raises the cost of transport which impoverishes and perpetuates a group of people, the working poor.

On the sporting front, many South Africans felt the need for sporting symbols to be reviewed. Perceptions such as “rugby is a white sport” and “soccer is for blacks” were very prevalent. Former president Nelson Mandela made the most notable call for unity in sport when he supported the Springboks’ 1995 World Cup Rugby campaign. Similar divisions were prevalent in Arts and Culture. The need for “levelling the playing field” whilst promoting unity was always going to be a daunting task.

Prior to the democratic breakthrough in 1994, the cultural sector, including museums and heritage, were fragmentally managed. The newly formed Northern Cape Province inherited a cultural landscape devoid of the contributions of the majority of citizens. Public spaces reflected the achievements and dominance of the White minority through statues, memorial sites and other forms of memorialisation. Collections in almost all museums focused exclusively on the history and experiences of the Afrikaner. Exhibitions were designed to perpetuate colonial domination while the contributions of the rest of society were not reflected in these exhibitions.

While much has been done to create a socially cohesive society, the ideal is still to be strived for. Increased interaction between race, class and gender whilst appreciating each other's humanity, reversing stereotypes and building trusting societies will eventually enable us to measure a barometer of progress (social cohesion index) in attaining these ideals.

14.2 The journey since 1994

14.2.1 Overview

In the province, The Northern Cape Department of Sport, Arts and Culture (NC DSAC) only came into being as a separate department in 2001. Previously, its functions were divided between two departments which were the "Arts & Culture" component and the "Sport and Recreation" component. The “Arts & Culture” component operated as a directorate within

the Northern Cape Department of Education. “The Sport and Recreation” component was located within the Department of Sport, Recreation, Science and Technology. The approach to reporting since 2001 was different to that of the strategic period starting from 2009, making aggregating and comparison very difficult, and hence, statistics reflected in this report will cover mostly the latter strategic period. Since 2009, sector priorities and performance measures were also more consistent and unambiguous than previous years. The province, throughout the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF), has identified some key deliverables which included:

- Knowledge of the Constitution and fostering Constitutional values;
- Equalising opportunities, promoting inclusion and redress;
- Promoting social cohesion across society through increased interaction across race and class;
- Promoting active citizenry and broad-based leadership;
- Achieving a social compact that will lay the basis for equity, inclusion and prosperity.

As part of the trajectory of the NC DSAC on the journey since 1994, different roles and responsibilities and partnerships between the delivery partners and private entities had to be clearly defined for optimal impact. This process included various stakeholders that needed to highlight different objectives and resources available. Government in totality and specifically sector departments had to engage and clarify roles and responsibilities for maximum impact on communities. This required certain levels of awareness on cross cutting issues that needed to be increased. Social Cohesion had to be seen as a transversal agenda to be addressed by all sectors, e.g. in spatial development of housing and industrial infrastructure, agricultural development as well as economic opportunities. Different planning cycles between the different spheres of government, both provincial and local government had to be aligned. The notion is that currently there are no specific policies and strategies to deliver on the outcome objectives and these must be developed in collaboration with delivery partners and be resourced and planned for per term/quarter, as well as measured as per policy frameworks. The key matter has also become the buy in from community, which is still lacking over this reporting period. The buy in is mostly sought in terms of the issues of social cohesion, which must find expression in communities, which divides us as a collective, and these needs to be identified and targeted in programmes

14.2.2 Legislation and Policies

Since 1994, a number of policies have been implemented and legislation promulgated to create a framework for transformation and social cohesion. The following are some of the key policies and legislation:

- Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP)- As articulated in the RDP “The Nation building Project” will be an all-encompassing project that aims at economic, political and social transformation 1994.
- The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa.
- The National Archives of South Africa Act (Act 43 of 1996) - In addition to establishing the National Archives, this Act sets out the minimum standards for delivery of archival services and records management at provincial level.
- The National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999) - This Act is the legislation according to which the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority(PHRA) functions and sets the standards according to which the South African Heritage Resources Agency will evaluate provincial operations.
- The National Sport and Recreation Act (Act 110 of 1998) – Provides for the promotion and development of sport and recreation.
- The Cultural Affairs Act (Act 65 of 1989) - This is the piece of legislation under which the Northern Cape Arts and Culture Council (NCACC) is appointed.
- World Heritage Convention Act (Act 49 of 1999): - Broadly speaking the Act governs South Africa and therefore the Province’s mandate to act under the terms of UNESCO’s World Heritage Convention.
- The National Sport and Recreation Plan (NSRP)– The NSRP was adopted in 2011 with the emphasis of reposition of sport and recreation in the country.
- The White Paper on Arts, Culture and Heritage - Published in 1996, this document is the broad national policy statement for the arts and culture field, which was compiled through processes in which all nine provincial governments participated.
- Provincial Library Service Ordinance 16 of 1981 – This ordinance establishes the system according to which all libraries receiving support from the Department are established.

14.3 Progress for the period 1994 - 2019

14.3.1 Arts and Culture

The province's approach towards the development of the arts has been to provide as many opportunities as possible to assist artists in marketing and growing their talents. This was done mainly through providing financial assistance to artists so as to enable them to access immediate opportunities that they identified. The Northern Cape Arts and Culture Council (NCACC) administered a grant system through which artists applied for funding and were either granted or denied depending on whether they met the set criteria for funding.

In general, the department's approach in its first twenty-five years of existence has been mostly demand driven. This approach led to the introduction of programmes and projects that were meant to address immediate needs of the sector. As a result, most programmes and projects were intended to have an immediate impact, in response to the demands of artists and the sector in general.

The NC provincial government transformed the arts sector to be more inclusive and to embrace the province's diverse arts, culture and heritage. Emanating from the New Growth Path (NGP:2010), the province adopted the "Mzansi Golden Economy" (MGE). The MGE focus was on, amongst other things, the promotion of cultural events and information centres as well as the public arts programme. In response to this mandate, the province embarked on a consolidation of the Northern Cape Arts and Culture Council (NCACC), the development of a comprehensive database of art practitioners and the establishment of community art centres, Phillipstown Multipurpose Centre, Thabo Moorosi Art Centre in Kuruman and the Mayibuye Multipurpose Centre was established in Kimberley in 2007. The Mayibuye Multipurpose Centre main objective was to provide support and services to art practitioners in the Frances Baard District Municipality (FBDM) and surrounding areas. This centre is home of four academies, namely, music, drama, dance and visual art and craft. The main objective of these academies is to provide for skills development programmes. The province has managed to make a considerable impact in the arts sector through the following achievements over the last twenty-five years:

14.3.1.1 Music and Dance Development

The province initiated the Schools Violin Project in Kimberley which benefited 30 learners. Most of these learners are currently registered with the Kimberley Academy of Music in 2004. In 2005, the Vukani Chorale music festival gave national exposure to Northern Cape Choirs through one of the most popular choral music programmes on the South African Broadcasting Commission (SABC). It has since been replaced by the Old Mutual Eistedford for community choirs and SA Schools Choral Eistedford (SASCE). In 2007, the Diema Indigenous Music and Dance group from Platfontein were nominated to represent South Africa at the International Indigenous Music and Dance Festival in Portsmouth in England.

The province entered into a collaboration agreement with the National Institute of Higher Education (NIHE) for the development of Feasibility studies into the establishment of a Music Academy, Dance Academy and a Provincial Symphony Orchestra in 2008. The province also hosted a Namibian Cultural group as part of an exchange programme in conjunction with the African Cultural Music and Dance Association (ACUMDA) Festival in 2008 and 2017.

14.3.1.2 Visual Arts and Craft

The first ever provincial development, marketing and promotion of crafts industry workshop was hosted in 2005 and the workshop benefitted crafters throughout the whole province. Nine Crafters from the province attended an accredited training in Business and Marketing at the Cape Craft and Design Institute in 2008. The province also co-ordinated the Investing in Culture programme on behalf of the Department of Arts and Culture. The programme benefited in excess of 200 individuals. The first ever Vukani Arts and Craft Exhibition in was hosted in September 2015. The exhibition provided opportunity to local crafters to exhibit their products at the William Humphreys Art Gallery in 2006. The province launched the Kgatlhane Tourism Craft Centre in Griekwastad in 2005. In addition, 28 crafters represented the province at the five main National Arts and Craft Exhibitions and Tradeshow in Durban, Johannesburg, Cape Town and Bloemfontein in 2008. Nineteen crafters were assisted to exhibit at the “SA Beautiful Things” and the “One of a Kind” Exhibitions and 22 Crafters took part in the SA Fashion Week Design Showcase in Johannesburg in 2007.

As part of the exchange programme, one crafter from the province was sent to Ethiopia for three months to do animal sculpt painting in 2006 and 2 crafters represented the province at International Craft Fairs in Zaragoza and China in 2008. Opportunities are also provided to crafters to represent the province nationally and internationally on annual basis.

14.3.1.3 The Northern Cape Writers Festival

The province attracted national and international attention with the launch in 2009 of the inaugural Northern Cape Writers Festival. This annual festival has grown from strength to strength and continues to promote writing, poetry, debate and art within the Province.

14.3.1.4 Infrastructure and Facilities

The province invested in excess of R300 000,00 for the renovation and upgrading of the Warrenton Cultural Resort in 2006. In 2016, all dormitories were rehabilitated and upgraded and new rooms and ablution facilities were installed. In 2007, R1 million was invested at the Northern Cape Theatre for the upgrading of the air conditioner. Furthermore, the Northern Cape Theatre was totally revamped for R25 million with new sound and stage equipment.

The Mayibuye Multipurpose Centre was constructed at a total cost of R45 million in 2007. An excess of R24 million was allocated for the procurement of communication, sound and data infrastructure at the Centre in 2007, R600 000-00 for the procurement of musical instruments and R2.1 million was spent on soundproofing, air conditioning, petitioning of offices, office equipment, worktops and display cabinets in 2008.

14.3.2 Museum and Heritage Services

In 1994 when the Northern Cape Province was formed there was no formal structure for the management of cultural affairs, museum and heritage resources. Certain museums that were managed by the then Cape Provincial Administration had to be absorbed into the province. The management of cultural affairs was located as a directorate within the Department of Education. The province started a process to transform how museums in the province were managed. The existing province-aided museums e.g. McGregor Museum

together with staff and resources were to provide a provincial museum service to maximize expertise and centralize financial controls. This also introduced a change in management structure with a central Provincial Museum Board comprising of representatives of existing Boards from smaller museums as well as community representation. The Department introduced a single transfer to McGregor Museum to fund the smaller museums by way of transfers to their Boards or by way of grants to their controlling authorities (e.g. municipality/ private).

The provincial government, through the McGregor Museum Board, is responsible for the management and maintenance of thirteen museums throughout the province. Of these, nine are located in the Frances Baard district, two in the Pixley ka Seme and one each in ZF Mgcawu and Namaqua. The most frequently visited museums in the province is the Sanatorium Museum, followed by Magersfontein and Victoria West Museum. The number of museum visitors increased from 10 120 to 17 099 between the 2009/10 and 2017/18 financial year. The number of visits to the museum by learners and educators increased over this period, as well as a result of the funding that the museum could source through Wildlife and Environmental Society of South Africa (WESSA) from the Lottery Board. The museum could thus, in many cases subsidize schools from disadvantaged areas to visit the museum and partake in provincial curriculum-based educational outreach programmes.

The most important achievement was the training of six youth in the restoration of Victorian buildings. Rudd House was restored, as well as work done on Dunluce House, another Victorian building in Kimberley owned by the museum. Relating to Heritage Services, the declaration of the Richtersveld as a World Heritage Site in June 2007 is a notable success in the preservation of the heritage of the Province.

Cultural identity and sense of belonging are central fostering social cohesion and to strengthen nation-building. The department also responded to ensure the gradual transformation of the provincial heritage landscape through the implementation of the following projects and programmes:

- A display on the Malay Camp forced removal site was opened in the Chapel Street Museum together with a Malay Camp historic tourism walk with display boards and

a memorial commemorating the forced removal site in the Oppenheimer Gardens, Kimberley

- The Duggan-Cronin Gallery was restored as part of a skills development project wherein five unskilled youths were trained in historic building restoration.
- Oral and documentary research into the history of Kgosi Galeshewe and his resistance to colonial rule
- Unveiling of Abraham Esau Monument in Calvinia
- Research into the Greenpoint forced removal site was completed and a booklet published.
- The declaration of the Richtersveld as a World Heritage Site is a notable success in preservation of our heritage.
- Repatriated remains of Leonard Tume in Frances Baard and John Ntsehelang in JTG
- Repatriated remains of Trooi and Klaas Pienaar in the Kalahari -ZF Mgcawu in 2012
- Repatriated the remains of Ouma /Ga -hais' Van Rooy in Steinkopf
- Erected monument for Colesburg 4
- Erected Monument for Kgosi Toto ,Galeshewe and Jantjie of Langeberg Rebellion in Kuruman
- Erected tombstone for Ouma Magrieta Jantjies in Upington
- Tombstones for Petrusville 5
- Memorial in honour of the Upington 26.

14.3.3 Language Services

The purpose of Language Services in the province is to promote inclusivity, in addition to promoting reading as well as the proper understanding of government documents. Source documents are translated into the three other official languages of the province. The other objective of this service is to promote Multilingualism through specific activities such as translations, language training, interpreting services and literary exhibitions. Training programmes are held annually in sign- and additional languages. Furthermore, in collaboration with library services, book clubs are continuously established and supported throughout the province.

In terms of Language development, the Department has succeeded in establishing the Provincial Language Committee (PLC), whose activities have been consolidated over the last few years. The PLC has developed a clear programme of action with its primary focus being on the promotion of multilingualism in the province. The department also facilitated the establishment of the Provincial Language Forum (PLF) so as to ensure co-ordination of the various programmes and resources in support of language development in the province. The province also increased its programmes and campaigns that are aimed at promoting the use of previously marginalized languages. Among others, the department initiated the following:

- Facilitation of the story telling programme in isiXhosa and Setswana for the benefit of pre-primary learners.
- Ensuring that sign language became recognized as a key feature of our provincial languages.
- Assisting in the development and growth of previously marginalized languages through literature development. To this effect, the Setswana Proverbs and Nama proverbs research were initiated.
- Assisting with the campaign of ensuring that two prominent national radio stations, Lesedi FM and Umhlobo we nene FM, were launched in the province.

The province has also commenced with the finalization of the Provincial Language Policy Framework. This policy will enable the provincial government to have a clear plan in terms of language development in the province. One of the key programmes the province has also been engaging in, is the feasibility into the development of research capacity in the terms of the Nama, San and other indigenous languages. As is the case with other languages which have research capacity, the aim is to ensure that research capacity in support of these languages is developed so as to ensure their growth and sustainability.

14.3.4 Geographic Name Changes (Naming and Renaming)

The main purpose of naming and renaming of existing and new buildings in the province, is to honour the heroes and the heroines of the struggle. In line with Government's programme of effecting name changes at especially local government level, the province has successfully set up Municipal Advisory Committees (MAC) to facilitate this process. To

date, a number of streets, parks and public buildings have undergone name changes. The most recent name change, from Kgalagadi District Municipality to John Taole Gaetsewe District Municipality serves as an excellent example of consultation before effecting name change. The Provincial Geographic Name Change Council (PGNC) has also identified over 30 derogatory names and are in the process of changing these names in consultation with the owners and relevant local authorities.

The Executive Committee (EXCO) of the province took a resolution in 2008 that all government owned buildings should undergo a process of name change. The province has already put the necessary structures and systems in place to ensure that provincial departments are able to respond to this mandate from the EXCO. The province, in conjunction with PGNC, assist municipalities with the Name Change process. Seventy-six (76) naming and renaming processes have been concluded since 2009 of which the following are the most recent:

- IK Nkoane Education House in Kimberley.
- The Mittah Seperepere Convention Centre in Kimberley.
- MO Mothibi Library in Hartswater.
- Phakamile Mabija Road in Kimberley.
- Sol Plaatje Drive (Kimberley - Council put on Hold due to family request)
- Joe Morolong Municipality in Moshaweng.
- John Taolo Gaetsewe in Kuruman.
- Dr Pixley Ka Seme Street in De Aar.
- Mxolisi Dicky Jacobs former Danie Kuys Staduim in Upington
- Robert Gunda Stadion in Upington.
- Jakobus Maasdorp Sportgronde in Upington.
- Moses Links Gemeenskapsaal in Upington.
- Dr Nelson Mandela Drive in Upington.
- Anton Lubowski Road in Upington.
- Rev Aubrey Beukes Street in Upington.
- Upington 26 Avenue in Upington.
- Betty Peters Library in Nababeep.
- Dawid Kruiper Municipality in Upington.

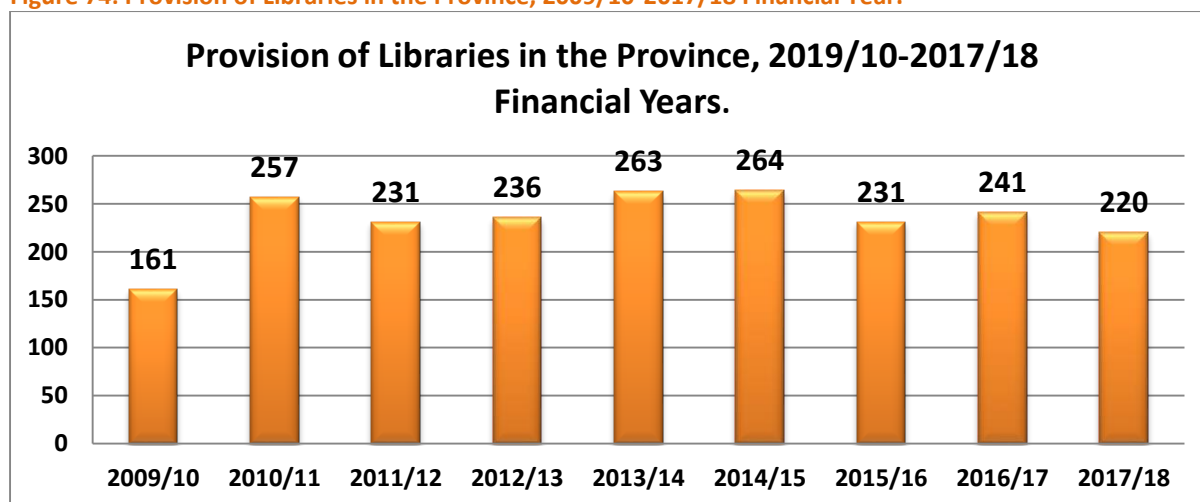
- Harry Surtie Hospital in Upington.
- Ntsikelelo Mbetha building (former Public Works) in Upington.
- Eveline De Bruin (Former Provincial building) in Upington.
- Mervin Erlank Complex (former William Pescod Hostel) in Kimberley.
- Brian Hermanus Complex (Former Ministry of Sport) in Kimberley
- Lahlu Mabilo Complex (Former Mimosa Complex for Social Development Office) in Kimberley.
- Leonard Tume former Department of Public Works Complex in Florianville in Kimberley

The process of name changes continues with support to the Provincial Language Council (PLC) and Provincial Geographic Name Changes Council (PGNC). Supporting the PGNC and municipalities in effecting name changes is paramount to social cohesion.

14.3.5 Library Services

Library Services contribute towards Education through the provision of literature to communities, to rural development through the building of infrastructure and to crime prevention through holiday programmes. Provision of library services (buildings, books and material and support staff) remains at the core of the provincial function. The provision of free public internet access is a very positive milestone, especially for rural communities. Reading promotion programmes are mirrored in every district in support of Education.

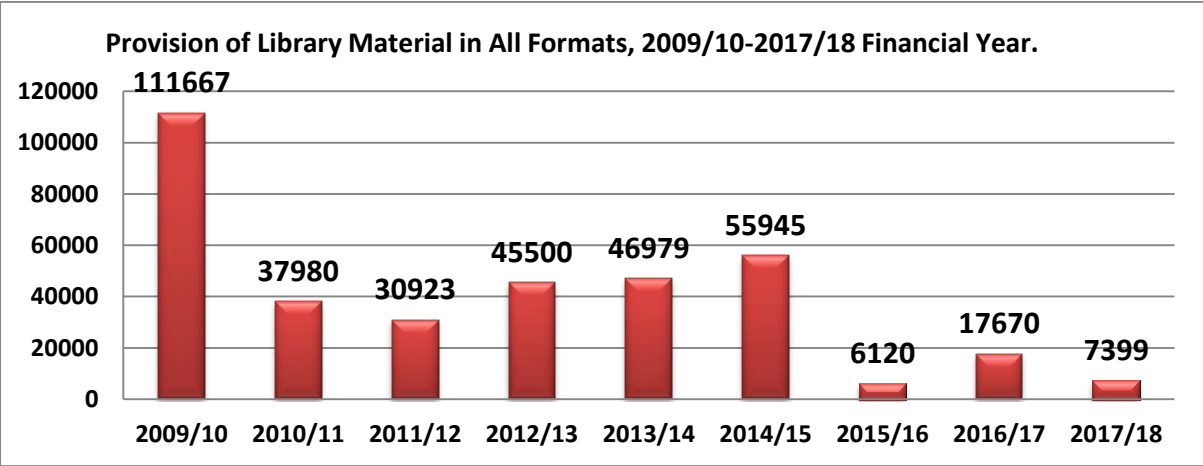
Figure 74: Provision of Libraries in the Province, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.



Source: NCDSAC Annual Report, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year

The provision of libraries increased in the province from 161 to 220 between 2009/10 and 2017/18 financial years. The Department was able to conclude the construction of a number of libraries and finalise the planning of two new community libraries to be constructed in Greenpoint and Niekerkshoop. Access to public libraries, which are shared public spaces in communities, supports social inclusion and community involvement. These institutions can therefore play a critical role in the development of system of lifelong learning and have an immense potential for contributing to the attainment of the national development goal of ensuring that all province's communities are functionally literate. The figure below, shows the provision of library material in all formats from 2009/10-2017/18 financial year.

Figure 75: Provision of Library Material in All Formats, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.



Source: NCDSAC Annual Report, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year

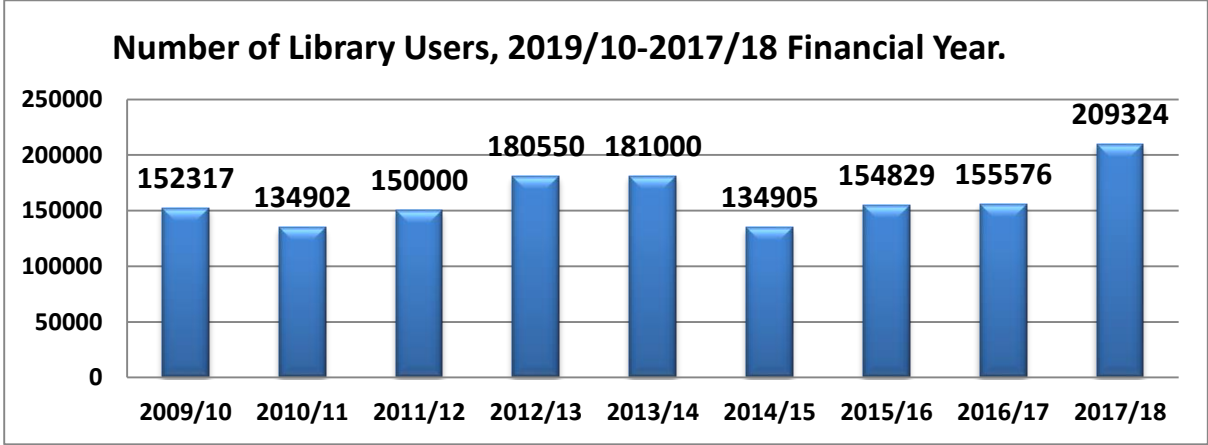
The provision of library material declined significantly from 11 667 in 2009/10, to 7 399 in 2017/18. In 2017/18, the tender for the provision of library materials was only finalised towards the end of the financial year. The procurement of books is a huge challenge which resulted in a negative audit outcome for DSAC over the years. The underlying is multi-faceted, stemming from availability of books from publishers, price fixing, books out of stock, suppliers not registered in the database as well as late delivery of books.

There has been a serious challenge with the SLIMS system to timeously complete library books assets count, as most books were not priced and some had values of less than R1, resulting in hundreds of thousands books not being picked up by the automated system for

library books. The province is also faced with incompetent small suppliers relying on bigger monopoly publishers for supply of books, therefore the province had to streamline its approach by improving on turnaround time for delivery in doing so it opted for a tender to appoint a list of preferred suppliers on a database according to books that will be needed in libraries. The tender was concluded in 2017 and relieved the problem enormously.

The figure below, depicts the number of library users from 2009/10 - 2017/18 financial years.

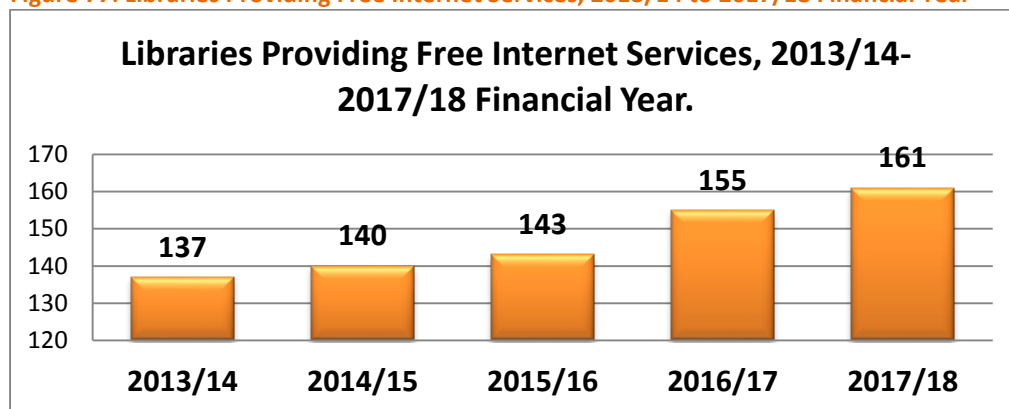
Figure 76: Number of Library of Library Users , 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.



Source: NCDSAC Annual Report, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year

In the MTSF cycle (2014-2019), the province planned to improve on the backlog of providing library infrastructure by building modern brick and mortar structures, coupled with internet access and free Wi-fi. The library users since increased from 152 317 in 2009/10, to 209 324 in the 2017/18 financial year, especially with the construction of dual libraries, which benefitted both school and community library users.

Libraries were constructed around areas which had no previous access like, Witbank, Logageng, Kamassies and Buffelsfontein. The library conditional grant also made allowances for upgrading existing unused community structures and this led to new libraries in Carolusberg, Petrusville and Cassel. The construction two districts libraries in Upington and Kuruman increased the capacity of main study centres attracting distant study students vying for internet access and free Wi-fi to complete research in their studies.

Figure 77: Libraries Providing Free Internet Services, 2013/14 to 2017/18 Financial Year

Source: NCDSAC Annual Report, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year

The number of libraries providing free internet services in the province increased from 137 in 2013/14, to 143 in 2015/16, and further to 161 in 2017/18 financial year.

14.3.6 Archive Services

Archive Services is responsible for ensuring good and clean administration, through management of records enabling accountability by government in the future for past actions. The availability of data provides a body of evidence for credible decision-making in the future. Archives Services remain a rich repository of knowledge for research purposes. Through training of client offices, this service also contributes to clean governance.

The province managed to complete the first phase of the construction of the Provincial Archives Repository in 2012, thereby creating a home for all provincial records and research. The Kgotso Flatela Archives Repository currently houses A20 records that were transferred from Frances Baard district municipality, Sol Plaatje municipality (Council Minutes 1957-1994), Northern Cape Provincial Legislature (Annual Reports of different institutions) and the Master's Office (Estate Records 1957-1997).

14.3.7 Sport and Recreation

The programme provides assistance to provincial sport associations and other relevant bodies to stimulate the development of sport. The programme also: formulate inputs regarding sport policy and promote sport programmes. Stimulate and present capacity

building projects, control and promote as well as develop the provincial sport academy. This programme also develop and contribute towards sport marketing strategies and facilitate the development of facilities with a view to improving the life of the disadvantaged in the province.

At the heart of the National Sport and Recreation Plan developed by the SRSA, is the development and implementation of the three core pillars. These pillars are underpinned by transversal issues and utilizing sport as a tool to achieve national and global priorities. They are, an active nation, a winning nation and an enabling environment. The establishment of Regional academies in the Namakwa and Siyanda districts has been activated, which assist in the development of high performance sport in the districts. This venture ensures and creates access to sport programmes and facilities for athletes in the distant horizons of the province and largely those in the rural areas.

Through the Schools Sport High Performance programmes, a number of athletes had been identified to represent, not only the province, but the Republic of South Africa in their various international codes of Sport. The province has facilitated the construction, upgrading and renovations of five (5) multi-purpose sport and recreation facilities in Jan Kempdorp, Cassel and Port Nolloth, Postmasburg and Griekwastad. The funds were sourced from the Building for Sport and Recreation and the Municipal Infrastructure Grant.

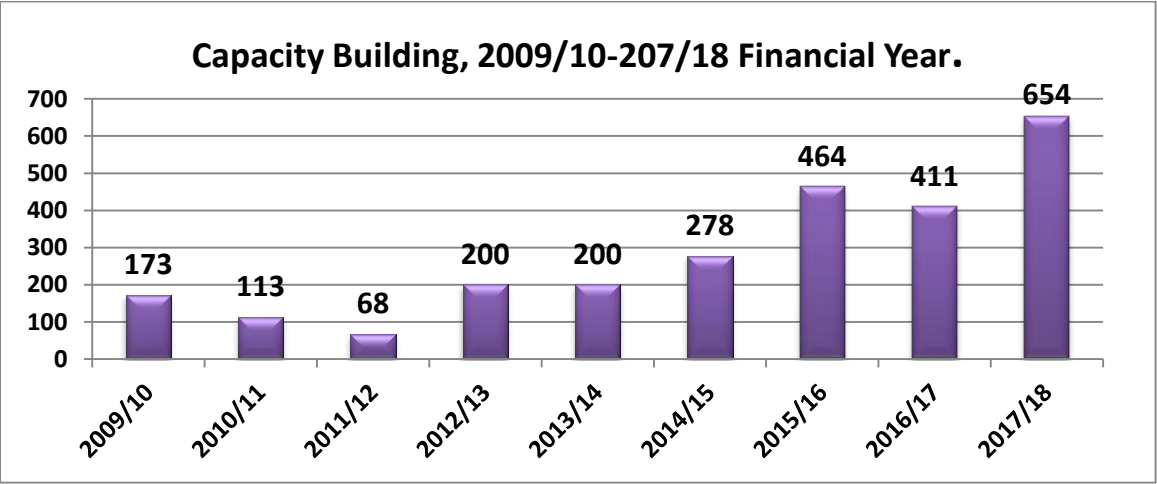
The introduction of the Mass Participation Programme and its growth especially on the number of people participating (180 000) throughout the province with 300 young people employed as Activity Coordinators, Ward Coordinators, District Coordinators and School Sport Assistants. Ninety (90) schools are currently benefiting in the programme and the programme is currently implemented in all 26 municipalities.

14.3.7.1 Sport

The programme provides assistance to provincial sport associations and other relevant bodies to stimulate the development of sport. The Province has 25 Federations affiliated to

the Northern Cape Sport Council. Furthermore, the province assists with formulating inputs regarding sport policies and promote sport programmes.

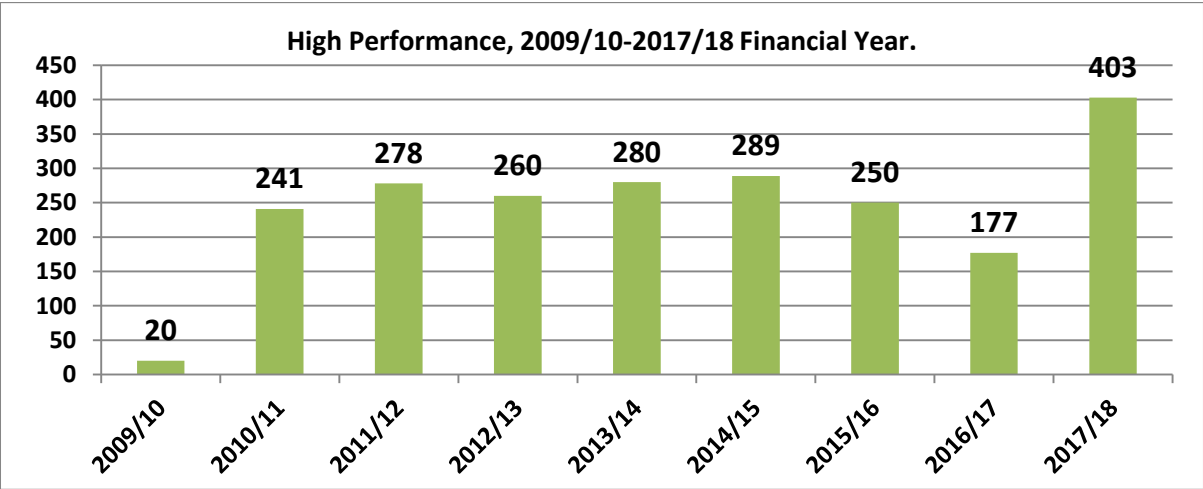
Figure 78: Number of People who benefited from the Capacity Building Programmes.



Source: NCDSAC Annual Report, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year

A critical input towards skills development and job creation, is the province's capacity building programmes. The figure above, illustrates the number of sport administrators, coaches and technical officials that received training from the province. The number of sport administrators, coaches and technical officials that received training increased from 173, to 654 between the 2009/10 and 2017/18 Financial Year. The figure below, illustrates the number of learners that were offered high performance training by the academy.

Figure 79: High Performance , 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.



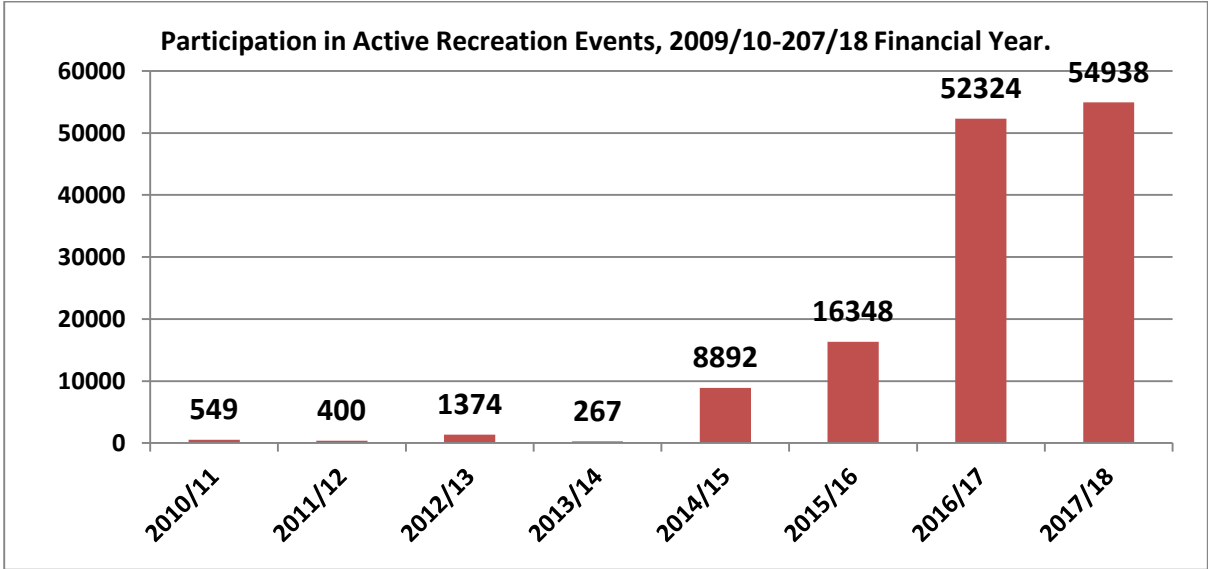
Source: NCDSAC Annual Report, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year

The province also has a responsibility towards supporting the provincial sport academy. The Provincial Sport Academy is responsible for providing High Performance Programmes to provincial athletes that have to participate at national level. The figure above shows the number of learners that were offered high performance training by the academy. The number of provincial athletes that received high performance training in increased from 20 to 403 between the 2009/10 and 2017/18 Financial Year.

14.3.8 Recreation

The main purpose of Recreation is to manage and present specific development programmes and introduce activities to promote and encourage active and healthy lifestyles. The Siyadlala Mass Participation Programme was very successful in this regard and close to 3 000 participants were recorded annually since 2009. Furthermore, the programme also supports social development in providing programmes to Youth at Risk and the Aged. Since 2012, the province has been hosting Youth Camps with the purpose of promoting Social Dialogue between different race and cultural groups. More than 300 Youth across the province is involved in this project.

Figure 80: Participation in Active Recreation Events, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year.



Source: NCDSAC Annual Report, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year

According to the figure above, participation in active recreation events increased 459 to 54 938 between the 2010/11 to 2017/18 financial year. The construction of multi-purpose

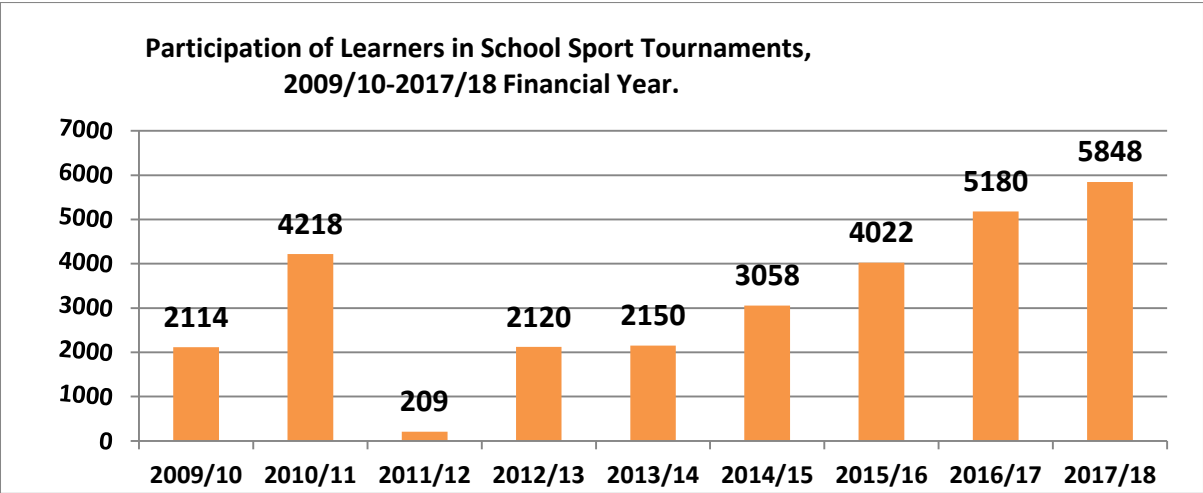
centres in Port Nolloth, Griekwastad, Postmasburg and Jan Kempdorp from adjustment allocations of 2014/15, gave impetus to Rehab programmes like Aerobics and Gymnastics. Most children have now access to these parks and this led to increased usage of new users.

The construction of combi courts by SRSA in Upington, Keimoes, Kenhardt and Kakamas provided much needed infrastructure for Youth games like Baseball, Volleyball and Hockey. Through the Isibindi Centres, the province increased access in secure Centres aimed at people at risk to benefit from Rehab programmes. Through the Department of Correctional services, the province also provided Rehab programmes to prisoners which led to increased participation.

14.3.9 School Sport

The main purpose of this programme is to ensure that all learners have access to sport activities and benefits associated with school sports accrue to all learners. The functioning of this programme was for many years dogged by uncertainty over roles and responsibilities. This has since been resolved, and Sport and Recreation’s role has been defined to provide support to learners that have to participate at provincial and national level. The Provincial Sport Academy assists with providing high performance programmes in this regard. The figure below depicts the number of learners assisted at provincial and national level in school sport tournaments.

Figure 81: Participation of Learners in School Sport Tournaments, 2009/10-2017/18.



Source: NCDSAC Annual Report, 2009/10-2017/18 Financial Year

The number of learners assisted to participate in school sport tournaments increased from 2 114 in 2009/10, to 5 848 in the 2017/18 financial year in the province. The increase of priority sport codes from 6 to 9 years led to inclusion of Volleyball, Baseball and Chess increasing the number of participants. The inclusion of participants from 13 to 15 years led to more grade 7 to 9 to participating in all codes as well. The inclusion of JTGDM from the North West district, and parts of Phokwane Local Municipality (Pampierstad) into the NC also led to more schools into the provinces' enrolment figures. The extension of the scope of the games to include indigenous games like Kgati, Morabaraba, Diketo, Intonga and Jukskei. The games were also extended to include a category for disability participants although the percentage was small it still contributed to a small growth.

14.3.10 FIFA World Cup

Even though the province had not been allocated host city status, the Province did not simply take a defeatist position. It strategically set in motion an array of activities which would ensure that the country FIFA and the World see this province as a contender and a player in the 2010. These included:

- The establishment of a Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) between Mangaung and Sol Plaatje Municipalities.
- The development of a Provincial Integrated Plan for 2010
- The establishment of a Structure to oversee, manage and coordinate provincial initiatives and plans. The structure consists of a political steering committee, a technical steering committee and seven sub-committees.
- Hosting a 2010 Medical Workshop in the Province
- Piloting the Futbol forever programme in the province.
- Playing host to a highly successful COSAFA under-20 tournament.
- Hosting several PSL matches which include teams such as Bloemfontein Celtic, Ajax Cape Town etc.
- Presented the first Kimberley Invitational Cup including 4 top Professional League Teams (PSL).
- Established a partnership with FNB to develop an artificial soccer and hockey pitch in the province.

- Completed the Conceptual plans and designs for the development of a sport complex.

14.3.11 Bill of Responsibilities, Constitutional Values and National Symbols

The United Nations (UN) special resolution on Humans Rights Day in 1974, declared Apartheid a crime and sin against humanity. This led to South Africa isolation by the world community. In achieving freedom in 1994 through a negotiated settlement, the country had to initiate process of healing and reconciliation. The thrust of that programme was initiated to promote social cohesion and nation building. Promoting social cohesion across society through increased interaction across Race and class fostering a social compact contract. The vision (envisage outcome) is to strive for a programme of action of promoting a South Africa where citizens are conscious, proud and prepared to work and preserve its heritage, culture and heraldry.

The South African Constitution is regarded as the world's most revered document in promoting diversity and unity, despite the country's dark past of discrimination and racism. The Constitution guarantees equal rights, a non-racial society and it offers each citizen the comfort and protection to feel secured and inclusive. It provides for a system where the judiciary is the custodian to the Bill of Rights, constitutional Values and National symbols.

Relating to The Bill of Responsibilities, Constitutional Values and National Symbols, 33 young Patriots were placed one per municipality to promote Social Cohesion and Nation Building. Their core work is about promoting National identity, symbols and Patriotism by teaching learners in schools to hoist flags, rendition of national anthem and promotion of national symbols including conducting social dialogues and conversations on racism, identity, youth employment and social compact contract. In the 2017/18 financial year, 400 Bill of Responsibilities booklets, posters and flyers, together with Values in Action manuals were printed and distributed. A total of 189 activities that show engagement with the Bill of Responsibilities were conducted, 3 287 learners and 211 educators, as well as 189 schools participated in Moot Court and other democracy programmes, 80% of schools recite the

preamble of the Constitution at school assemblies, 70% of school are flying the national flag and 80% of schools have booklets and posters (frame) on national symbols of orders in the province.

14.4 Persistent challenges

- The provinces response in providing free internet services in support of the 4th Industrial Revolution is to digitize more library sites. The maintenance of these sites also requires increase in the budget. The province is challenged to increase infrastructure in rural communities and the commensurate safety and security of the services is placing increase burden on the budget.
- The Arts and Cultural Sector, remains in dire straits compounded by dwindling resources, despondency of practitioners, lack of rehearsal space and little opportunities for artists and art stakeholders to access resources such as funding, capacity building programmes based on complex processes and procedures by agencies.
- Lack of adequate funding for maintenance of existing infrastructure and to respond to structural defects remains a concern in the province.
- The heritage sector is under resourced and the important work of preservation, protection and promotion of heritage resources cannot be fully funded while this situation remains unaddressed.
- Attracting participation from all racial groups remains a challenge especially at commemorative day celebrations.
- The Review report notes a decrease in number of traditional dwellings. This decrease poses a serious threat to indigenous architecture. As a province rich in cultural heritage, it remains incumbent upon us to preserve traditional or indigenous architecture for future generations. Important for the province to retain its uniqueness as represented by, amongst others, indigenous architecture linked to other cultural practices. Positioning of culture as an economic driver becomes more important against the backdrop of endemic unemployment in the province

14.5 Looking ahead

- A bigger budget allocation from the provincial fiscus will assist in delivering the necessary services in a very effective way. The vastness and sheer poverty in the province is a definite factor in the delivery of services.
- Funding challenges may be addressed though soliciting funding through agencies such as LOTTO.
- Strategies to be developed to ensure all-inclusive participation on voluntary basis at commemorative events.
- Levels of awareness on cross-cutting issues should be increased. Social Cohesion is a transversal agenda to be addressed by all sectors e.g. spatial development of housing and industrial infrastructure, agricultural development as well as economic opportunity.
- Different cycles between spheres of government (provincial vs local government) must be aligned. Currently there are no specific policies and strategies to deliver on the outcome objective, these must be developed in collaboration with delivery partners and be resourced and planned for per term/quarter as well as measures as per the policy framework.
- Increased participation in Sport and Recreation in the Northern Cape offers opportunities for social cohesion by creating spaces for meeting and engaging as society in general. This area must be focused on for accelerated performance.
- The need to develop programmes to help the youth grow up as responsible citizens through education, skills development and personal growth. Support and promote arts productions with local content.
- The need to promote the literary work of local and African authors. Focused attention of the development of marginalised languages. Support local government with the establishment Arts and Culture Units in municipalities.

Positioning of culture as an economic driver becomes more important against the backdrop of endemic unemployment in the province. Examples of these are the promotion of the National Liberation Heritage Routes and provincial projects such as;

- Sol Plaatje,
- Mayibuye Uprising of 1952,
- Langeberg Rebellion and
- the Uprising of 1960.

A large, three-dimensional gold-colored number '25' with a metallic sheen and shadows, positioned at the top left of the page.

THE FOURTH INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION AND INFORMATION SOCIETY DEVELOPMENT

CHAPTER 15

15.1 Problem statement

The vast and arid Northern Cape is by far the largest province, slightly bigger than Germany and taking up nearly a third of South Africa's land area. Historic under-investment in basic infrastructure such as roads, transportation, water provision, sanitation, telecommunications and more especially the combination of Information Technology, has negatively affected the growth potential of this province in a world where Information technology is now ubiquitous in the lives of people across the globe.

Information and Communication Technology (ICT) is not meeting the needs of the province, in terms of bringing about improved, effective and efficient service delivery. The province, despite occupying more than 30% of the land mass of South Africa, receives about 2% of the available fiscus, added to this is also the reduction in budgets over past Medium Term Expenditure Frameworks (MTEF) affecting many authorities, programmes and units.

In the Fourth Industrial Revolution, developments in previously disjointed fields such as artificial intelligence and machine learning, robotics, nanotechnology, 3D printing, genetics and biotechnology are all building on and amplifying one another. Smart systems, such as homes, factories, farms, grids or entire cities, can now help tackle problems ranging from supply chain management to climate change. Concurrent to this technological revolution are a set of broader socioeconomic, geopolitical and demographic developments, with the equivalent impact as to the technological factors.

The Fourth Industrial Revolution is interacting with other socio-economic and demographic factors to create a perfect storm of business model change in all industries, resulting in major disruptions to labour markets. New categories of jobs will emerge, partly or wholly displacing others. The skill sets required in both the old and new occupations, will change in most industries, and transform and how and where people work in artificial intelligence (AI), robotics, the Internet-of-Things (IoT), 3D printing, drones and autonomous vehicles (AVs) amongst others.

15.2 The journey since 1994

15.2.1 Overview

During the new era of change, in 1995, Minister of Posts and Telecommunications, Mr. Jay Naidoo prepared the South Africa Information Technology Industry Strategy Project (SIATIS). An important goal in conceptualizing the project was to bridge the global development gap between the international IT community and the South African IT industry, and develop an IT Industry in South Africa that is robust and growing in a sustainable manner. Subsequently, the Department of Communications (DoC) embarked on a comprehensive full policy review process of all policy documents post 1994 which culminated in an integrated National ICT policy for South Africa.

ICT policy architecture, post-apartheid, focused on addressing the imbalances and consisted of a well-formulated draft policy and discussion paper led process, which then informed the legal context for promulgation of the various Acts. However, the effectiveness of policy design especially in the last 2 decades shows evidence of an evolutionary policy development and not necessarily that of strategic ICT policy design to promote and catalyse economic growth in South Africa.

15.2.2 Legislation and Policies

- The Telecommunications Act No. 103 of 1996.
- The Telecommunications Amendment Act No.64 of 2001.
- The Electronic Communications and Transaction Act 25 of 2002.
- The Electronic Communications Act of 2005.
- The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) Amendment Bill.
- Information Society and Development (ISAD) Framework.

15.3 Progress for the period 1994 – 2019

15.3.1 Provincial Information Society Strategy Development: INSPIRE

15.3.1.1 Background

The role of information society development is critical to both economic and social development in South Africa. Our country cannot afford to be marginalized and the ability of the country to effectively integrate itself into the global economy depends on how well it develops its capacity to handle, absorb and utilise information technology. Improved access to information also has an impact on the awareness, education, and social and cultural development of the public. In South Africa, there is a need for technology development and for well-defined regional information society development strategies, capacity building and human resource development.

For the development of an information society, the then President, Thabo Mbeki announced in his State of the Nation Address of February 2001, the establishment of the Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development (PNC on ISAD). The establishment of the PNC on ISAD gave effect to the President's commitment to promoting the use of ICT to increase the pace of service delivery, economic growth and development in the country.

The PNC on ISAD had a leading and supervisory role in the information society development in South Africa and signed off on INSPIRE, under the Cooperation Agreement between South Africa and Finland, in 2001. The Overall objective of the INSPIRE Programme was:

- To accelerate the process of developing an integrated, comprehensive and feasible Inclusive Provincial Information Society Strategy in the provinces of Limpopo and Northern Cape.

15.3.1.2 Progress since 1994

The Northern Cape Information Society Strategy was approved by the NC Provincial EXCO in April 2016. The conceptualisation of the NCISS was delivered under the INSPIRE Programme. The aim being the developed the Northern Cape Information Society Strategy (NCISS), which serves as the strategic guide for organizational management of digital content and setting of priorities, for Government, Academia, Business and Civil Society to work together toward the common goal on transitioning the Province into the digital future.

The following are the ten (10) approved goals of the NCISS:

- Goal 1: Sustaining the Northern Cape Information Society.
- Goal 2: A Provincial Culture of Innovation.
- Goal 3: Growing Skills for the NCIS.
- Goal 4: Stimulate Participation in the NCIS.
- Goal 5: Provincial Broadband Infrastructure.
- Goal 6: Connected People of the Northern Cape Province.
- Goal 7: Increase the Range of e-Applications.
- Goal 8: Diversify the Provincial Economy.
- Goal 9: Remove Poverty.
- Goal 10: Institutional arrangement for implementation.

The interventions of INSPIRE in the Province included:

15.3.1.3 e-Infrastructure

- A prototype platform to improve service delivery in education was completed by the Finnish Telco, Elisa Corporation.
- Meraka with resource support from the DST and Kumba implemented a wireless mesh network in the John Taolo Gaetsewe (JTG) District, in January 2012.

15.3.1.4 e-SMME:

- ICT SMMEs training Open Source Software (OSS) skills, including Chisimba and Linux training.

15.3.1.5 e-Government:

- The Office of Premier (OTP) developed an Open Source Software (OSS) based, Directory of Services and hosted an OSS Focus Week. The Focus week included the distribution of free OSS CD, demonstrations of OSS applications, training in OSS and a conference on OSS.
- Three OSS kiosks called “Breadbins” were purchased by INSPIRE. One implemented at Moromogolo FET; one to Upington FET and a portable kiosk at the OTP.

15.3.1.6 Local Content Development

- The Department of Sport, Arts and Culture through the McGregor Museum digitised the Doug and Kronan photographic records, using the heritage portal developed by INSPIRE Limpopo.
- INSPIRE installed 10 desktop PCs in the Strydengurg library as part of the e-libraries roll-out.
- The NC Department of Education tested various OSS solutions, including the e-documentation product, Alfresco.

15.3.1.7 e-Education

- 225 educators and education officials were trained in, Basic ICT Skills; ICT Leadership for Education Managers; ICT Skills for Schools; and Help Desk / Troubleshooting.
- An Interactive Classroom was installed at National Institute for Higher Education (NIHE), Galeshewe Campus and at Moromogolo FET College.

15.3.1.8 mLab

- The establishment of mLab NC for mobile phones application development skills. The Lab, co-funded by the Department of Science and Technology and the DEDaT, is formalised through a Memorandum of Understanding between the DEDaT, Sol Plaatje Municipality, Northern Cape Community Education and Training College (NCCETC) and mLab Southern Africa (SA). The mLab is hosted at the SMME Village, Galeshewe.
- Geekulcha – an initiative of mLab SA, has been instrumental in assisting to build an NC app developer ecosystem (www.ncdev.co.za). With Geekulcha, Hackathons have

been hosted in Kimberley, Upington, Khatu, De Aar and Vac-work programs, during the winter school holidays, in Nababeep, Reitfontein and Prieska.

In addition to the above, various collaborative events have been hosted, including the Department of Public Service and Administration open-government partnerships and Knowledge Management Unit; the Department of Science and Technology, Space Applications group; the DTPS ICT SMME Support Strategy and their e-Skills Institute.

SMMEs, scholars, unemployed youth have benefitted from these events and created a pipeline of talent for potential recruitment into the mLab NC. Geekulcha is firmly established at Sol Plaatje University as a Geekulcha Student Society and incorporated an Engineers Without Borders Chapter.

A breakdown on the number of participants is detailed in the below table:

Table 66: INSPIRE collaborative events in the NC

Event	Purpose	Partners	Beneficiaries
Hackathons	Digital skills development	KE&I / Geekulcha / NCDev	Kimberley SPU: 91 participants Moremoglo: 89 De Aar: 81 Open Data Days (Kimberley & Khatu): 88 Security Summit: 62 SKA Hack: 67 Developer meetups: 42
Vac-Work	Digital Skills Development	KE&I / Geekulcha / NCDev	Nababeep: 50 Mier: 53 Prieska: 90
Security Summit (SS)	Promotion of cyber-security skills using Hackathon format	DEDaT / IT Web / SPU GKSS / Geekulcha	SS 2017 – 60 participants. SS 2018 – 42 participants. SS 2019 – scheduled for 24-25 May
mLab NC (Launching QT 1 2019/20)	Mobile Apps Development	DEDaT / SPM / NCCETC / mLab SA	Mobile Tech for SMMEs: 20

15.3.2 Provincial Information Communications and Technology

15.3.2.1 Background

The information technology environment in the province changed dramatically after 1999, with Departments opting to establish their own IT units. This has placed strain on the IT unit in the Office of the Premier regarding coordination of departmental IT activities to ensure uniformity and standardisation across Northern Cape Provincial Government (NCPG).

A key challenge that has emerged with the decentralization of IT, is the high staff turnover at Office of the Premier and lack of budget to ensure business continuity w.r.t. all the transversal IT functions performed by the IT unit. The alignment and implementation of transversal decisions to ensure that NCPG is compliant with the Public Service Regulations and MPAT presents serious challenges. Added to this is also the management of SITA contracts, Telkom contracts, departmental traffic shaping and support to 5 500 provincial email users with outdated server infrastructure, software and systems.

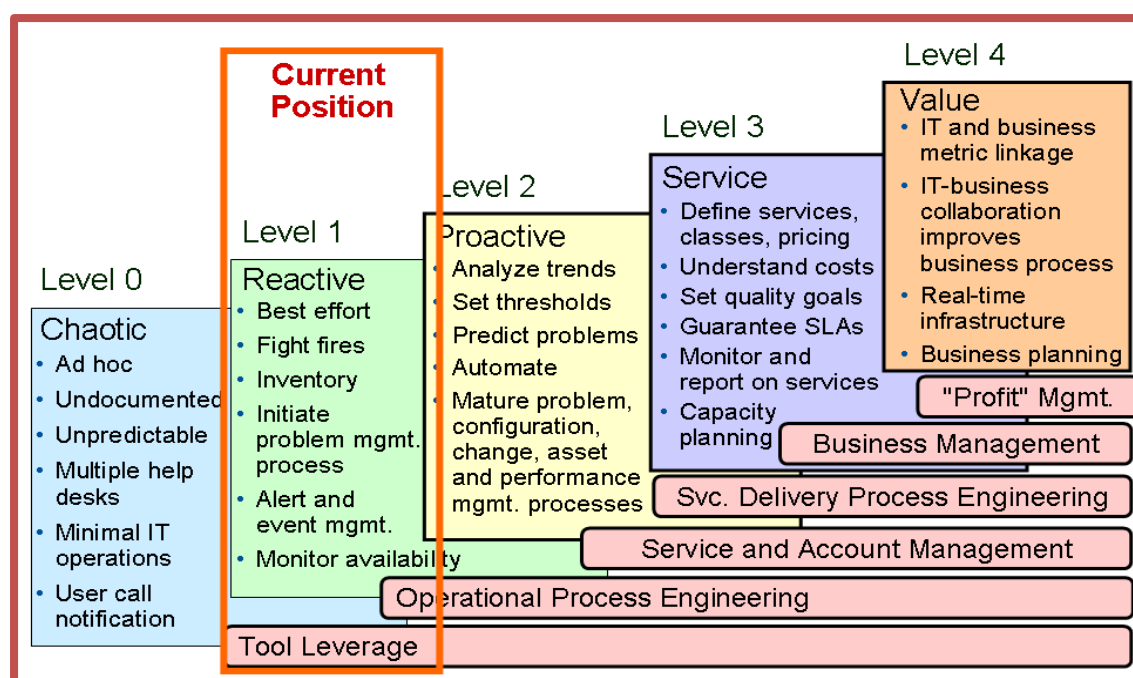
The IT unit in the Office of the Premier is at the centre of government systems for the NCPG, playing a pivotal policy role in establishing norms and standards and ensuring that service delivery mechanisms, integrated systems and access, institutional development and governance initiatives are responsive to the needs of all provincial departments. Critical aspects of the provincial IT landscape are as follows:

- The non-implementation of the Provincial IT Plan and NCISS;
- Old and obsolete:
 - Network and server infrastructure: the need to migrate to a provincial Virtual Private Network (VPN) as a first basic step.
 - Network Operating System: need to migrate to current technologies and architecture.
 - e-Mail (GroupWise) software, need to be upgraded.
- Critical lack of data protection against cyber-attacks, malware, and spam;
- Current firewalls are outdated with expired licenses and are non-functional.
- Absence of automated registry systems and non-compliance with the related legislation and law (PAIA and POPI);

- Outdated, expired and non- functional network traffic management systems causing network traffic not to be managed (official and unofficial traffic);
- Absence of network management system: the proper status of the networks cannot be checked, monitored: network problems cannot be identified and resolved effectively and efficiently;
- Critical IT governance skills gap (COBIT, ITIL and TOGAF) exists across departments to improve MPAT scores as well as bring about efficiencies in departments using IT as an enabler;
- Province wide, poor IT reports from the Auditor General;
- Most departments do not have a Business Continuity Plan (BCP) and Disaster Recovery Plan (DRP).

The foregoing analysis indicates that the level of ICT service and process maturity in the NCPG is at a level 1 maturity stage. The diagram below illustrates the different levels in management service and process maturity in IT.

Figure 82: Levels of management service and process maturity in IT



From the diagram above, it is clear that province is just one level from a state of chaos. Being categorised at a level 1 means we are reactive by fighting fires, providing services at a best effort level, with some problem management process initiated, alert and event

management instituted and availability monitoring taking place. The situational analysis above thus indicates that the under-investment in the ICT domain over a significant period of time has resulted in:

- An environment in which IT is struggling to provide a basic level of service to an ever growing client base who are becoming more reliant on ICT;
- IT is not being able to adequately maintain core infrastructure, systems and toolsets;
- User perceptions of ICT services being very negative;
- Poor Governance and Risk Management;
- A low level of IT Management Service and Process Maturity.
- As well as, the absence of a “provincial tier four data centre” to drive a cloud strategy for the NCPG.

15.3.2.2 Progress since 1994

The OTP IT unit provides an effective IT management and administrative support service, to the provincial government through continuous refinement of strategy and structure to ensure compliance with applicable legislation (Public Service Act, SITA Act) and appropriate best practices. Added to this, OTP chairs the Provincial Government Information Technology Council (PGITOC) with the aim in:

- Providing a platform for all Departments with IT units to interact on a monthly basis on issues related to information technology;
- Providing a platform for SITA to interact with provincial departments on new technologies, services and status of ongoing projects;
- Providing an opportunity to implement the IT House of Values which focusses, amongst other, the following:
 - Achieving economies of scale - leveraging the collective buying power of NCPG to negotiate cheaper pricing for goods and services, especially those that are transversal in nature;
 - Interoperability – ensuring that all information systems or databases acquired has the ability to interact seamlessly with each other;
 - Elimination of duplication and reducing fruitless and wasteful expenditure;
 - Improving IT security.

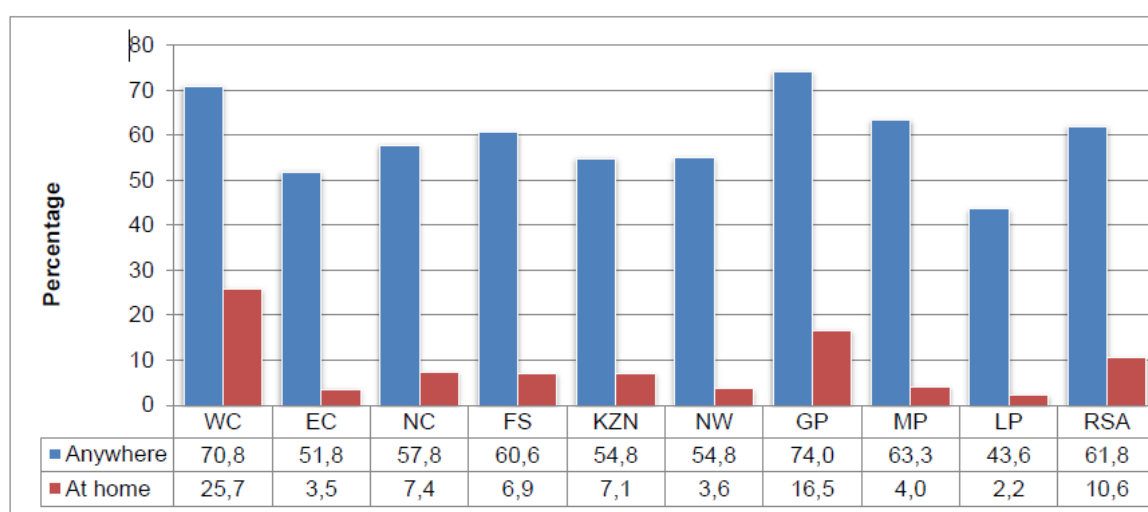
- Furthermore, a Provincial Shared Service Centre proposal was developed and adopted by the HOD Forum for implementation albeit serious budget constraints.
- A Provincial Virtual Private Network (VPN) proposal was accepted, and supported by the HOD Forum in 2017. A Firewall policy in consultation with all the stakeholders was developed and adopted for the implementation of this provincial VPN. The VPN implementation was completed in March 2019.
- A Technology Refresh, Business Continuity and a Shared Provincial Disaster Recovery Plan proposal is approved by the HOD Forum and is currently being implemented. This is a 3-year project and budget has been secured.

15.3.3 Provincial Broadband Infrastructure Development

15.3.3.1 Background

The Northern Cape government has developed a Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Plan (NCPGDP) to stimulate economic growth and social development in the Province. ICT services are too low to satisfy the needs of government, enterprises, households and citizens. Only 7,4% of households in the province had at least one member that had access to or used the internet either at home, work place of study or Internet cafes. Access to the Internet using all available means is at 57,8% in the province.

Figure 83: Percentage of households with access to the Internet at home, or for which at least one member has access to, or used the Internet by province, 2017



Source: Statistics SA, General Household Survey, 2017

A broadband e-Infrastructure strategy for Northern Cape Province is a fundamental prerequisite of the Northern Cape Information Society Strategy (NCISS), born out of the Provinces ambition to accelerate sustainable social development and economic growth for the people of the Province. Furthermore, broadband connectivity as researched by the World Bank Group, across 27 developed countries and 66 developing countries, found that a 1-percentage point increase in the number of Internet users correlated with a boost in exports of 4.3 percentage points. Accordingly, an econometrics analysis of 120 countries by the World Bank Group found, for every 10-percentage point increase in the penetration of broadband services, there is an increase in economic growth of 1.3 percentage points.

Lack of development of always-on, high speed and quality bandwidth in the access networks (last mile) required by business, public institutions and citizens to enable the positive multiplier effects associated with broadband penetration, and described above, has impacted negatively on the provinces development and global competitiveness.

15.3.3.2 Progress since 1994

No official communication was received from DTPS, regarding implementation of SA Connect. The revised targets proposed for Phase 1 facilities, in the eight district municipalities, states that all these sites would have been connected by March 2018. The Northern Cape Provincial Broadband Steering Committee has since been established. This Steering Committee comprises representation of:

- DEDaT (Chair);
- Office of the Premier
- Provincial Treasury;
- Provincial Education department;
- Provincial Health Department;
- Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs;
- South African Local Government Association; and
- South African Post Office.

A Terms of Reference for the Steering Committee informed by the DTPS was developed and presented to the members. In addition, a Broadband District Task Team was established with representation from the Pixley Ka Seme District, Local Municipalities of:

- Emthanjeni;
- Ubuntu;
- Kareeberg;
- Siyathemba;
- Siyancuma;
- Thembelihle;
- Renosterberg; and
- Umsobomvu.

Two hundred and twenty-five (225) sites have been verified for Phase 1 implementation in the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality. The province in partnership with the National Department of Communications and the S.A. Connect project will be connecting 225 sites over the next 3 years. Site identification and verification has been completed and thus far, 8 sites have been connected.

The DTPS, appointed Broadband Infraco (BBI) and the State IT Agency (SITA), to implement the National Broadband Policy. To date, BBI has completed the backhaul connectivity of twenty (20) sites, with an additional thirteen (13) expected to be completed at the end of 2018/19. These sites are then handed over to SITA to make live. SITA has activated eight (8) sites, with an additional twelve (12) sites expected to be live at the end of 2018/19.

(a) John Taolo Gaetsewe Wireless Mesh Network (WMN)

The John Taolo Gaetsewe (JTG) District is also the beneficiary of two broadband wireless interventions. The first, sponsored by the Department of Science and Technology, through a European Union grant to the CSIR's Meraka Institute, planned to create a wireless mesh network (WMN) across Mothibistad, Maruping, Logobate, Klaarkom, Cassel, and Heuningvlei. Kumba Iron Ore contributed significantly to supporting the creation of the network, with a grant of R5 million. Meraka's implementation partner, Tedaka, has since connected 52 schools, 2 district education offices and 1 clinic for phase 1 of the project. The

backhaul to the Internet for these sites is through the South African National Research Network (SANReN).

The JTG Wireless Mesh Network (WMN) is currently non-operational as the subscription fees to sustain and maintain the network, have not materialised from the Northern Cape Department of Education (NCDOE). Options to reactivate the network in discussions with NCDOE have been inconclusive and the DEDaT is now exploring the possibility of establishing a community telecommunications network operator/s.

(b) Broadband Connectivity Proof-of-Concept

The Department of Economic Development and Tourism's (DEDaT), Knowledge Economy and Innovation (KE&I) sub-programme, have established broadband connectivity and WiFi at mLab NC (SMME Village, Galeshewe), Tourism Visitor Centre (Big Hole) and KIDJA, under a proof-of-concept (POC), with FibreCo Telecommunications Company, in September 2018. Broadband connectivity and WiFi, enabling access for the sites and guests has merited the DEDaT now prepare a formal request for bids to provide broadband connectivity services to the sites. In addition, the number of sites has been increased to include: Francis Baard SMME Trust; SMME Trust Coleville; Northern Cape Tourism Authority and Kimberley Skatepark.

(c) Universal Services Access Agency of South Africa, Joe Morolong Local Municipality

The Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA) awarded a contract to iBurst to provide broadband wireless connectivity in the Joe Morolong Local Municipality (JMLM). iBurst was selected as the service provider by USAASA and have connected 10 schools and 27 clinics and allowed all citizens within 500 meters of the schools, clinics and the 28 primary towers to have free WiFi, up to 50Mb per day. iBurst, have since seeded the project to Galela Telecoms. USAASA has appointed a service provider to conduct an impact evaluation on the project. Pan Africa TMT, is USAASA's appointed service provider and have initiated processes with the JMLM, to make the necessary arrangements for the fieldwork and research plan to be approved.

(d) Square Kilometer Array

The Square Kilometer Array (SKA) connected 300 homes in rural communities to broadband connectivity, following a partnership agreement between SKA South Africa and Vox Telecom. In addition, SKA SA has spent more than R2.5 million on laptops, training and connectivity, with 366 computers donated to schools and the library in the towns surrounding the SKA site.

15.4 Persistent challenges

15.4.1 Provincial Information Society Strategy Development: INSPIRE

- Political support for longer-term planning horizons (10 – 20 years).
- The development of a skilled workforce relevant to the context of the opportunities emerging based on use of the tools of the Information Society –ICTs.
- Enhanced linkages between educational and R&D institutions for endogenous growth and development of local competitive advantages.
- An information infrastructure that links all citizens of the Northern Cape.
- Access to the South African and global markets for Northern Cape based industries; and
- Access for citizens to tap into the wealth of information and knowledge on the World Wide Web.

15.4.2 Provincial Information Communications and Technology

A key challenge that has emerged with the decentralization of IT is:

- The high attrition rate of staff at provincial departments,
- Lack of budget to ensure business continuity w.r.t. all the transversal IT functions performed by the IT unit.
- The alignment and implementation of transversal decisions to ensure that NCPG is compliant with the Public Service Regulations and MPAT presents serious challenges.

- The management of SITA contracts, Telkom contracts, departmental traffic shaping and support to 5,500 provincial email users with outdated server infrastructure and software.
- Compounding year on year constraints is the number one challenge inhibiting the developed of the ICT agenda of the province.

15.4.3 Provincial Broadband Infrastructure Development

The Northern Cape government needs an advanced broadband network to realize its NCPGDP, Northern Cape Information Society Strategy (NCISS), Provincial IT Plan and the National Development Plan amongst other. ICT as an enabler to bring about effective and efficient service delivery must be realised. A provincial broadband network is an information highway, as well as a basic platform of ICT. With indispensable ICT services, based on broadband network, more abundant services can be expanded.

The telecommunication operators fail to provide affordable ICT services for government, enterprises, households and citizens as recovery of infrastructure development investments is uneconomical. Government and related agencies rely entirely on communication services by operators, with limited access, inadequate capacity, high costs, lack of bandwidth and services that cannot meet the information needs of government and associated agencies amongst other. As a result, the province is very sparsely populated, making broadband infrastructure deployment and implementation limited. Without a funding model that would attract investment from telecommunication operators (from an economic perspective), these operators end up providing services mainly to the big cities and towns. The operators, rather than roll-out the infrastructure, which is extremely costly, opt to pay fines instead and or utilise end-of-life technology that is incapable to stimulate growth.

15.5 Looking ahead

15.5.1 Provincial Information Society Strategy Development: INSPIRE

- Revise the NCISS in line with the NDP, PGDP and the 4th Industrial Revolution priority sectors and areas and more especially, e-Government and Digitisation of government services.
- Implementation of the revised NCISS

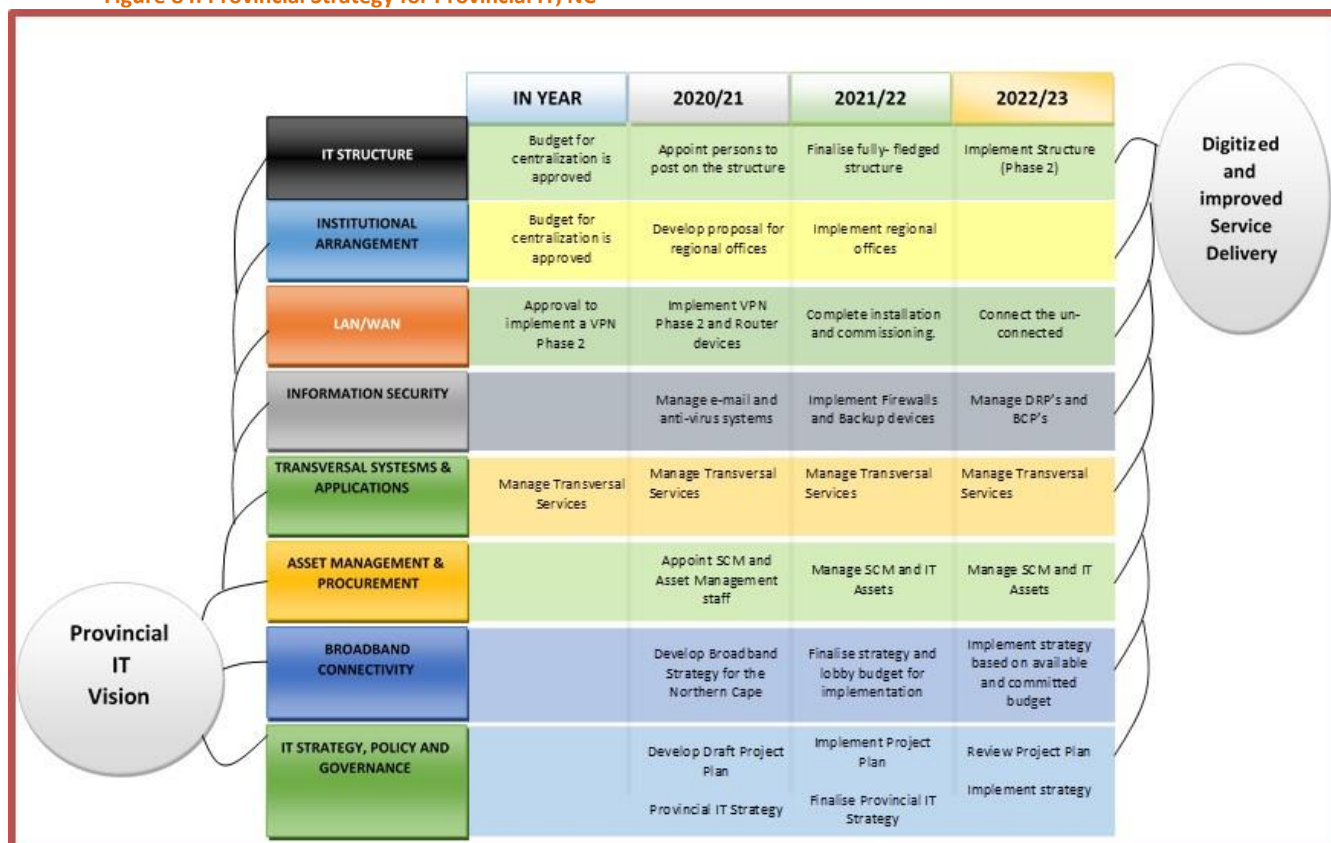
15.5.2 Provincial Information Communications and Technology

To drive IT forward within the Northern Cape, there is a need to:

- Re-think ICT and the development thereof: Shared Services thinking;
- For senior management commitment from project inception through project completion;
- Designate an IT leader to integrate IT initiatives across all IT disciplines;
- Develop an overall IT strategy and plan rather than the implementation of separate departmental projects;
- The consolidation of infrastructure (server, storage and network) and virtualization technologies be considered in an effort to reduce costs;
- Renegotiation of all ICT related contracts;
- Focus on skills development and capacity building in line with the 4th Industrial Revolution.
- Recognise innovations role transforming service delivery.

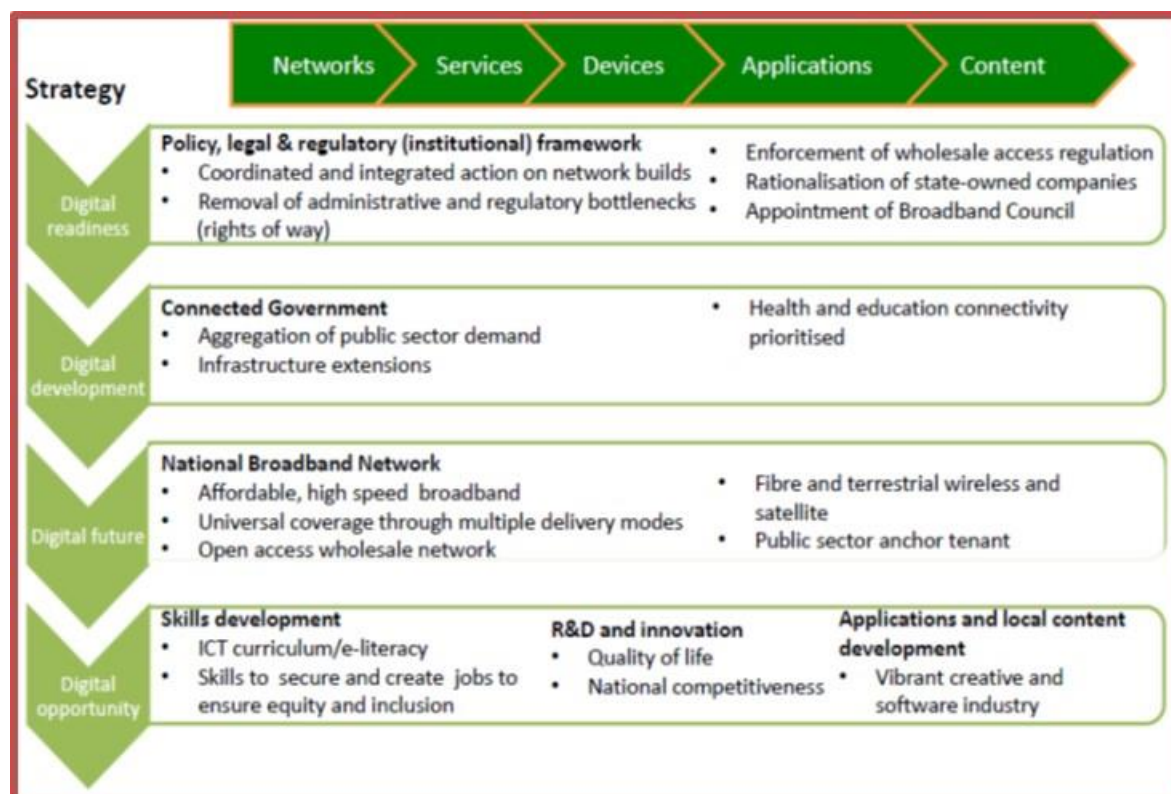
The following strategy outlines the vision for Provincial IT and Implementation Plans for the period 2019 to 2023:

Figure 84: Provincial Strategy for Provincial IT, NC



15.5.3 Provincial Broadband Infrastructure Development

Figure 85: Provincial Broadband Value Chain



- Broad Band Value Chain implemented as per the figure above.
- Adoption of different strategies to address regional disparities, with greater emphasis on capacity development to ensure success. Efforts will focus on improving the capacity of provincial and local government, and surrounding communities, to support the development of their skills base.
- Introducing Innovation thinking to boost the capacities and opportunities of disadvantaged individuals to engage in innovation activities, including research and entrepreneurship. To support the development of new products and services that address the challenges of those facing social disadvantage.
- Preparing Sol Plaatje University students to participate in transferring skills into local communities and SMMEs, to foster digital growth, and enhance more participation from educational facilities to incorporate training outreach as a factor in scholar assessment.

Based on the National Development Plan (NDP) priorities, the Department of Health and Education is therefore a priority.



Chapter 16

YOUTH DEVELOPMENT



CHAPTER 16

16.1 Problem statement

Issues of youth development have been part and parcel of the transformation agenda of the African National Congress (ANC) government since the dawn of new democracy in 1994. Among the apex priorities of the new democratic state that was established in 1994, were to set up institutions and to develop and implement policies that would facilitate youth development. It was always understood that this was a weighty task, considering that this area had been neglected for decades.

Further to the raised expectations, young people who were led by political youth formations and civil society organisations had their own proposals and aspirations, expressed through formal and informal representations. From the onset, a developmental approach to youth empowerment was adopted, making the youth agents of their own advancement, not just passive recipients of government services. (DPME, 20 Year Review, Background Paper, Youth).

16.2 The journey since 1994

16.2.1 Overview

Firstly, youth development issues found expression in the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP), which by and large put emphasis on education and social development, given the dire social conditions that arrested youth development during apartheid. Secondly, many government policies and programmes that followed the RDP took this historical challenge into consideration by elaborating on activities that impact on the lives of young people.

The National Development Plan (2030) asserts that young people should be considered as beneficiaries and as agents of change and not as passive recipients of government services. The shaping of young people as active and productive citizens is therefore critical for the production of a 'demographic dividend', which is referred to as a rise in the rate of

economic growth due to a rising share of working age people in a population. It further asserts that the National Development Plan is a plan for the country to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030 through uniting South Africans, unleashing the energies of its citizens, growing an inclusive economy, building capabilities, enhancing the capability of the state and leaders working together to solve complex problems.

16.2.2 Legislation and Policies

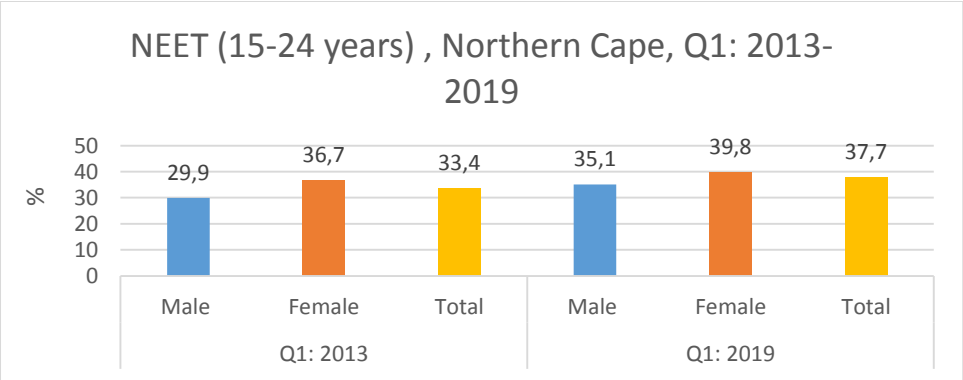
- The National Youth Commission Act of 1996.
- White Paper for Social Welfare (1997).
- Skills Development Act (SDA) (1998) and Skills Development Levies Act (1999).
- National Youth Development Policy Framework (2002-2007).

16.3 Progress for the period 1994 – 2019

16.3.1 Northern Cape Youth Profile

There has been much concern around youth that are not in the mainstream, or otherwise referred to as those who are not in employment, education or training (NEET).

Figure 86: NC Percentage of youth (15-24) who are not employment, education or training 2013-2019

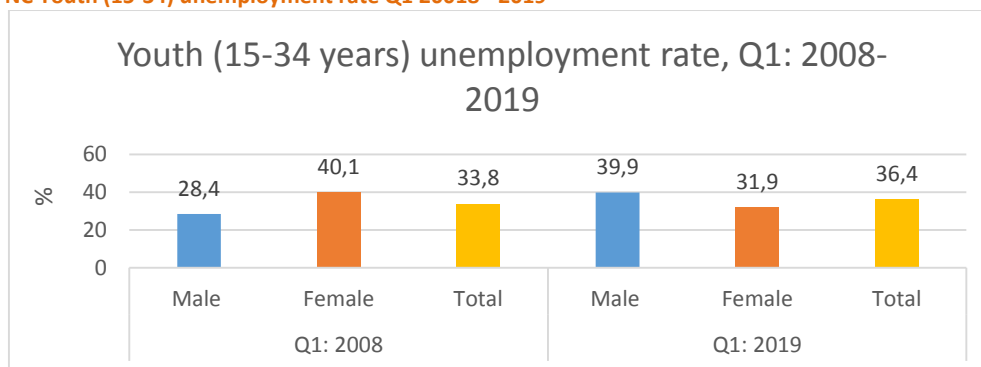


Source: Statistic SA QLFS

In the first quarter of 2013, the Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS), (Statistics South Africa, 2013a), estimated that 33,4% of the 10,4 million young people aged 15 to 24 years were not in employment, education or training. This category of people is vulnerable, as

they are not occupied with work or education, and the longer they remain in this category, the more disengaged they will be from the formal economy. The Q1 2019 QLFS shows that to date, the NEET rate is at 37,7%, with the higher proportion being females.

Figure 87: NC Youth (15-34) unemployment rate Q1 2008 - 2019



Source: Statistic SA QLFS

The unemployment rate of youth for quarter 1 of 2019 is at 36,4% of the total population of the province. Failure to address the challenges faced by young people poses a serious threat to the political stability of our province.

16.3.2 Co-ordination of Youth Development in the NC Province

In 2013, the Executive Council resolved (Resolution: No. 080/2013 (08) that the Department of Social Development (DSD) coordinate youth development in the Province. This came against the backdrop that despite the many successes in terms of youth development, there were a number of challenges that continued to mar youth development in the province, namely;

- Lack of clear mandates and the implications of this for delivering on youth development.
- Duplication of responsibilities and focus areas which is closely linked to a lack of clear mandates.
- Fragmentation: This is the problem of integration without co-ordination, which can lead to messy and time-wasting duplication of efforts and can end up reproducing the problems of fragmentation at a higher level.

- Lack of coherent co-ordination of existing programmes and the implications of this for accountability, monitoring, evaluation and assessment of impact of implemented programmes.
- No clear indicators related to youth development in Government's Programme of Action.
- Poor planning with regards to Youth Interventions.
- In response of the aforementioned impeding factors at provincial level, the Executive Council concluded that although there are many initiatives aimed at developing our young people, these initiatives are fragmented and therefore do not address the principles of the Youth Development Policy in terms of programmes and services that are integrated and seek to address the holistic development of our young people.

Due to the above challenges, the Executive Council resolved in terms of Executive Council (Resolution: No. 080/2013 (08) to establish the very first Northern Cape Inter-Departmental Youth Development Forum to ensure joint planning and execution of youth development services and programmes, to ensure a more focused approach towards youth developmental challenges. In 2015, a study was concluded by the Department of Social Development (DSD) on behalf of the Provincial Administration in terms of the status of young people in the province. The Report (Youth of the Northern Cape - A profile of the youth and government's response) made nine (9) recommendations which the Executive Council endorsed (Executive Council Resolution 063/2015(11)). The following resolutions were endorsed by Provincial Administration:

A review of Government's current youth programmes

- The purpose of reviewing current youth programmes was to ascertain the type and nature of the interventions, as well as their scale and reach. This is essential in order to identify the gaps and misalignments in these programmes and propose a strategy for addressing them.

The inclusion of youth development indicators in the Annual Performance Plans of all Government Departments

- The purpose of this was to enable all Departments to report on the following generic indicators:
 - Youth Employment Initiatives;
 - Youth Learnerships, Internships, Bursaries and Skills Development Initiatives;
 - Youth Enterprise Development Initiatives; and
 - Youth Social Cohesion Initiatives.

The inclusion of ancillary indicators in the Government Programme of Action and all Departments to report to the Government Programme of Action through the Office of the Premier

- This will enable for the creation of a central repository of information on youth development.

The centralisation of all Bursaries across Government Departments in the Office of the Premier (Premier's Education Trust Fund) and the establishment of a placement office in the Office of the Premiers to link beneficiaries of this bursary opportunity to workplace exposure.

- These will enable the Provincial Administration to have a targeted approach to skills development and to link bursary opportunities to the economic growth sectors linked to the Provincial Human Resource Development Strategy.
- **The centralisation of learnerships and internships across Government Departments in the Office of the Premier (Skills Unit).**
 - These will enable the Provincial Administration to have a targeted approach to skills development to ensure adequate work exposure linked to the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy.
- **The establishment of a Youth Directorate in the Office of the Premier**
 - These will enable the Office of the Premier to improve the coordination of services and programmes to ensure synergy and to facilitate integration of service aimed at young people.
- **Preferential Procurement - Dedicated set asides for youth owned enterprises**
 - To increase access to markets, the Provincial Administration should set aside 10 services / products to be procured exclusively from youth owned enterprises; this will increase the contribution of youth-owned and managed enterprises to the GDP of the Province and reduce the levels of poverty and

unemployment amongst young people. This is in keeping with the spirit of the Youth Enterprise Development Strategy.

- **The development of a Provincial Youth Development Strategy 2015 - 2020 based on the National Youth Development Policy 2015 - 2020**
 - This Strategy will guide all Government Departments, Civil Society and Private Sector in terms of youth development and their role and contribution towards the realisation of a holistic, integrated and developmental youth agenda.
- **A five-year Youth Research Agenda**
 - This research Agenda will enable Government to determine the efficacy of its Programmes and the impact of these young programmes on young people, as well as the perception of young people about these programmes.

The DSD has to date, established 25 Youth Service Centre across the province (Zwelintlanga Fatman Mgcawu 4, Namakwa 3, John Taolo Gaetsewe 6, Pixley ka Seme 5 and Frances Baard 7) to provide for a range of youth development services and programmes in terms of social cohesion and basic life skills interventions.

The table below outlines the number of beneficiaries in terms of the two key youth development interventions and the budgetary allocation.

Table 67: Number youth benefiting from youth development programmes from 2009- 2018/19

Type of interventions	Number of young people benefitting	Number of young people participating in social cohesion programmes	Budgetary allocation
Oct-09	-	3 528	-
Nov-10	-	3 330	-
Dec-11	69	14 014	1 665 000
2012/13	620	17 921	2 164 900
2013/14	372	23 339	3 664 900
2014/15	549	28 071	3 966 028
2015/16	408	19 939	3 300 478
2016/17	518	38 229	4 179 000
2017/18	489	40 421	4 046 000
2018/19	527	33 543	4 564 000
Total	3552	181 914	27 550 306

Source: DSD Annual Reports

NB: The budgetary allocation does not include the Goods and Service budget of both Provincial as well as District Offices.

16.4 Persistent challenges

- Lack of coordination of youth programmes across the Province, implementation of fragmented youth development programmes, no dedicated budget and staffing for youth development persists.
- The above has resulted in the inability to accurately report on youth development programmes and opportunities created in the province.
- Non finalisation of the development of the Northern Cape Integrated Youth Development Strategy and the review of all Government youth programmes to ensure integration across government.
- What is clear is that if there is no strategic intervention aimed at addressing challenges of youth unemployment, consequently intergenerational poverty is possible in the absence of an Integrated Youth Development Strategy.

16.5 Looking ahead

Development of Integrated Youth Development Strategy that will among other:

- To centrally co-ordinate youth focused programmes across all sectors of government and industry in order to align resource allocation and ensure integration.
- To define a multi-sectoral framework within which youth development programmes can be implemented in an integrated manner, thereby maximising outcomes.
- To provide a partnership and stakeholder engagement framework and set of mechanisms, enabling government, business and civil society organisations to work together.
- To facilitate programmes aimed at job creation and economic security for young people.
- To initiate catalytic programmes designed to benefit youth from disadvantaged backgrounds (primarily youth from rural areas, youth with disabilities, and young women).
- To centrally co-ordinate youth focused programmes across all sectors of government and industry in order to align resource allocation.
- To provide a monitoring and evaluation framework which will enable coordinated nationwide tracking of youth development programmes.



Chapter 17

GENDER



CHAPTER 17

17.1 Problem Statement

While little progress has been made on a number gender equality fronts, there has at the same time been a consistent and growing unease with a range of matters regarding the institutionalisation of the women's agenda for societal transformation and the inalienable realisation of women's rights. These concerns have come from within government, as well as from a range of civil society organisations. Significantly these concerns were flagged on in the National Policy Framework for Gender Equality and Women's Empowerment.

The policy noted that while South Africa had adopted a sophisticated rights-based legislation with explicit reference to gender equality "an important challenge remains in making these rights accessible to all women by the provision of information and the development of the knowledge and skills that women require to avail themselves of the mechanisms inherent in the legal remedies" (pg. v) South Africa's CEDAW Report (2008) noted that progress on achieving gender equality has been hampered by "the lack of monitoring and enforcement and the need for this to happen within an organised and well-coordinated framework" (pg. 43).

The physical integrity of women is not adequately protected in South Africa. Despite concerted government action, violence against women persists. South African law makes provision for protection of victims of domestic violence, and tasks the police with providing this protection. The law also gives the police authority to arrest perpetrators, even without a warrant. Offenders face prison sentences of up to five years. The legislation is rarely applied in practice because of deeply rooted societal norms, a lack of resources, and the attitudes of doctors, police and judges. The government has financed shelters for women who are victims of assault, and has organised training for police working in this area.

The core to women's inequality is the patriarchal social ideology that places them in a subordinate position in relation to men. If the Northern Cape Government seeks to ensure the attainment of Gender Equality, then patriarchal practices and tendencies have to be

rooted out. An important practical manifestation of the patriarchal social ideology, is women's limited access to economic empowerment. One of the reasons for the limited access to economic empowerment is patriarchal systems still entrapped in Government officials including women's lack of equal access to development i.e education and skills. Therefore, any strategy needs to give disproportionate attention to these two aspects. Gender programmes are often not properly institutionalized in terms of location, level of authority, influence, accountability, integration, lack of enforcement mechanisms, sanctions and penalties for non-compliance couples with limited understanding on what gender mainstreaming is and implementation knowledge.

17.2 The journey since 1994

17.2.1 Overview

Since 1994, South Africa has made significant progress in putting in place a legislative and policy framework for advancing gender equality and women's empowerment. Through the Constitution and a range of other statutory provisions, South Africa has sought both to protect and promote the rights of women and girls. The statutory and policy architecture for gender equality in the country is comprehensive and multi-dimensional, with individual laws and policies that protect the rights of women and girls.

Amongst other statutory provisions, the following constitutional and legislative frameworks include key elements designed to protect the rights of women, promote gender equality and facilitate women's empowerment: Constitution of South Africa (1996), Promotion of Equality and Prevention of unfair discrimination Act (2000), Employment Equity Act (1998), Electoral Act (1998), Municipal Systems Act (2000), Basic Conditions of Employment Act (1997), Domestic Violence Act (1998), Communal land Rights Act (2004), Sexual Offences Act (2007), among others.

At the strategic policy level, South Africa's National Policy Framework for Women's Empowerment and Gender Equality (2000) established a clear vision and framework to guide the processes of developing laws, policies, procedures and practices which ensure

equal rights and opportunities for women and men in all spheres, levels and structures of government, workplace, community and the family. The National Policy Framework provides the basis for the Public Service to adopt a Gender Management System – a network of structures, mechanisms and processes – that has enabled the mainstreaming of gender across government. The Eight Principle Plan for Heads of Departments provides a mandate to see that gender equality becomes a goal in all aspects of government departments.

In order for the National Policy Framework to be effectively implemented, it needed to be aligned and integrated with the provisions of the South African Constitution and South Africa's international obligations, as well as with key pieces of legislation that incorporated gender equality dimensions. The National Gender Machinery (PGM), as outlined in the National Policy Framework, was intended as “an integrated package” of structures located at various levels of state, civil society and within the statutory bodies, in particular the Commission for Gender Equality and the Human Rights Commission.

17.2.2 Legislation and Policies

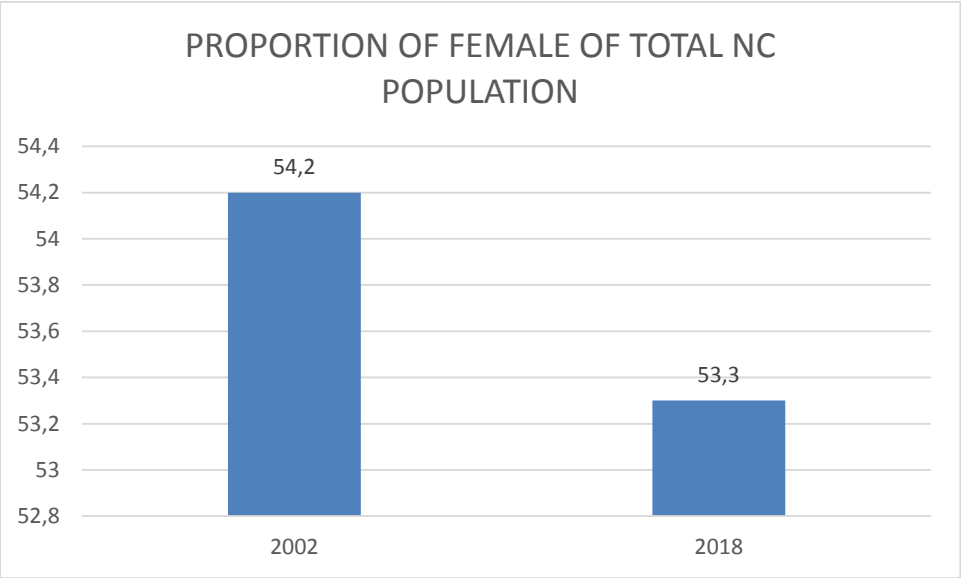
- Convention on the elimination of all forms of discrimination Against Women and Children (CEDAW)
- Beijing Platforms of Action (1995)
- Sustainable development Goals (SDG's)
- SADC Declaration
- Maputo Protocol
- African Union Agenda 2063
- African Union Heads of States Solemn Declaration on Gender Equality in Africa 2004
- Rights of Women in Africa (AU Women's Protocol) 2004
- Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996
- South Africa's National Policy Framework for Women's Empowerment of Gender Equality
- Women empowerment and Gender Equality Bill

- Strategic Framework for Gender Equality within the Public Service (2006-2015)
Strategy framework and empowerment for women

17.3 Progress for the period 1994 to 2019

The journey travelled for women’s empowerment and gender equality in South Africa since 1994 has been a promising, but difficult one. However, it is evident that when one compares the time before 1994, where women had little choice about the kind of lives they wanted to live, huge strides have been made in realising the rights of women post-democracy.

Figure 88: Proportion of female of total NC Population



Source: Mid-year population estimates (StatsSA) 2018

The figure above shows that women constitute 53,3% of the total Provincial Population (1 162 109) as per the Midyear population estimates (StatsSA) 2018. Female unemployment as per the QLFS of 2019 Q 1 indicates 20,5% of females aged 15-64 years being unemployed. This is a marginal decrease of 3,9% from 2008. According to the status of Women in the SA Economy, Aug 2015, women have not advanced as rapidly in terms of socio-economic empowerment and gender equality, and they remain hardest hit by inequality, poverty and unemployment, while they are often anchors in their families.

There are now processes, anchored through national, aimed at ensuring that gender responsive planning and budget take effect. This will assist in ameliorating the cries on the

lack of gender responsive budgets. Departmental and gender machinery mechanisms are in place and functional. However, they need to be strengthened in order to deal with a comprehensive establishment of database on progress or otherwise (women empowerment). However, we cannot report the same about municipalities, COGHSTA must assist municipalities to establish gender units and appointment gender focal persons.

The Mme Re ka Thusa is a proper government mechanism to ensure economic empowerment for women, however, more institutional and reporting mechanism need to be streamlined in the trust. Over the last 15 years, 200 205 work opportunities were created with 95 216 women being employed through Extended public Works Programmes. Another 127 056 jobs were created from 2012/13 to 2018/19 of which 93 753 were women (73%) through Community Work Programmes.

17.3.1 Northern Cape Provincial Co-ordinating Body (OSW)

Progressively, the Office on Status of Women was established on the 01 May 1997, following the commitment of the South African Government to the Beijing Platform for Action (BPFA, 1995) to establish institutional mechanisms for women's empowerment and gender equality and according to South Africa's National Framework for Women's Empowerment and Gender Equality.

The Office on the Status of Women coordinates, facilitates and provides strategic support and direction to the Provincial departments regarding gender mainstreaming and gender equality in their day to day programmes and projects. Functions of the Unit are to:

- To ensure that departments reflect gender considerations in their business plans and routinely report on them
- To review all policies, projects and programmes for their gender implications
- To ensure that departments provide and use gender disaggregated data in their work
- To establish mechanisms to link and liaise with civil society
- To co-ordinate gender training and education of all staff within departments so as to ensure that gender is integrated into all aspects of the work

17.3.2 Strengthening of the Provincial Gender Machinery

A comprehensive institutional structure, constituting the Provincial Gender Machinery (PGM) was established following the guidance of the Gender Policy Framework guiding the roles and functions of various structures and agencies involved in achieving gender equality. This institutional framework gave direction to the development of a gendered programme of action to collectively influence policy and practice at all levels of the state and society.

OSW as the apex of the Provincial Machinery is a coordinating structure. It is the responsibility of this office to establish an effective Gender Management System (GMS) that will ensure accelerated delivery of a quality Provincial gender programme. At the operational level, the main responsibility for ensuring the effective implementation of the Provincial Gender Framework, as contained in the National Gender Policy rest with individual government departments at provincial level.

A survey conducted by OSW in 2018, shows that the majority of GFP's are not properly located and they are not at a decision making level as per National Policy on Gender Equality and Women Empowerment

- A total of 58% (7) out of 12 departments have established gender units, mostly headed at Assistant and Deputy Director Level. All Gender Units are sub-directorates and there is no uniformity in staffing and technical expertise. For this reason, this does not translate into better mainstreaming of gender in departments.
- Location of the gender units and focal points is still not in the Office of the DG/HOD, as provided for by the National Policy Framework on the Empowerment of Women and Gender Equality. Only two (2) Provincial departments have Gender Units located in the Office of the HOD.
- A total of 66,6% of departments do not have Gender dedicated budget.
- A total of 88% of department don't have flexi time policies, all departments do not have child care facilities only one department (Treasury) have mechanisms in place to support Employees with children who require care. All departments do not have Care givers for women with disabilities only Treasury have. All departments do not

have travel policies except for Office of the Premier. Only nine (9) departments have sexual harassment policies.

17.3.3 Gender Mainstreaming in the Public Service

Gender mainstreaming was adopted as a major strategy for promoting gender equality at the fourth world conference of women in 1995. The Beijing Platform for Action reaffirmed the need for all organisations and government to ensure that gender equality is promoted in all areas of social economic development, including education, health, domestic violence, armed conflict, the economy, decision –making and human rights.

Measures to create such enabling environment for gender mainstreaming within state institutions, entails the creation of the necessary internal policies, legislative and administrative frameworks that address the need for gender equality. The NGPF is an important framework that addresses this issue clearly. However, other measures, such as recruitment procedures, HR management processes, budget processes, planning, processes, gender awareness training, complaints handling and disciplinary processes, and other similar internal processes are crucial to ensuring that an environment conducive to gender equality is created and sustained within institutions.

The NGPF stipulates that government should create positions of GFP's, to be placed inside the office of departmental accounting officers. Such GFP's are to be appointed at the level of director or above, and should be responsible for driving departmental gender-mainstreaming programmes and activities. Appointment at the level will not only afford the person in this position access to senior level decision –making structures in the department, but also enable them to have the necessary administration and policy-making authority to drive the processes of gender mainstreaming inside their departments.

17.3.3.1 Gender Barometer

The Office on the Status of Women used the Gender Barometer, a tool that was designed by the CGE as an instrument to collect detailed and relevant information relating to all aspects of gender mainstreaming programmes and activities of provincial departments. The

information is used to evaluate the progress made or achieved, as well as to identify critical substantial factors undermining the implementation of gender-related policies and legislative frameworks in South Africa.

17.3.3.2 Organisational Culture

The National Policy Framework for Women's Empowerment and Gender Equality is one of the key instruments underpinning the need for state institutions to create a conducive environment for appropriate internal policies (i.e. Human Resources (HR) management systems, Information management systems) to promote an organisational culture that underpins equality between men and women.

17.3.3.3 Budgeting

The Beijing Platform for Action makes provision for states to make available necessary financial and budgetary resources to promote gender equality and the empowerment of women. This Platform also reaffirms the need for clear political commitment to ensuring the availability of human and financial resources for the empowerment of women. It goes further to state that funding has to be identified and mobilised from all sources to be used for promoting gender equality. Therefore, a gender perspective becomes a critical tool in ensuring that the allocation of budgetary and financial resources is geared towards advancing the needs of men and women equally, and also towards the empowerment of women.

17.3.3.4 Capacity Building

The NGPF places a great deal of importance on the issue of training and skills development, emphasising the need for state institutions to have the necessary institutional capacity to drive gender-mainstreaming processes. In particular, the framework identifies a set of skills such as gender analysis, gender budgeting, strategic planning and management, particularly among officials responsible for gender mainstreaming as necessary to enhance the institutional capacity of state institutions to promote and drive gender-mainstreaming processes. For instance, the Framework document states that an effective coordination framework for gender mainstreaming as well as Gender Management Systems (GMSs) rely

on skilled personnel. The NGPF also emphasise training as a central factor in advancing gender equality as it helps with the development of specific gender skills such as gender – based analysis.

The office on the Status of Women partnered with the National Department of International Relations and Cooperation conducted a workshop to empower Gender Focal Persons and civil society on a day Capacity Building Workshop. The purpose of the workshop was to train Gender Focal persons on the Regional (SADC), Continental (Africa) and International (Whole World) instruments on Women Empowerment and Gender Equality.

17.4 Persistent Challenges

- The Non-availability of disaggregated data and the lack of Departments and Municipalities to mainstream gender has been a major challenge over the years.
- Planning regimes and processes within departments are not refined and have not reached a level of maturity where planning and performance data can be disaggregated.
- Data collection mechanisms/systems are not advanced to the level of disaggregating information and reports,
- Budgeting and planning are not gender specific.
- Planning for target groups are not adequately mainstreamed into all departmental programmes/activities.
- There is a great need to bridge the economic gap between male and female headed households (patriarchy still an issue).
- A number of reports consistently point to the following as the fundamental cause of the perpetuation of inequality and discrimination of the target/vulnerable groups post-apartheid:(CGE Report):
- A lack of capacity and knowledge of public servants, both at strategic and implementation levels for the translation of policy to implementation.
- The architecture and infrastructure that informs planning at an institutional level is either lacking or woefully inadequate for gender mainstreaming, this requires deconstruction, restructuring and re-engineering to ensure that gender

mainstreaming is an integral part of strategic planning and budgeting from the start rather than as an after-thought or add-on

- A lack of a well-coordinated, synergized and clear set of strategic interventions across the three spheres of Government, the private sector, and across civil society. Consequently, there is a paucity of sector plans that are responsive to the needs of women.
- In cases where plans are in place, these are sporadic, assume that women, children and people with disabilities are homogenous groups, are isolated and not systematically integrated, with responsive budgets, into a seamless sector plan that responds comprehensively to issues that affect women, children and people with disabilities.
- The effective implementation of policies at a grass-root level remains a huge challenge. In this regard, there is insufficient research on the impact of policy, legislation and programmes.
- It has been clear that there is fragmentation in the level, location and composition of focal points and collaboration with the research unit as well as consultation with the sectors has indicated this very clearly.
- Transformation is not radical; women are not properly capacitated.
- No adherence to SADC 50/50 protocol and vigorous implementation of the gender frameworks.
- For 2018 women constitute 53,3% of the population but they still bear the brunt of poverty, unemployment and abuse.

17.5 Looking Ahead

- Recommend the review of the Mme Re Ka Thusa Trust into a fully-fledged Schedule 3 Public Entity to focus on women economic empowerment and skills development. This will assist in terms of accountability and reporting.
- Development of the Provincial Sanitary Dignity Towel Policy Framework needs to be fast-tracked.
- Development of the Provincial Gender Based Violence Strategy to be finalised.

- There is a need to review and strengthen the provincial gender machinery-give them some authority.
- A Gender Equality Strategic Framework to be implemented as a matter of urgency i.e. location and levels of gender focal points within departments corrected.
- Political and administrative leadership required regarding the issues of gender mainstreaming into all departments by, inter alia:
- Outlining gender, children and disability priorities for each department with timeframes and hold departments accountable.
- Development of gender, indicators that will be integrated into the government-wide M&E for performance monitoring and departmental reporting on a quarterly and annual basis.
- Develop Provincial Gender Action Plan.
- Performance Agreements of Senior Managers should reflect performance indicators on gender, inclusion & reporting (compliance and enforcement).
- Domesticate the International instruments: determine priorities, Develop Responsive budgets, mainstreaming and monitoring toolkit and compile reports.
- Interface with other sectors (business and civil society) to support the priorities regarding HR matters, service delivery and universal access issues).
- Establish and/or strengthen effective provincial machinery, institutions and procedures, at a high level of Government, and with adequate resources, commitment and authority to:
- Advise on the impact on women of all government policies;
- Monitor the situation of women comprehensively;
- Help formulate new policies and effectively carry out strategies and measures to eliminate discrimination.

Bibliography

-
- African National Congress. (1994). A National Health Plan for South Africa. Johannesburg.
- African National Congress. (1994). Reconstruction and Development Programme: A Policy Framework. Johannesburg.
- Bradshaw, D., Nannan, N., & Laubscher, R. (2007). South African National burden of disease study 2000. *Estimates of provincial mortality*. Cape Town: Medical research Council.
- Day, C., & Gray, A. (n.d.). Health and related indicators: Health Personnel in Paderath A, Baron P editors. *South African Health review*.
- Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development. (2012/13). DALRRD: Annual Performance Report 2012/2013. Kimberley.
- Department of Economic Development and Tourism. (2015). DEDAT Strategic Plan for the fiscal years 2015-2020. Kimberley.
- Department of Economic Development and Tourism. (2017). OC6 Mid-Term review 2014 - 2016. Kimberley.
- Department of Economic Development and Tourism. (2018). DEDAT: Annual Report for the year ended 31 March 2018. Kimberley.
- Department of Economic Development and Tourism. (2019). DEDAT: Annual Performance Plan 2019/2020. Kimberley.
- Department of Energy. (2018, December 31). Independent Power Producers Procurement Programme: An overview. Pretoria.
- Department of Energy. (2019). IPP Projects. <https://www.ipp-projects.co.za/>. Pretoria.
- Department of Environment and Nature Conservation. (2018). DENC Annual Report 2017/18. Kimberley.
- Department of Environmental Affairs. (2011, October 12). National Climate Change Response White Paper. Pretoria.
- Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. (2005). South Africa country study 2005: Situational assessment undertaken to inform South Africa's National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP). Kimberley.
- Department of Health. (1997). White Paper for the Transformation of the Health System in South Africa. Pretoria: Government Publishers.

- Department of Health. (2002). A District Hospital Service Package for South Africa: A set of norms and standards. Pretoria.
- Department of Health. (2003). *Guidelines for District Health Planning and Reporting, 2003*. Retrieved from http://www.healthlink.org.za/uploads/files/district_planning.pdf
- Department of Health. (2004). DoH: Strategic Priorities for the National Health System 2004-2009. Pretoria.
- Department of Health. (2007 - 2012). DoH: Annual Reports 2007/8, 2008/9, 2009/10, 2010/11, 2011/12. Kimberley.
- Department of Health. (2009). DoH: Strategic Plan 2009/10 - 2011/12. Pretoria.
- Department of Health. (2010). Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement (NSDA) 2010-2014. Pretoria.
- Department of Health. (2018). DoH: Annual Report 2017/18. Kimberley.
- Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. (1996, December 10). Constitution of the Republic of South Africa. Pretoria, South Africa.
- Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. (2017/18). Implementation of Criminal Law - Annual report 2017/18. Pretoria.
- Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation. (2009). DPME: Towards a 15 year Review 1994 - 2009. Pretoria.
- Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation. (2012). DPME: Mid term Report 2012. Pretoria.
- Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation. (2014). DPME: 20-Year Review 1994 - 2014 - Background Paper : Rural Transformation. Pretoria.
- Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation. (2014). DPME: 20-year Review, SA Background Paper, Safety and Security 1994 - 2014. Pretoria.
- Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation. (2016). DPME: Development Indicators. Pretoria.
- Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation. (2019). DPME: 25-Year-Review presentation. Pretoria.
- Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. (2018, March 31). DRDLR: Annual Statistical Report for Selected Service Delivery Programmes. Pretoria.
- Devereux, S. and Wailder, J. (2017). *Why does malnutrition persist in South Africa despite social grants*.

- Doherty, J., Kraus, R., & Herbst, K. (1996). *Health Facilities- South African Health Review* 1996.
- Hall, R. (2009). *Another Countryside? Policy Options for Land and Agrarian Reform in South Africa*. Bellville.
- Harrison, D. (2010). *An Overview of Health and Health care in South Africa 1994 - 2010. Priorities, Progress and Prospects for New Gains, 2010*.
- Health Systems Trust. (1996). *South African Health review. 1996* (<http://www.hst.org.za/publications/South%20African%20Health%20Reviews/sahr96.pdf#search=South%20African%20health%20review%201996>).
- Johnson, L. F., Dorrington, R., & Molla, H. (2017). Progress towards the 2020 targets for HIV diagnosis and antiretroviral treatment in South Africa. (<https://doi.org/10.4102/sajhivmed.v18i1.694>). *S. Afri. Med.*
- Jurjus, A. (2015). *Health care in a democratic South Africa* (https://www.syndicateofhospitals.org.lb/content/uploads/SyndicateMagazinePdfs/8205_2-17eng.pdf). *Human & Health* N 30 - Winter 2015.
- McIntyre, D., & van den Heever, A. (2007). *Mandatory health insurance. South African health review: 2007*. Durban, South Africa: Health Systems Trust.
- McIntyre, D., Bloom, G., Doherty, J., & Brijlal. (1005). *Health Expenditure and Finance in South Africa*. Durban: Health Systems Trust and World Bank.
- National Department of Health. (2014). *Handbook for District Clinical Specialist Teams*. Pretoria, South Africa.
- National Planning Commission, The Presidency. (2011). *Diagnostic overview*. Pretoria.
- National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa. (2008). *NPA: Report on the feasibility and location of a thuthuzela care centres for Gauteng, Limpopo, Free State, Northern Cape and Mpumalanga*. Pretoria.
- Northern Cape Provincial Administration. (2004). *NC: Provincial Growth and Development Strategy 2004-2014*. Kimberley.
- Northern Cape Provincial Administration. (2004, February). *Northern Cape 10-year Review*. Kimberley.
- Northern Cape Provincial Administration. (2009, March). *Northern Cape Province 15-Year Review*. Kimberley.
- Northern Cape Provincial Administration. (2014). *NC: 20-year review*. Kimberley.

- Northern Cape Provincial Administration. (2017). NC: Mid-term review 2014-2019. Kimberley.
- Northern Cape Provincial Administration. (2018). NC: Provincial Growth and Development Plan. Kimberley.
- Northern Cape Provincial Administration. (2018, February). NCPA: Twinning Agreements and Memorandum of Understanding Report. Kimberley.
- Northern Cape Provincial Treasury. (2018). Socio-economic Review and Outlook 2018. *HIS Markit, 2018 [Regional eXplorer Version 1277(2.6b)]*. Kimberley.
- Northern Cape Tourism Authority. (2019, May 17). *Maloof Money Cup*. Retrieved from <https://www.experiencenortherncape.com/visitor/northerncapeaz/m-maloof-money-cup>
- Reid, S. (2018). SAHR - 20 years of community service in South Africa: What have we learnt? <https://www.hst.org.za/publications/South%20African%20Health%20Reviews/Chap%205%2020%20Years%20Community%20Service%20SAHR2018.pdf>. Primary Health Care Directorate, Faculty of Health Science, University of Cape Town. .
- Saayman, M., Van der Merwe, P., & Rossouw, R. (2009, May 28). South African Journal of Wildlife Research . *Economic impact of hunting in the Northern Cape*. Potchefstroom: Southern African Wildlife Management Association (SAWMA).
- Schneider, M., Bradshaw, D., Steyn, K., Norman, R., & Laubcher, R. (2009). Poverty and non-communicable diseases in South Africa. *Scandinavian journal of public health*.
- South Africa's Key economic policies changes (1994 - 2013)*. (2014, May 06). Retrieved from South African History Online: <https://www.sahistory.org.za/article/south-africa%E2%80%99s-key-economic-policies-changes-1994-2013>
- South African Institute of Race Relations. (2018). Press Release - 12 March 2018. Pretoria.
- South African Police Service. (2012). SAPS: Annual Crime Report 2011/12. Pretoria.
- South African Police Service. (2017-18). *SAPS: Crime Statistics 2017-18*. Retrieved from (<https://www.saps.gov.za/services/crimestats.php>)
- Staff Member. (2019, April 24). History of environment and conservation sectors in the province. (N. Van Olmen, Interviewer)
- Statistics South Africa. (2002 & 2017). StatsSA: General Household Survey. Pretoria.
- Statistics South Africa. (2004). Provincial Profile 2004 - Northern Cape. Pretoria.
- Statistics South Africa. (2009 - 2017). StatsSA: General Household Survey. Pretoria.

- Statistics South Africa. (2009). Community Survey 2007. *Basic results Northern Cape: Report no. 03-01-29*. Pretoria.
- Statistics South Africa. (2013). Millennium Development Goal 1 report. Pretoria.
- Statistics South Africa. (2013/14 - 2017/18). StatsSA: Victims of Crime Survey 2013/14 - 2017/18. Pretoria.
- Statistics South Africa. (2017). StatsSA: Statistical release P318 - General Household Survey 2016. Pretoria.
- Statistics South Africa. (2017/18). StatsSA: Victims of Crime Survey 2017/18. Pretoria.
- Statistics South Africa. (2018). Provincial Profile: Northern Cape. *Community Survey 2016: Report no. 03-01-14*. Pretoria.
- Statistics South Africa. (2018, July). StatsSA: Statistical release P0302 - Mid-year Population estimates. Pretoria.
- Statistics South Africa. (2019, May 20). *Economic Growth*. Retrieved from Statistics South Africa: http://www.statssa.gov.za/?page_id=735&id=1
- Statistics South Africa. (2019, May 28). StatsSA: General Household Survey 2018. *Statistical Release P0318*. Pretoria.
- The Presidency. (1994). The Presidency: White Paper on Reconstruction and Development. *Government Gazette 16085*. Pretoria.
- The Presidency. (2003). The Presidency: Towards a 10 - year review, Synthesis Report on Implementation of Government Programmes. Pretoria: Policy Coordination and Advisory Services (PCAS).
- The Presidency. (2003). The Presidency: Towards a 10 year review. Pretoria: Government Communications.
- Times live. (2019, March 25). *Timeslive: Three-quarters of sexual offences cases ended in convictions: Masutha*. Retrieved from Timeslive: <https://www.timeslive.co.za/politics/2019-03-25-three-quarters-of-sexual-offences-cases-ended-in-convictions-masutha/>
- UN General Assembly. (2015, October 21). Transforming our world: the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development.
- Union of South Africa. (1944). Provision of an organized national health service for all sections of the people of the Union of South Africa 1942-1944. *Report of the*

National Health Services Commission, Chairman Dr Henry Gluckman. Union of South Africa, 1944.

Van Rensburg, H., Ataguba, J., & Benator, S. (2012). The Legacy of Apartheid in Health and Healthcare. *South African Journal of Sociology*.

Vartanian, T. (2011). *Secondary data analysis*. New York, NY: Oxford.

Wadee, H., Gilson, L., Thiede, M., Okorafor, O., & McIntyre, D. (2003). Health expenditure and finance in South Africa. United Nations Research Institute for Social Development (UNRISD).

Worku, E., & Woldeesenbet, S. A. (2015, December). Poverty and inequality - but of what- as social determinants of health in Africa? *Journal of African health Sciences, Vol 15 Issue 4*. *Journal of African health Sciences, Vol 15 Issue 4*.

World Health Organization. (2007). *Everybody Business. Strengthening Health systems to improve health outcomes: Who's framework for action*. World Health Organization.

PART C.

Synopsis of Progress for the period 1994-2019

1. Quality Basic Education

In the last 25 years the province recorded significant improvements in a number of education outcomes and these include:

- Since 1994, the education system has expanded to such an extent that the number of persons aged 20 and older with no formal education declined from 17,5% in 2002 to 6,7% in 2017 (Statistics South Africa, 2002 & 2017).
- The percentage of persons aged 7-24 years who attended education institution increased from 68,3% in 2002 to 71,3% in 2018, which is positive change of 3% in 16 years.
- Access to Grade R improved significantly from 4 894 in 1997, to 19 999 in 2018; as well as Grade R practitioners which increased from 418 in 2009/10, to 755 in 2017/18 financial years. The growth in Grade R access and practitioners is due to Grade R learner funding which grew from R74,7 to R99,2 million between 2013 and 2018.
- There has been progressive growth in learner enrolment in public ordinary schools which increased from 198 268 in 2002, to 299 118 in 2018, which is a cumulative increase of 100 850 over a period of 16 years. The growth in learner enrolment is attributed to the pro-poor policies such as the No Fee School policy, National School Nutrition Programme and the Learner School Transportation by the African National Congress (ANC) led government.
- According to the 2018 General Household Survey (Statistics South Africa, 2019, p. 17), 82,6% of learners in the Northern Cape benefit from the school nutrition programme.
- Through the National Norms and Standards for school funding implemented in 2000, the per capita funding for a Black African learner increased from R6 265 in 2006, to R16 149 in 2018 for primary phase and from R4 572 to R19 744

for secondary phase over the same period. These include free schooling, feeding at school as well as transport subsidy.

- One of the major policy shifts in the country's basic education sector is the introduction of the Annual National Assessment (ANA) in 2011. This was prompted by the poor performance of the South African learner in both regional and international benchmarking assessment especially in Literacy and Mathematics. Overall the ANA results for Grade 3 and 6 in Language and Mathematics improved between 2011 and 2014.
- The matric pass rate declined from 77,7% in 1994, to 61,1% in 2009 and increased again to 73,3% in 2018, which is a percentage increase of 12,3%. The percentage of Grade 12 learners eligible for bachelors programme increased from 16,7% in 2009 to 26,1% in 2018, which reflects an increase of 9,4%.
- The provincial pass rate in Mathematics, Physical Science and Technology also depicts a positive growth trend between 2009-2017. Mathematics pass rate improved from 43.3% in 2009, to 57.40% in 2017, Physical Science from 33,3% to 56,8% and Technology from 82.2% to 87.7% over the same period.
- The introduction of no-fee schools has alleviated the burden of paying school fees on poor households. In 2018, 407 schools in quintiles 1, 2 and 3 were declared no fee school benefiting 192 198 learners. The provincial budget on No Fee Schools also grew from R56 million to R238 million between 2007 and 2018.
- Since the inception of the programme, the province continues to make significant progress in the provision of learner school transport. The number of learners benefiting from learner school transport increased from 18 192 to 24 659 between 2009/10 and 2018/19 financial year.
- Achievements in the provision of public school Infrastructure is as follows:
 - 304 classrooms have been built, 61 specialists rooms, 97 Grade R classrooms, 16 new schools were completed and 287 schools received

corrective or preventative maintenance between 2009/10 and the 2017/18 financial year.

- Between 2009/10 and 2013/14 financial year, the province provided 67 schools with water supply, 62 with electrical supply, 33 with sanitation supply and 170 with fencing. At the end of the 2013/14 financial year, all the schools in the province had access to water, sanitation and electricity supply hence no services were provided during 2014/15.
- Since all the schools had access to the above mentioned services, the province only started providing upgrades or additional supply were required in line with the agreed norms and standards.
- Therefore, upgrades/additional supply was provided to 133 schools in terms of water, 50 schools in terms of electricity and 78 schools in terms of sanitation in line with agreed norms and standards during 2017/18 financial year.

2. A long and healthy lifestyle for all South Africans

Over the last two and a half decades some substantial population health gains have occurred in the Northern Cape Province.

- The life expectancy at birth has increased significantly for both genders between 2001 and 2018. Life expectancy at birth increased from 57,7 years to 66,3 years for females, and from 52,2 years to 60 years for males. This was an increase of 7,8 years for males and 8,6 years for females during the reporting period. Nationally, life expectancy at birth for South Africans in 2018 was 61,1 years for male and 67,3 years for females
- In 1998 maternal mortality was at 97 per 100 000 live births. This increased to 300 in 2007 per 100 000 live births. The facility maternal mortality ratio (MMR) however, declined from 250 per 100,000 in 2009/10 live births, to an all-time low of 65,9 per 100 000 live births in 2017/18 financial year (Department of Health, 2018). This is below the Sustainable Development Goal (SDG) 2030 target of 70 per 100,000 live births.

- According to the Northern Cape Department of Health 2018 (HIMS) report (Department of Health, 2018), under-five mortality has shown significant decline from 7,7 mortalities per 1000 live births in 2013/14 to 4,2 under-five mortality rates in 2017/18 financial year.
- Infant mortality rate also showed a decline from 9 mortalities per 1000 live births in 2013/14, to 6 mortality per 1000 live births in the 2017/18 financial year (Department of Health, 2018).
- Similarly, the burden of HIV/AIDS and TB reduces as the number of new infections decreased with 57,6%, (5 557 to 2 356) according to the South African Institute of Race Relations press release of 12 March 2018. Due to prevention programmes, the number of HIV positive clients remaining on ART increased from 31 355 in 2012/13 to 57 429 in 2017/18
- Strengthening public health system as part of its ongoing effort to provide accessible and quality health care services with particular focus on previously disadvantaged and vulnerable sub-groups of population and rural communities in the Province.
- As a response to alleviating the shortage of doctors in the country, the Mandela-Castro Medical Collaboration programme, assisted to produce more medical doctors in the country, through particularly as a response to alleviating the shortage of doctors in the rural areas of the NC.
- The implementation of compulsory community service, in 1998, was also an effective strategy for recruiting health professionals to rural and underserved areas and provided young professionals with an opportunity to enhance their skills and acquire knowledge to assist them in their professional development and future careers.
- The province has managed to ensure that health facilities have essential medicines (maintain a stock of availability above 80%) and proper equipment.
- The province has constructed 7 new hospitals through the Hospital revitalisation programme, 24 clinics, and 2 Community Health Centres (CHCs) through Clinic Building and Upgrading Programme between 1994 and 2018.

3. All People in South are and feel Safe

Even though the levels of serious and violent crime had started to decrease;

- With contact crimes indicating a general decreasing trend from 29 477 in 2002/03 to 17 380 in 2017/, they nonetheless remained unacceptably high.
- Property related crimes also indicated an initial decrease from 17 020 in 2002/03 to 10 898 in 2010/11, increasing to 13 407 in 2016/17 and then indicating a slight decrease in 2017/18 to 12 800 again.
- Sexual Offences in the Northern Cape Province decreased from 2191 in 2003/4 to 1749 in 2007/8, fluctuating between 2008/9 and 2015/16 and then decreasing again to 1538 in 2017/18.
- The crimes detected as a result of police action have increased from 2971 in 2001/2 to 6495 in 2017/18.
- The improvement of performance of courts has been one of the priority areas of the JCPS cluster as it facilitates the rendering of the accessible, fair, speedy and cost-effective administration of justice, reducing the case backlogs. A total of 7 Sexual Offences courts have been established between 2013/14 and 2017/18.
- The effectiveness of the criminal justice system in dealing with crime is also dependent on a correctional system that, among other things, ensures that those prosecuted, convicted and sentenced are securely kept in correctional facilities. The Northern Cape/Free State region were able to maintain between 97% – 98% on parolees and probationers without violations between 2015/16 and 2018/19.
- To strengthen partnerships between government and communities, the Community Policing Policy and the Community Safety Forum Policy Framework (2011) have been put in place, and the Northern Cape Province having 91 police stations with 91 functioning CPFs.

4. Decent employment through inclusive economic growth

- GDP for South Africa averaged 2,6% for the period 2005 – 2017, whereas the GDP of the Northern Cape averaged 1,9% for the same period.
- The net gain between jobs created and lost in the Northern Cape, between 2010 and 2018, is 43 000 jobs.
- The unemployment rate in the Northern Cape was lower than the national rate for the period 2001 – 2006. From 2007 onwards, the Northern Cape unemployment rate exceeded the national rate, with the biggest variance being in 2015 (6,8%). The year 2015, also represents the highest unemployment rate (32%) for the province. The official unemployment rate for South Africa stood at 27,6% for the first quarter of 2019, while the unemployment rate for the Northern Cape stood at 26% for the first quarter of 2019.
- The tertiary sector is consistently the biggest contributor to the Northern Cape economy, with mining (in the primary sector), the biggest individual contributor.
- The Economically Active Population of the Northern Cape has increased by 100 000 people since 2008 – 2018.
- Over the last 15 years, the following was achieved through the three phases of EPWP; 200 205 work opportunities, 88 918 youth employed, 95 216 women employed and 552 disabled persons employed.
- From the Phakamile Mabija Apprenticeship Programme, 59 out of 67 apprentices successfully completed the programme and obtained work opportunities in the private and mining sector.
- For CWP, 127 056 jobs were created from 2012/13 to 2018/19 of which 45% represented youth, 73% women and 3,3% persons with disabilities.
- Since 2004/05, 39 660 jobs have been created through CASP and Illema Letsema.
- For the period 2011/12 to 2016/17, a total of 750 SMMEs and 269 Cooperatives received support from DEDAT. For the same period up to 2017/18, a total of 135 SMMEs were linked to public procurement opportunities.

- Since inception, 413 learners graduated from the KIDJA Academy in diamond cutting and polishing as well as diamond valuation courses. To date, 76 SMMEs were incubated at the KIDJI facility.
- The Bloodhound Supersonic Car project is on track and is expected to arrive at Haksteen Pan in October 2019 in its quest to break the land speed record. This project is expected to inject economic spin offs to the Mier area.
- The Skateboarding projects (Maloof Money Cup/ Kimberley Diamond Cup) created 3916 temporary- and 9 permanent jobs. Investment into the province amounted to over R287 million.
- For the period, 2011/12 to 2017/18, the Northern Cape Tourism Authority (NCTA) supported 271 events, which attracted 1 244 361 attendees. A substantial number constitutes tourists which added valuable injection to the Northern Cape economy.
- The Upington SEZ has not been designated as a SEZ yet. The technical committee of the SEZ advisory board from DTI noted a number of concerns (e.g. control over land, governance and institutional model, bulk services) with the application and resolved that the application should meet the minimum requirements for designation.

5. A skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path

- There is an improved growth of 2,7% in the adult literacy levels from 2009 – 2017 in the Province as there is a percentage difference of 2.7% over this period (86,8% to 89,5%) with year on year improvement. Despite the decline, the adult literacy rates for persons aged 20 years and older as at 2017 is the lowest in the country.
- In 2016 the student enrolment at the 2 TVET colleges in NC stood at 15 148 and contributed to 2,1% of the total national enrolment. Majority of students enrolled for Report 191 followed by NC(V) programmes. The data reported by the DHET in the report released in 2018 is as extracted from the TVETMIS.
 - NC achieved the lowest completion rate of 34,5% for NC (V) level 2, with NC (V) level 3 at 39,9% and NC (V) Level 4 at 39,7%.

- The NC average national completion rate for Report 190/1 N1 to N3 Engineering Studies was at 63,83%. The completion rate decreased across different N levels in TVET colleges starting at 70,7% for N1, declining to 62,60% for N2 and subsequently reaching 58,2% for N3 qualifications.
- NC recorded the lowest completion rate for part-qualification for Engineering Studies across levels N4 (73,3%), N5 (67,1%) and N6 (59,6%).
- For Business Studies the Northern Cape province recorded the lowest number of students who registered, wrote and completed across all levels.
- For 2016, the enrolment at the CET in the province was 3986. The highest enrolment was for AET level 4 (NQF level 1) and the lowest for Grade 12 (NQF level 4). Of the registered students, 28% completed at ABET level 4. This is the lowest across all provinces.
- Sol Plaatje University was formally established on the 22 August 2013 and in 2014 registered 124 students. This increased to 1050 by 2018.
- Central co-ordination of the HRD function moved from the Northern Cape Department of Education to the Office of the Premier as per February 2012, Executive Council resolutions. This is to ensure greater efficiency and coordination for the skills development domain in the Province.
- Since the relocation various structures and systems has put in place to oversee implementation, ensure accountability and monitoring of skills development in the Province.
 - The Northern Cape Provincial Skills Development Forum was established in April 2012 and used as a platform in the province to monitor, evaluate and report on the implementation of Northern Cape Human Resource Development initiatives in the province.
 - The Northern Cape Human Resource Development Council (HRDC) was launched on 6 March 2014. The Council is the primary institution for Human Resource Development (HRD) coordination amongst Government Organized Business, Organised Labour and Community Representatives, Professional Bodies, Sector Education and Training Authorities (SETA's), Research and Academic representatives and other relevant stakeholders.

- During the period 2014 to 2019, in support of the MTSF deliverables the following opportunities were provided in the Province to increase access to occupationally directed programmes in needed areas thereby expanding the availability of intermediate level skills. For the period a total of 2348 Artisans qualified. 2851 WIL placements were made by the SETAs supporting the province. 1292 Internships and 6351 learnerships opportunities were created within the provincial administration

6. An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network

- SIP 5 - Namakwa Bulk Water Supply Scheme, Heuningvlei Bulk Water Supply Scheme and Kuruman Bulk Water Supply Scheme – completed. The Vaal Gamagara bulk water supply scheme benefits six municipalities, 22 villages and will ensure the continued sustainability of iron ore and manganese mining operations between Kathu and Hotazel.
- A summary of backlogs up to 2018 provided by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) is as follows; formal water supply backlog is 14 371 households while for informal it is at 12 938. Sanitation backlog for formal households is 35 661, while for informal households is 22 145.
- SIP 3 - Rail Phase 1: Partial doubling of Kimberley-De Aar section is complete as part of the Manganese rail line upgrade from Hotazel to Ngqura.
- SIP 10 - Two (2) Hydro Electric Power Stations, one at Vanderkloof dam with 240MW capacity and the other at Gariep dam with a 360MW capacity, installed by Eskom.
- SIP 5: Saldanha-Northern Cape Development Corridor – the estimated completion date for the Juno-Gromis project (Eskom - to create an additional 1795MW capacity) is November 2020.
- SIP 8 - The province has currently a total of 59 out of 112 IPP Renewable Energy projects in the country with a capacity of 3 623 MW.
- SIP 15 - From 2014/15 to 2017/18, e-skills development initiatives implemented, totalled 29.

- SIP 16 - South Africa, specifically the Northern Cape, is one of two hosts countries of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA), and also designed and is building MeerKAT SKA. The construction of 80km gravel road to black top is 100% complete, and the SKA benefits to the local and surrounding communities are R136 million on local Service Providers and Contractors, R162m on salaries and R1m in Training. The SKA SA Project Office has completed the construction of all the 64 MeerKAT Telescope dishes which was launched on the 13th July 2018, by the Deputy President of the Republic, The Honourable David Mabuza.
- SIP16 - The South African Radio Astronomy Observatory (SARAO) has issued Block Grant to universities for studies towards a BSc in Astronomy and Electrical and Computer engineering. Of particular interest to the Northern Cape Province (Carnarvon), is that ten students have been awarded bursaries for 2019 - four are at University of Free State (UFS), two are at Sol Plaatje University (SPU), two are at University of Western Cape (UWC), one is at University of Pretoria (UP) and another one at North West University (NWU).
- The Provincial Immovable Asset Register has been inconsistent since the inception of the New Dispensation (1994) to date. Most of the Properties were registered as either: RSA, Model C Schools, Educational and Hospital Trustees or even in the name of the Municipality and other facilities constructed on Tribal land. The current portfolio of Northern Cape immovable assets is at different levels of functionality, condition and utilisation as identified through its recent (2018) Condition Assessment Programme.
- The DRPW is responsible for the maintenance of the provincial road network of approximately 27 190km of Paved and Unpaved roads.
- Boegoe Bay – Funding is still a problem. By December 2018, the Transactional Advisors has submitted the Phase 2A report. Phase 2B has started, to be completed by the end of March 2019.
- De Aar Freight/Logistics Hub (Warehouse) - National Treasury requires responses to aspects of value for money, affordability and risk transfer, as well as clarification on the acquisition/ lease of land. The Request for Quotation (RFQ) was completed and

will be presented to possible investors. The Emthanjeni local municipality has indicated their willingness to assist with provision of land.

- Douglas- Belmont Branch Line - Transnet could not agree on a suitable operator. Hence, the process has been on hold.
- Upington Cargo Hub - The Upington Cargo Hub business plan is outdated and the project needs funding, 70ha of earmarked land, a designated area for aircraft maintenance, and storage services must be established.

7. A vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) provides for cooperative government and intergovernmental relations amongst the national, provincial and local spheres of government and redresses the imbalances of the past and to ensure that there is equity in the application of spatial development planning and land use management systems.

- The province as at 2017, is at 100% SPLUMA ready with 8 tribunals and all the Municipal Planning Tribunals are operational, dealing with new development applications in terms of the SPLUMA.
- One of the programmes driving the transformation of the agricultural sector is the Land Reform Programme. Government has redistributed around 1 684 832 hectares of arable land in the Northern Cape Province and reaching 9579 beneficiaries through the Redistribution programme.
- In terms of the Restitution programme a total of 2939 land claims were approved to a total of 65 702 beneficiaries amounting to 754 367 hectares of land from 1994 to 2018.
- The Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural development established 127 institutional gardens, 82 community gardens, 394 school gardens and a total of 4 717 household gardens in the Northern Cape between 2009 and 2017/18 to support households with food production initiatives.

- The State President, His Excellency Mr J. Zuma officially launched the National Fetsa Tlala Programme in the JTG District on 24 October 2013, planting 6 hectares of crops. From the 2014/15 to 2017/18 financial year, a total of 3696,5 hectares were planted with various crops across the province.
- A total of 19 988 farmers were reached through training sessions, farmer and information days, demonstration days. 107 Agri-businesses were supported with agricultural economic series and 1 479 smallholder farmers were supported to access markets of which 1 415 accessed markets.
- 151 new agricultural cooperatives were established and 42 existing cooperatives were supported between 2007/8 and 2017/18 and 2467 green jobs created from 2004/5 to 2017/18.
- The CRDP programme was piloted in Riemvasmaak and then expanded to Heuningsvlei, Schmidtsdrift, Renosterberg and Magareng.
- Several Mega Projects are being coordinated: Rooibos Tea Nieuwoudtville, Vanderkloof Fisheries and Cage Trout farming, Namakwa Irrigation Development, Vineyards Development scheme and Vaalharts revitalization with Ganspan as Anchor.

8. Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life

In pursuance of the many policy shifts, the NDP priorities and MTSF deliverables the key achievements in the Northern Cape Province are summarised as follows relating to the period 1994 -2019.

- An increase in the number of formal dwellings as per community survey, from 78,3% in 1996 to 83,5% in 2016, and per GHS 2018 to 87,3%. By 2018, informal dwellings were at 11,7% and traditional dwellings at 0,7%.
- Although the number of households living in Informal dwellings increased from 1996 with a huge proportion of the increase from 2001 to 2011. This may be attributed to the incorporation of the cross border municipalities from the North West into the Northern Cape during 2006.

- The GHS of 2018 reports that the Northern Cape was amongst the three provinces that had the highest percentage of households that lived in formal dwellings at 87,3%, Limpopo at 93% and Mpumalanga at 87,7%.
- Implementation of the Social and Rental Housing Programme by providing houses to low and medium income earners. Total of 70 511 houses delivered in the province from 1998 -2019.
- Town planning for 26 573 sites from 1998 -2019.
- Upgrading of informal settlements through provision of basic services to communities with 26 779 services installed 1998 -2019.
- Restoring dignity of NC citizens by handing over title deeds with a total of 95 077 title deeds registered. The reduction of the title deed backlog being an ongoing commitment to address the backlog of 15 646.
- Social Housing Projects established:
 - Hull Street Integrated Projects
 - Lerato Park Integrated Project
- Acquisition of 404,40 hectares of land
- Level 1 and 2 accreditation status achieved for 3 district municipalities, 2 local municipalities, and Level 1 accreditation for 1 district municipality and 1 local municipality.
- Youth Empowerment programmes from 2006 in support of the Youth in Human Settlements and Youth Brigade programme with 753 youth being trained.
- The total number of beneficiaries exposed to Home Ownership Education from 2013 is 23 546.

9. Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient developmental local government system

Key achievements in the province in transforming the local government system and ensuring that the challenges identified by the NDP are addressed are as follows:

- Access to electricity increased by approximately 21,6% from 1996 to 2018, and access to sanitation improved by 30,7% for the same period, with access to water improving marginally by 4,1% for the same period.
- The percentage of households that continued to live without proper sanitation facilities have been declining consistently between 2002 and 2018, decreasing from 17,6% to 3,7% during this period.
- In 2017 the Provincial Gazette (Notice 150 of 2017) was passed to allow for the reconstitution of the NC Provincial House of Traditional Leaders. A milestone achievement in 2017 as a result of this process was that a female (Kgosi Toto) was elected as the Chairperson of the Provincial House in 2017. Further to this for the first time the Provincial House elected two female traditional leaders (headmen) as members of the House.
- The number of municipal wards in the province also increased from 162 in 2000 to 204 in 2016.
- Successful incorporation of some areas of John Taolo Gaetsewe district from North West to the province.
- There has been a decrease in the number of indigent households from 2004 (84 116) to 2016 (80 166), with the number fluctuating during this time period. This was a substantial increase of 25 369 from 2007 to 2008 from 81 827 to 107 196. This increase may be attributed to cumulative effects of the incorporation of the cross border municipalities into the NC province. The lowest number of recorded indigent households was in 2010 at 71 743 and 2014 and 71 274.
- For the period ending 30 June 2017, 27 of the 32 municipalities have implemented Indigent Support Policies to support indigent households.
 - the number of indigent households with access to FBS for the period 2014 – 2017. The time series reflects fluctuating numbers with 75 736 have access to FBW, 73 321 having access to FBE, 71 378 having access FBSS and 71 503 having access to FBSWM by 2016.
- Access to Basic Services improved overall.

- As per the 1996 Census, the percentage of households that has access to basic services improved for water, electricity and sanitation. Refuse removal remained mainly static.
- Access to electricity increased from 81,6% in 2002, and to 91,7% by 2018. There is a steady overall growth despite a drop in 2003 and 2009.
- Access to sanitation increased from 75,5,1% in 2002, and to 90% by 2018. A steady upward year on year growth is visible.
- Access to water increased from 92,5% in 2002 and to 95,3% by 2018. Growth has been marginal for the period.
- Access to refuse removal improved from 69,5% in 2002 and to 65,4% by 2018. There has been fluctuating improvements with access dropping significantly in 2009 to 56% but improving thereafter.
- The percentage of households that either had no sanitation facilities or that had to use bucket toilets has declined consistently between 2002 and 2018, decreasing from 17,6% to 3,7% during this period.
- For the period 2006/7 to 2017/18 as per the Auditor General audit outcomes, on municipal audits, the number of disclaimers has decreased from 25 in 2006/07 to 4 by 2017/18 financial year. Whilst the reduction in disclaimers is a positive improvement, the province has not improved on the number of municipalities that achieved clean audits.
- For the period 2008/9 to 2010/11 majority of the municipalities complied to the MFMA requirements regarding the tabling of AR with the exception of 1 in 2009/10. As of 2011/12, there is a regression as 12 municipalities did not comply. Significant improvement is noted in 2014/15 with only 1 not complying. By 2017/18 this dropped to 4 municipalities not tabling the AR.
- In terms of B2B fifteen (15) of the 31 municipalities performance have been categorised as at risk and dysfunctional with two (2) doing well. Support to the poor performing municipalities is an ongoing process in order to ensure sustained improvement in governance and institutional capacity.

10. Protected and advanced environmental assets and natural resources

The following high level deliverables should be noted:

- Development and implementation of the Northern Cape Nature Conservation Act (Act 9 of 2009).
- Development of the Northern Cape Coastal Management Plan (2016).
- Climate change has a profound impact on human life - it influences temperatures shifts, food security, water resources and greenhouse gasses. Climate change has been an unfunded mandate, but the department (DENC) was able to conduct key studies to inform adaptation and mitigation strategies from 2012, namely the provincial Climate Risk and Vulnerability Assessment (2016) and the Provincial Climate Change Adaptation Response Strategy (2018), as well as Climate Change Adaptation and Response Strategies for each District (2018).
- With the necessary assistance from DENC to officers and councillors, local and district municipalities have been able to develop the following tools: Integrated Waste Management Plans, Climate Change Response Strategies, Spatial Development Frameworks, Air Quality Management Plans, Environmental Management Frameworks.
- Continuous management of potential impacts of developments and issuing of Environmental Authorisations.
- Promotion of environmental awareness among the youth through support for Enviro Clubs and roll out of the international Ecoschool programme. A total of 172 schools registered for the Eco-School programme between 2009 and 2018. Between 2010 and 2018, 1567 teachers were trained.
- Northern Cape Environmental Implementation Plans published in 2003, 2008 and 2015.
- Establishment of support platforms for municipalities, industry and other stakeholders: Provincial Coastal Committee; Air Quality Management forum; Climate Change Forum; Waste Management Forum.
- Licensing of all municipal landfill sites by 2018.

- Monitoring of air quality throughout the province.
- Management and expansion of provincially managed protected areas.
- Setting up electronic permitting system in 2001; continued adaptation and compliance to expanding legal framework while also assisting other provinces in this regard.
- Assistance to key roleplayers regarding asbestos awareness, management and sourcing of funding.
- By 2016, 5% of households in the Northern Cape did not have access to refuse removal.
- Through the land reform programme of the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform 623 194 (rounded off) hectares of land was transferred and restitution of 202 284 hectares (rounded off) of land was effected between 2009/10 and 2017/18. Some of this land is suitable for game farming.
- By 2018 the provincially managed conservation estate was expanded to 7 reserves, covering 57 561 hectares.

11. Create a better South Africa, contribute to a better and safer Africa in a better world

Since the inception of democracy the Northern Cape Provincial Government has concluded several international agreements and memoranda of understanding on various matters which included amongst others, capacity development, sporting and cultural events, tourism, health education, economic matters and local government. These agreements include amongst others the following, which have been concluded or are still active;

- In 1999, a Twinning Agreement was signed between the Province and the Kharas Region in Namibia
- In 2001, a memorandum of agreement was signed between the Emthanjeni Municipality & Karlstad (Sweden)
- In 2003, a Memorandum of Understanding was signed between the province and the Hunan Province in the People's Republic of China

- In 2003, a Twinning Agreement was signed between the Kimberley Hospital and the Paediatric Sub-Speciality Physicians Associates at the Advocates Hope Children's Hospital Chicago, USA
- In 2007, a memorandum of agreement was signed between the Sol Plaatje Municipality & Varnamo Municipality, Sweden
- In 2009, the province signed an Agreement with the Uruguay Association DE Futbol to host their team during the 2010 Football World Cup which was hosted by South Africa
- The world Skateboarding Championship was hosted by the province from 2011 and in 2013 changed to the Kimberley Diamond Cup
- And in 2013, the province entered into a Bilateral Agreement with the Bloodhound SSC (Pty) Limited UK (Bloodhound), to pursue the setting of a new land speed world record.

12. An efficient, effective and development orientated public service

The Outcome 12 focus has been on the effectiveness, efficiency, responsiveness, accountability and developmental orientation of the public service within the Northern Cape.

The Northern Cape has made remarkable progress in transforming the public service and making it more representative of the provincial demographics.

- Employment in the public sector in the Northern Cape has increased from 16 659 personnel in 2002 to 27 497 personnel during the 2017 Financial Year (grew by 10 928).
- The province established a centralised unit for organisational design within the Office of the Premier (OTP) in 1994. This unit was capacitated to support all departments within the Province. The decision was taken to decentralise the Organisational Design (OD) function, departments therefore established their own units, while support was still rendered from the OTP.

- Targets were set to reduce the average period to fill vacancies to six months. The provincial vacancy rate has improved significantly to 7% at end March 2019 for the Provincial Administration.
- The Northern Cape Administration has been consistently achieving 100% compliance rate in terms of the SMS financial disclosures.
- Coordinated anti-corruption efforts and initiatives in the provincial administration. As at end March 2019, the province only had one (1) NACH case still under investigation.
- From 2012 - 2018 the Province has been boasting with a consistent above 95% - 100% Presidential Hotline resolution rate for the Province. The Province has received **1 267** complaints since the inception of the Presidential Hotline in 2009, and **1 260** cases have been resolved with **7** cases/complaints still open/outstanding.
- The Province has maintained an upward performance trajectory in its overall MPAT performance over all the MPAT Cycles spanning from MPAT 1.2 up to MPAT 1.6 and in the current MPAT 1.7 cycle performance dropped slightly. In MPAT 1.2 the Province was at an overall average of level 2 and in MPAT 1.6 the Province improved to an overall average of level 3 score, however in MPAT 1.7 performance dropped slightly to 2.9 and bounced back to 3.1 in MPAT 1.8.
- The Frontline Service Delivery Monitoring (FSDM) programme has been implemented in the Province since August 2011. Since the inception of the programme in Northern Cape, Baseline Monitoring has been conducted at 81 facilities in collaboration with DPME and 21 have been conducted by the province itself. This brings the total of baselines conducted to 102.
- The CBM programme was initially piloted in 2015 in the John Taolo Gaetsewe District it was then rolled out in the Umsobomvu Municipality in early 2017, with a focus on the IDP process within the Municipality. This programme was further rolled out in the Phokwane Municipality in 2018, with community engagements in the 12 wards of the municipality, which recorded the needs of the community.
- The Audit Outcomes of Departments and Entities have improved over the past 10 years from 2 disclaimers in 2009/10 financial year for provincial departments and 3 for Public entities, to no disclaimer for the 2017/18 financial year for both provincial departments and entities

- The 30-day payment of invoices from suppliers has gradually registered improvement; however, the percentage still fluctuates with the Department of Health's late payment of creditors due to inadequate budgeting and cash flow
- The Province has moved from the approval and implementation of the Provincial Growth and Development strategy in 2005 to the approval of the Provincial Growth and Development Plan which is a strategic management tool, not just for government, but for all sectors and especially the Northern Cape people aimed at outlining the growth and development path of the Province until 2040. It is envisioned that the PGDP will lead to a concerted effort in achieving growth, development and prosperity in the Northern Cape.
- The PSDF functions as an innovate strategy that will apply sustainability principles to all spheres of land use management throughout the Northern Cape, as it relates to the eradication of poverty and inequality and the protection of the integrity of the environment.
- The review of the Northern Cape Spatial Development Framework 2018 was commissioned by the Office of the Premier. The review was necessitated by both the promulgation of the Spatial and Land Use Management Act 2013 and the need to provide a spatial representation of the Provincial Growth and Development Plan. The plan further necessitates alignment with national, provincial, regional and municipal spatial plans, policies and strategies.

13. An inclusive and responsive social protection system

In the last 25 years, the province recorded significant improvements in the provision of social welfare which include:

- The poverty gap and the severity of poverty declined in all nine provinces between 2006 and 2016. According to the development indicators data, the province's poverty gap which measures the number of people living below the poverty line and the resources needed to push them above the poverty line registered a decline from 40,9% in 2005 to 26,2% in 2015 whilst the severity of poverty also decreases from 22,6% to 16,5% over the same period. A decline in the poverty gap and the severity of poverty is an indication that the number of people living below the poverty line declined over this period.

- Approximately 10 820 households with no income received an integrated basket of services to assist them towards sustainability and were successfully migrated out of extreme poverty from the Balelapa project which is one of the poverty alleviation protect in the province between 2013 and 2017. Furthermore, 3 842 Change Agents were linked to development and economic opportunities to support and facilitate their migration towards sustainability. In addition, the department accessed R50 million from the Poverty Alleviation Fund and supported 1 133 development projects through the fund. A total of 93 090 poor people benefited directly. In 1999, 2 015 projects received funds from the R203 million poverty allocation for 1998/99 financial year. People living in poverty have also benefited from the soup-kitchens, drop-in -centres and the social relief programme which render temporary relief to families experiencing undue hardship and distress as well as those affected by natural and unnatural disasters.
- The main source of income according to of Statistics South Africa (GHS:2017) in the province is salaries and grants. Social grants beneficiaries increased from 232 102 in 2006/07 to 471 432 in 2017/18 financial with the objective of assisting individuals/ households living in poverty.
- Currently there are 206 registered ECD centres in the province which caters to 31 479 learners and 949 ECD Practitioners.
- Relating to the provision of social welfare, the province is currently funding 11 Child and Youth Care Centres which are providing services to abandoned, abused and neglected children. Provincially there are 3 Secure Care Centres to ensure that children in conflict with the law are diverted away from criminal justice system and subjected to effective transitional care programmes to ensure that the children's rights are being promoted. Currently there are 3 residential facilities in the province providing services to 3 360 persons with disabilities and 2 700 persons with disabilities have access to protective workshops. There are 24 residential facilities for older persons which are providing services to 1 980 older persons.
- Due to the shortage of social workers in the country, in 2007 the National Department of Social Development introduced the National Social Scholarship Programme (NSSP). Since the implementation of the NSSP, the province has

successfully trained 275 social workers of which 218 have been absorbed while 57 remain unemployed. The province currently funds a total of 64 social work students (varying from 2nd to 4th year).

- Relating to prevention and substance abuse, the province completed the construction of the Northern Cape In-Patient Treatment Centre in 2018. The Centre is a 40-bed facility and has commenced with its first intake of 30 service users in February 2019.
- In 2011, the Department of Social Development (NCDSD) became the very first department in the Northern Cape to establish a fully-fledged Youth Directorate with a dedicated budget to address challenges affecting young people in a targeted and focussed manner. To date the young people benefited from accredited skill development initiatives and also participated in social cohesion programmes.

14. Nation building and social cohesion

- The province has successfully succeeded with the establishment of community art centres in the province. As community art centres are a feasible approach to promote art and crafts in this vast province: These sites are:
 - Mayibuye Centre in Kimberley
 - Phillipstown Multi-purpose Centre.
 - Thabo Moorosi Community Art Centre in Kuruman
 - Kapa Bokone Community Art Centre Forum with regional structures in all districts.
- The province has managed to make a considerable impact in the arts sector through the following achievements:
 - **Music and Dance Development:** The Vukani Chorale music festival gave national exposure to Northern Cape Choirs through one of the most popular choral music programmes on the SABC in 2005. This has since been replaced by the Old Mutual Eistedford for community choirs and SA Schools Choral Eistedford (SASCE). Diema Indigenous Music and Dance group from

Platfontein were nominated to represent South Africa (SA) at the International Indigenous Music and Dance Festival in Portsmouth in England in 2007. The province hosted a Namibian Cultural group as part of an exchange programme in conjunction with the African Cultural Music and Dance Association (ACUMDA) festival in 2008 as well as in 2017 in Riemvasmaak (ZF Mgcawu) and Kuboes (Namaqua) as well as assisted Koeboes Reeldancers and a Tswana Cultural Group from Kuruman to attend a Cultural Festival in Keetmanshoop -Karas Province in Namibia in 2015 and 2016.

- **Drama and Theatre Development:** one of the productions, Ambi Sisters, toured the country and also staged at the National Arts Festival in Grahamstown in 2004. Entered into a collaboration agreement with the National Institute of Higher Education (NIHE) for the development of a Feasibility study into the establishment of a Drama, Theatre and Television School in the province 2008.
- **Visual Arts and Craft:** The first ever Provincial Development, Marketing and Promotion of Craft Industry Workshop was hosted which benefited crafters throughout the province in 2005. Hosted the first ever Vukani Arts and Craft Exhibition in September 2006. The exhibition provided opportunity to local crafters to exhibit their products at the William Humphreys Art Gallery in 2006.
- **Writers Festival:** The province attracted national and international attention with the launch in 2009 of the inaugural Northern Cape Writers Festival. This annual festival has grown from strength to strength and continues to promote writing, poetry, debate and art within the Province.
- **Infrastructure and Facilities:** The province invested in excess of R300 000-00 for the renovation and upgrading of the Warrenton Cultural Resort. (2006) and rehabilitation and the upgrading of all dormitories and installing new rooms and ablution facilities in 2016.

- The NC Theatre was totally revamped for R25 million with new sound and stage equipment.
- **Commemorative Events:** Each year the province host 6 commemorative (Human Rights Day, Freedom Day, Youth Day, Women's Day, Heritage Day and Day of Reconciliation) days in the cultural calendar. These days are designed to celebrate the province's cultural heritage and provide opportunities for artists and crafters from all cultural backgrounds to showcase their potential.
- **Museum and Heritage Resources:** The most important achievement was the training of six youth in the restoration of Victorian buildings. Rudd House was restored, as well as work done on Dunluce House, another Victorian building in Kimberley owned by the museum. The number of museum visitors increased from 10 120 to 17 099 between the 2009/10 and 2017/18 financial year. The declaration of the Richtersveld as a World Heritage Site in June 2007 is a notable success in the preservation of the heritage of the Province.
- **Naming and Renaming:** The purpose of naming and renaming is to honour heroes and heroines of the struggle. The province in conjunction with the Provincial Geographic Name Change Council (PGNCC), assist municipalities with the **name change** process. Seventy-six (76) naming and renaming processes have been concluded since 2009.
- **Language Services:** Training programmes are held annually in sign and additional languages. Furthermore, in collaboration with library services, book clubs are continuously established and supported throughout the province. In terms of Language development, the province has succeeded in establishing the Provincial Language Committee (PLC), whose activities have been consolidated over the last few years. The PLC has developed a clear programme of action with its primary focus being on the promotion of multilingualism in the province. The province has also facilitated the establishment of the Provincial Language Forum (PLF) so as to ensure co-ordination of the various programmes and resources in support of language development in the province.

- **Library and Archive Services:** Library supports education provincially at a transversal level by providing access to reading material thereby providing reading opportunities to learners. Currently there are 220 libraries, with 209 324 uses and 161 libraries are being provided with free internet services. The majority of these libraries are located in areas that have been identified as War on Poverty areas thus taking reading material to the rural areas and making it accessible to the poor. The province managed to complete the first phase of the construction of the Provincial Archives Repository in 2012, thereby creating a home for all provincial records and for research. The Kgotso Flatela Archives Repository currently houses A20 records that were transferred from Frances Baard district municipality, Sol Plaatje municipality (Council Minutes 1957-1994), Northern Cape Provincial Legislature (Annual Reports of different institutions) and the Master's Office (Estate Records 1957-1997).
- **Sport and Recreation:** The province has facilitated the construction, upgrading and renovations of five (5) multi-purpose sport and recreation facilities in Jan Kempdorp, Cassel and Port Nolloth, Postmansburg and Griekwastadt. The funds have been sourced from the Building for Sport and Recreation and the Municipal Infrastructure Grant. The introduction of the Mass Participation Programme and its growth especially on the number of people participating (180 000) throughout the Province with 300 young people employed as Activity Coordinators, Ward Coordinators, District Coordinators and School Sport Assistants. Ninety schools are currently benefiting in the programme. The programme is implemented in all 26 municipalities.
- **FIFA 2010 World Cup:** Even though the province had not been allocated host city status the Province did not simply take a defeatist position. It strategically set in motion an array of activities which would ensure that the country and the World to see this province as a contender and a player in the 2010.
- **The Bill of Responsibilities, Constitutional Values and National Symbols:** 33 young Patriots were placed one per municipality to promote Social Cohesion and Nation Building. Their core work is about promoting National identity, symbols and Patriotism by teaching learners in schools to hoist flags, rendition of national anthem

and promotion of national symbols including conducting social dialogues and conversations on racism, identity, youth employment and social compact contract. In 2017/18 financial year, 400 Bill of Responsibilities booklets, posters and flyers together with Values in Action manuals were printed and distributed, 189 activities that show engagement with the Bill of Responsibilities were conducted, 3 287 learners and 211 educators as well as 189 schools participated in Moot Court and other democracy programmes, 80% of schools are saying the preamble of the Constitution at school assemblies, 70% of school are flying the national flag and 80% of schools have booklets and posters (frame) on national symbols of orders in the province.

15. The Fourth Industrial Revolution and Information Society Development

There have been 3 key Northern Cape provincial ICT Strategic Interventions from 1994-2019 as outlined below.

- Provincial Information Society Strategy Development: INSPIRE. The interventions of INSPIRE in the Province included:
 - e-Infrastructure
 - e-SMME:
 - e-Government:
 - Local Content Development
 - e-Education
 - mLab
- Provincial Information Communications and Technology
 - Provision of an effective IT management and administrative support service, to the provincial government through continuous refinement of strategy and structure to ensure compliance with applicable legislation (Public Service Act, SITA Act) and appropriate best practices. Added to this, OTP chairs the Provincial Government Information Technology Council (PGITOC).
 - A Provincial Shared Service Centre proposal was developed and adopted by the province.
 - A Provincial Virtual Private Network (VPN) proposal was accepted, and supported by the province. Firewall policy in consultation with all the

stakeholders was developed and adopted for the implementation of this provincial VPN. The VPN implementation was completed in March 2019.

- A Technology Refresh, Business Continuity and a Shared Provincial Disaster Recovery Plan proposal is approved by the province and is currently being implemented. This is a 3-year project and budget has been secured.
- Provincial Broadband Infrastructure Development
 - A broadband e-Infrastructure strategy for Northern Cape Province is a fundamental prerequisite of the Northern Cape Information Society Strategy (NCISS), born out of the Provinces ambition to accelerate sustainable social development and economic growth for the people of the Province.
 - **SA Connect:** The province in partnership with the National Department of Communications and the S.A. Connect project will be connecting 225 sites over the next 3 years. Site identification and verification has been completed and thus far, 8 sites have been connected.
 - **John Taolo Gaetsewe Wireless Mesh Network (WMN):** Though the two broadband wireless interventions as sponsored by the Department of Science and Technology, through a European Union grant to the CSIR's Meraka Institute and Kumba Iron Ore contributed significantly to supporting the creation of the network, with a grant of R5 million, 52 schools, 2 district education offices and 1 clinic for phase 1 of the project have been connected.
 - The Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA) awarded a contract to iBurst to provide broadband wireless connectivity in the Joe Morolong Local Municipality (JMLM) bring connectivity to 10 schools and 27 clinics and all citizens within 500 meters of the schools, clinics and the 28 primary towers to have free WiFi, up to 50Mb per day.
 - The Square Kilometer Array (SKA) connected 300 homes in rural communities to broadband connectivity, following a partnership agreement between SKA South Africa and Vox Telecom. In addition, SKA SA has spent more than R2.5 million on laptops, training and connectivity, with 366 computers donated to schools and the library in the towns surrounding the SKA site.

16. Gender and Women's Empowerment

- The journey travelled for women's empowerment and gender equality in South Africa since 1994 has been a promising, but difficult one. However, it is evident that when one compares the time before 1994, where women had little choice about the kind of lives they wanted to live, huge strides have been made in realising the rights of women post-democracy.
- Progressively, the Office on Status of Women was established on the 01 May 1997, following the commitment of the South African Government to the Beijing Platform for Action (BPFA, 1995) to establish institutional mechanisms for women's empowerment and gender equality and according to South Africa's National Framework for Women's Empowerment and Gender Equality.
- The existence of this office enables the state to coordinate, facilitate and track all activities aimed at women empowerment. It also assists in providing strategic direction to departments, municipalities and civil society at large.
- Women constitute 53,3% of the total Provincial Population (1 162 109) as per the Midyear population estimates (StatsSA) 2018 with 35,7% of women being Youth. According to the status of Women in the SA Economy, Aug 2015, women have not advanced as rapidly in terms of socio-economic empowerment and gender equality, and they remain hardest hit by inequality, poverty and unemployment, while they are often anchors in their families.
- There are now processes, anchored through national, aimed at ensuring that gender responsive planning and budget take effect. This will assist in ameliorating the cries on the lack of gender responsive budgets.
- Departmental and municipal gender machinery mechanisms are in place and functional. However, they need to be strengthened in order to deal with a comprehensive establishment of database on progress or otherwise (women empowerment).
- The Mme Re ka Thusa is a proper government mechanism to ensure economic empowerment for women, however, more institutional and reporting mechanism need to be streamlined in the trust.
- Over the last 15 years, the following was achieved through the three phases of EPWP; 200 205 work opportunities, with 95 216 women being employed.

- For CWP, 127 056 jobs were created from 2012/13 to 2018/19 of which 93 753 were women (73%)

17. Youth Development

- In the first quarter of 2013, the Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) (Statistics South Africa, 2013a) estimated that 33.4 percent of the 10.4 million young people aged 15 to 24 years were not in employment, education or training. This category of people is vulnerable, as they are not occupied with work or education, and the longer they remain in this category, the more disengaged they will be from the formal economy. Q 1 2019 QLFS shows that to date, the NEET rate is at 37,7% with higher proportion being females.
- The unemployment rate of youth for quarter 1 of 2019 is at 36,4% of the total population of the province. Failure to address the challenges faced by young people poses a serious threat to the political stability of our province.
- 25 Youth Service Centre across the province have been established (Zwelintlanga Fatman Mgcawu 4, Namakwa 3, John Taolo Gaetsewe 6, Pixley ka Seme 5 and Frances Baard 7) to provide for a range of youth development services and programmes in terms of social cohesion and basic life skills interventions.
- For the period 2009 – 2018/19 a total of 181 914 youth participated in DSD programmes and 3 552 participated in basic life skills training initiatives.
- As a result of ageing farmers, more focus is directed on the youth in Agriculture. Support interventions through various departmental programmes made it possible to support a total of 613 youth farmers from 2011/12 to 2017/18. Youth farmers received production inputs, infrastructure and training.
- Over the last 15 years, the following was achieved through the three phases of EPWP: 200 205 work opportunities of which 88 918 youth were employed.
- For CWP, 127 056 jobs were created from 2012/13 to 2018/19 of which 57,212, (45%) represented youth.

Office of the Premier
Kantoro ya Tonakgolo
i-ofisi ye Nkulumbuso
Kantoor van die Premier

021 461 1111
021 461 1112
021 461 1113

JW Sauer Building
Cnr Quinn & Roper Streets
Private Bag X5016, Kimberley 8300
Northern Cape, Republic of South Africa

